MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 31

Meister Eckhart

Meister Eckhart

Die rede der underscheidunge
Daz buoch der götlîchen trœstunge
Predigten

The Talks of Instruction, the Book of Divine Consolation, and Fourteen Sermons

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

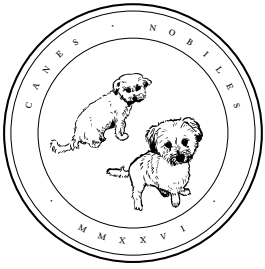


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 31 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Franz Pfeiffer's text, Deutsche Mystiker des vierzehnten Jahrhunderts, vol. II: Meister Eckhart (Leipzig, 1857)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

DIE REDE DER UNDERSCHEIDUNGE

I · True Obedience 9
II · The Mightiest Prayer and the Highest Work 12
III · Unresigned People, Full of Self-Will 13
IV · The Profit of Leaving Oneself 17
V · What Makes the Being and the Ground Good 19
VI · Detachment and the Having of God 20
VII · How a Man Should Do His Works Wisely, to the Highest 29
VIII · Constant Zeal in the Highest Growth 32
IX · How the Inclination to Sin Always Profits a Man 33
X · The Will Can Do All Things 36
XI · What a Man Should Do When God Seems Absent and Hidden . 43
XII · Sins, and How to Bear Oneself When One Finds Oneself in Sin . 50
XIII · Two Kinds of Repentance 53
XIV · True Confidence and Hope 56
XV · Two Kinds of Certainty of Eternal Life 57
XVI · True Penance and the Blessed Life 60
XVII · Peace Without the Saints' Hardships 64
XVIII · Fine Food, Fair Clothes, and Merry Company 70

DIE REDE DER UNDERSCHEIDUNGE

(continued)

XIX · Why God Lets Good People Be Hindered 74
XX · The Body of Our Lord 76
XXI · Zeal 85
XXII · How One Should Follow God, and of a Good Way 96
XXIII · Inward and Outward Works 101

DAZ BUOCH DER GÖTLÎCHEN TRŒSTUNGE

Part One 119
Part Two 130
Part Three 193

PREDIGTEN

I · Dum medium silentium 205
VI · Intravit Jesus in templum dei 226
VIII · Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum 240
IX · Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum, Martha nomine 253
XIII · In hoc apparuit charitas dei 273
XIV · Quasi vas auri solidum 282
XIX · Surrexit autem Saulus de terra 292
LX · Alliu glîchiu dinc minnent sich 307
LXV · Justi autem in perpetuum vivent 313
LXXXIII · In diebus suis placuit deo 325
LXXXIV · Quasi stella matutina 333
LXXXVII · Beati pauperes spiritu 347
LXXXVIII · Ave, gratia plena 360
XCVI · Qui audit me 372

MEISTER ECKHART

Die rede der underscheidunge

The Talks of Instruction

Von wârer gehôrsami

I · TRUE OBEDIENCE

True and perfect obedience is a virtue before all virtues: no work is great without it, and the meanest work done in it is more useful than mass, prayer, or contemplation done without. Where a man goes out of his own will into obedience, God must come in and will for him as for Himself, or He would not be just. So the best prayer asks for no virtue or way, not even for God Himself or eternal life, but only that God's will be done; and obedience never says "I will not," which is its poison. As Augustine says, the faithful servant seeks to hear not what he would like but what pleases God most.

Wâriu unde volkomniu gehôrsami ist ein tugent vor allen
True and perfect obedience is a virtue before all
tugenden unde kein werc sô grôz mac geschehen noch getân
virtues and no work so great may happen nor done
werden âne die tugent, unde wie klein ein werc ist unde
become without the virtue and however small a work is and
wie snœde ez ist, sô ist ez nützer getân in wârer gehôrsami,
however base it is so is it more-useful done in true obedience
ez sî messe lesen oder hœren, beten, contemplieren oder
it be mass read or hear pray contemplate or
swaz dû maht gedenken. Nim aber ein werc wie snœde dû
whatever thou canst think Take however a work how base thou
wellest, ez sî waz daz sî, ez machet dir wâriu gehôrsami
wilt it be whatever that be it makes for-thee true obedience
edeler unde bezzer. Gehôrsami würket alwege daz aller beste
nobler and better Obedience works always the all best
in allen dingen, joch diu gehôrsami geirret niemer niht unde
in all things yea the obedience hinders never anything and
versûmet ouch nihtes, waz ieman tuot in dekeinen dingen,
neglects also nothing whatever one does in any things

daz ûz der wâren gehôrsami gât, wan si versûmet kein guot.
that out-of the true obedience goes for she neglects no good
Gehôrsami darf niemer nihtes besorgen, ir gebrichet ouch
Obedience needs never anything to-worry to-her lacks also
dekeines guotes: swâ der mensche in gehorsâm des sînen ûz
no good where the man in obedience of-the his out
gêt, dâ an dem selben muoz got von nôt wider în gên,
goes there in the same must God of necessity back in go
wan sô einez im selber niht enwil, dem muoz got wellen
for when one for-him self nothing wills for-him must God will
ze glîcher wîse als im selben. Swenne ich mîns willen
in like manner as for-him self When I of-my will
bin ûz gangen in die hant mînes prêlâten unde mir selber
am out gone into the hand of-my prelate and for-me self
niht enwil, dar umbe muoz mir got wellen, unde versûmet
nothing will there for must for-me God will and neglects
er mich an dem teil, sô versûmet er sich selber. Alsô in
he me in that part so neglects he him self So in
allen dingen, dâ ich mir niht enwil, dâ wil mir got.
all things where I for-me nothing will there wills for-me God
Nû merke. Waz wil er mir? Daz ich mir niht wil. Dâ
Now mark What wills he for-me That I for-me nothing will Where
ich mich an lâze, dâ muoz er mir von nôt wellen allez,
I me on let there must he for-me of necessity will all
daz er im selben wil, noch minr noch mêr, unde mit der
that he for-him self wills neither less nor more and with the
selben wîse, dâ er ime mite wil. Und tête got daz niht,
same manner where he for-him with wills And should-do God that not
in der wârheit, diu got ist, sô enwêre got niht gereht noch
in the truth which God is so would-be God not just nor
enwêre got, daz sîn nâtiurlich wesen ist. In wârer gehôrsami
would-be God what his natural being is In true obedience

ensol niht funden werden ‘ich wil alsô oder alsô, diz oder
shall not found become I will so or so this or
daz’, sunder ein lûter ûzgân des dînen, und dar umbe in
that but a pure out-going of-the thine and there for in
dem aller besten gebete, daz der mensche mac gebeten, ensol
the all best prayer that the man may pray shall
niht sîn weder ‘gib mir díe tugent oder díe wîse’ oder
not be either give me the virtue or the manner or
‘jâ, herre, gib mir dich selber oder êwigez leben’, denne:
yea lord give me thee self or eternal life but
‘herre, gib mir niht wan daz dû wilt unde tuo, herre, waz
lord give me nothing but what thou wilt and do lord what
unde wie dû wilt in aller wîse.’ Daz übertriffet daz êrste
and how thou wilt in all manner That surpasses the first
alse der himel die erden. Unde swenne man daz gebet alsô
as the heaven the earth And when one the prayer so
vollebringet, sô hât man wol gebetet. Als man zemâle ûz
accomplishes so has one well prayed When one wholly out
gegangen ist in got wârer gehôrsami und als wâriu gehôrsami
gone is into God true obedience and as true obedience
niht sol haben ‘ich wil alsô’, alsô ensol niemer von ir
not shall have I will so so shall never from her
gehœret werden ‘ich enwil niht’: wan ‘ich enwil niht’ ist ein
heard become I will not for I will not is a
wâriu vergift aller gehôrsami. Daz sprichet sant Augustînus,
true poison of-all obedience That says saint Augustine
den getriuwen diener den geluste niht, daz man ime sage
the faithful servant him lusts not that one to-him say
oder gebe, daz er gerne sêhe oder hœrte, wan sîn êrster
or give what he gladly would-see or would-hear for his first
hœhster flîz ist ze hœrenne waz gote aller meist gevellet.
highest diligence is to hear what to-God all most pleases

Von dem allerkreftigesten gebete unde von dem aller hoehsten werke

II · THE MIGHTIEST PRAYER AND THE HIGHEST WORK

The mightiest prayer and the worthiest work come from an unburdened mind, bound to nothing, seeking nothing of its own, sunk in God's dearest will: the freer it is, the stronger the prayer. Such a mind can do all things. One should pray with every limb and sense turned to it, and not cease until one finds oneself wanting to be one with Him whom one has present and asks, that is, God.

Daz kreftigeste gebet unde vil nâch daz allermehtigeste alliu
The strongest prayer and very nearly the all-mightiest all
dinc ze erwerbenne unde daz allerwirdigeste werc von allen
things to obtain and the all-worthiest work of all
dingen, daz ist, daz dâ gêt ûz einem ledigen gemüete. Ie
things that is that there goes out-of a free mind Ever
lediger daz ist, ie daz gebet unde werc kreftiger, wirdiger,
freer that is ever the prayer and work stronger worthier
nêher, lobelîcher unde vollekomener ist. Daz ledige gemüete
nearer more-praiseworthy and more-perfect is The free mind
vermag alliu dinc. Waz ist ein ledic gemüete? Daz ist ein
is-able-for all things What is a free mind That is a
ledic gemüete, daz mit nihte beladen ist oder beworren ist
free mind which with nothing burdened is or entangled is
noch zuo nihte gebunden ist noch des sînen niht enmeinet
nor to anything bound is nor of-the its anything intends
in dekeinen dingen denne alzemâle in den liebesten willen
in any things but wholly into the dearest will
gotes versenket ist unde des sînen ûz gegangen ist. Niemer
of-God sunk is and of-the its out gone is Never
mac der mensche kein sô snœde werc gewürken, ez neme
may the man any so base work work unless-it take

hie inne sîne kraft und sîn vermügen. Alsô krefteclîche
here in its strength and its ability So strongly
sol man beten, daz man wölte, daz alliu diu gelider des
shall one pray that one would that all the limbs of-the
menschen unde krefte, beidiu ougen und ôren, herze, munt
man and powers both eyes and ears heart mouth
und alle sinne dar zuo gekêret wêren, unde niht ensol man
and all senses there to turned were and not shall one
ûf hœren, man vinde denne, daz man sich welle vereinen
up cease unless-one find then that one oneself will unite
mit dem, den man gegenwürtic hât unde bitet, daz ist got.
with him whom one present has and prays that is God

Von ungelâzenen liuten, die vol eigens willen sint

III · UNRESIGNED PEOPLE, FULL OF SELF-WILL

People complain they would be at peace with God if they were elsewhere, poorer, in exile, in a hermitage or a cloister; but the fault is their own will and nothing else. Places, people, and ways do not hinder: a man hinders himself in them, and unless he first flees himself, wherever he flees he finds hindrance and discord. He must first leave himself, and then he has left all things. A saint says that Peter, who left only a net and a little boat, left all that worldly people can gain or desire; whoever leaves his will leaves all things, as Christ said: blessed are the poor in spirit, and let him first deny himself.

Die menschen sprechent ‘eyâ, herre, ich wolte gerne, daz
The men say eya lord I would gladly that
mir alsô wol mit gote wêre und alsô vil andâht hête und
to-me so well with God were and so much devotion had and
fride mit gote, als ander liute hânt, unde wolte, daz mir
peace with God as other people have and would that to-me

alsô wêre oder daz ich alsô arm künde sîn', oder 'mir wirt
so were or that I so poor could be or to-me becomes
niemer reht, ich ensî denne dâ oder dâ oder tuo sus
never right unless-I be then there or there or do thus
oder sô, ich muoz in ellende sîn oder in einer klûsen oder
or so I must in exile be or in a hermitage or
in einem klôster.' In der wârheit, des bist dû alles selber
in a cloister In the truth of-that art thou all self
schult und anders niht zemâle. Ez ist eigener wille alleine.
the-cause and otherwise nothing wholly It is own will alone
Weist dû es niht oder dunket dich es niht, niemer enstêt
Knowest thou it not or seems-to thee it not never rises
ein unfride in dir ûf, er kome von eigenem willen, man
a discord in thee up unless-it come from own will one
merke ez oder enmerke ez niht. Swaz wir des meinen, daz
notice it or notice it not Whatever we of-it intend that
der mensche disiu dinc sol fliehen unde jene sol suochen
the man these things shall flee and those shall seek
(daz sint die stete unde die liute unde die wîse oder die
those are the places and the people and the manners or the
meinunge oder diu werc), daz ist niht schult, daz dich die
intentions or the works that is not the-cause that thee the
wîse oder diu dinc hindernt, mêr: dû bist ez in den dingen
manner or the things hinder but thou art it in the things
selber daz dich hindret, wan dû haltest dich unordenlîche
self that thee hinders for thou holdest thee disorderly
in den dingen. Dar umbe heb an dir selber an zem êrsten
in the things There for begin with thee self on at-the first
unde lâz dich. In der wârheit, dû fliehest dich denne
and leave thee In the truth unless-thou fleest thee then
zem êrsten, anders swâ dû hin fliehest, dâ vindest dû
at-the first otherwise wherever thou thither fleest there findest thou

hindernüsse und unfride, ez sî swâ daz sî. Die liute, die
hindrance and discord it be wherever that be The people who
fride suochent in ûzwendigen dingen, ez sî an steten oder
peace seek in outward things it be in places or
an wîsen oder an liuten oder an werken oder daz ellende
in manners or in people or in works or the exile
oder armuot oder smâcheit, swie grôz daz sî oder swaz
or poverty or contempt however great that be or whatever
daz sî, daz ist dennoch allez niht noch engibet keinen fride.
that be that is still all nothing nor gives any peace
Sie suochent alles unreht die alsô suochent: ie verrer sie
They seek all wrongly who so seek ever farther they
ûz gênt, ie minr sie vindent daz sie suochent. Sie gânt als
out go ever less they find what they seek They go as
einer, der eines weges vermisset: ie verrer er gât, ie mêr
one who a way misses ever farther he goes ever more
er irret. Mêr: waz sol er tuon? Er sol sich selber lâzen zem
he errs But what shall he do He shall him self leave at-the
êrsten, sô hât er alliu dinc gelâzen. In der wârheit, lieze
first so has he all things left In the truth should-leave
ein mensche ein künicrîche oder alle die welt unde behielte
a man a kingdom or all the world and should-keep
sich selber, sô enhête er niht gelâzen. Jâ unde lêzet der
him self so would-have he nothing left Yea and (if)-leaves the
mensche sich selber, swaz er denne behelt, ez sî rîchtuom
man him self whatever he then keeps it be riches
oder êre oder swaz daz sî, sô hât er alliu dinc gelâzen.
or honor or whatever that be so has he all things left
Ez sprichet ein heilige ûf daz wort, daz sant Pêter sprach
It says a saint on the word that saint Peter spoke
'sich, herre, wir haben alliu dinc gelâzen', und er hete doch
see lord we have all things left and he had yet

niht gelâzen denne ein blôz netze unde sîn schiffelîn, der
nothing left but a bare net and his little-ship the
heilige sprichet: swer daz kleine willeclîche lât, der lât ez
saint says whoever the small willingly leaves he leaves it
niht alleine, mêr: er lât allez, daz weltlîche liute mügent
not alone but he leaves all that worldly people can
gewinnen, jâ daz sie ouch mügent begern. Wan der sînen
gain yea what they also can desire For who his
willen unde sich selber lât, der hât alliu dinc gelâzen alse
will and him self leaves he has all things left as
wêrlîche, als sie sîn frî eigen wêren unde sie besezzen hête
truly as-if they his free own were and them possessed had
mit ganzem gewalte. Wan daz dû niht wilt begern, daz hâst
with whole power For what thou not wilt desire that hast
dû allez begeben unde gelâzen durch got. Dar umbe sprach
thou all given-up and left for God There for spoke
unser herre 'sêlic sint die armen des geistes', daz ist des
our lord blessed are the poor of-the spirit that is of-the
willen. Und hier an ensol nieman zwîvelen: wêre kein bezzer
will And here in shall no-one doubt were any better
wîse, unser herre hête sî gesprochen, als er ouch sprach
manner our lord would-have it spoken as he also spoke
'swer mir welle nâch volgen, der verzîhe sich sîn selbes
whoever me will after follow he renounce himself of-his self
zem êrsten, dâ lît ez allez an.' Nim dîn selbes war, unde
at-the first there lies it all on Take of-thy self heed and
swâ dû dich vindest, dâ lâz dich: daz ist daz aller beste.
wherever thou thee findest there leave thee that is the all best

Von dem nutze lâzennes, daz man tuon sol von innen unde von ûzen

IV · THE PROFIT OF LEAVING ONESELF

No one ever left himself so far that he could not leave more. It is an even bargain: as far as you go out of all things, so far God goes in with all that is His, and there alone is true peace. People should think less about what they do and more about what they are, for works do not hallow us, we hallow our works; holiness rests on being, not on doing, and all care belongs to the ground the works come from.

Dû solt wizzen, daz nie mensche sich sô vil geliez in
Thou shalt know that never man himself so much left in
disem lebenne, er funde sich dennoch mêr ze lâzenne.
this life but-he found himself still more to leave
Der liute ist wênic, die des rehte war nement unde dar an
Of-the people are few who of-it rightly heed take and there in
bestênt. Ez ist reht ein gelîche widergelt und ein gelîcher
persevere It is truly an equal requital and an equal
kouf: als vil dû ûz gâst aller dinge, als vil (noch minr
bargain as much thou out goest of-all things as much neither less
noch mê) gât got în mit allem dem sînen, als dû zemâle
nor more goes God in with all the his as thou wholly
ûz gâst in allen dingen des dînen. Dâ heb an unde des
out goest in all things of-the thine There begin on and of-that
lâ dich kosten allez, daz dû geleisten maht. Dâ vindest
let thee cost all that thou achieve canst There findest
dû wâren fride unde niendert anderswâ. Die liute endörften
thou true peace and nowhere elsewhere The people would-need
niemer vil gedenken, waz sie têten, sie solten aber
never much think what they did they should however
gedenken, waz sie wêren. Wêren nû die liute guot und ir
think what they were Were now the people good and their

wîse, sô möhten ir werc sêre liuhten. Bist dû gereht, sô
manner so might their works greatly shine (If)-art thou just so
sint ouch dîniu werc gereht. Niht gedenke heilikeit ze setzen
are also thy works just Not think holiness to set
ûf ein tuon: man sol heilikeit setzen ûf ein sîn. Wan diu
on a doing one shall holiness set on a being For the
werc heiligent uns niht, sunder wir süllen diu werc heiligen.
works sanctify us not but we shall the works sanctify
Swie heilic diu werc iemer sîn, sô heiligent sie uns zemâle
However holy the works ever be so sanctify they us wholly
niht als verre sie werc sint, mêr: als verre als wir sîn
not as far they works are but as far as we being
unde wesen hân, als verre heiligen wir alliu unsriu werc, ez
and essence have so far sanctify we all our works it
sî ezzen, slâfen, wachen oder swaz daz sî; die niht von
be eating sleeping waking or whatever that be those-who not of
grôzem wesenne sint, swaz werke die würkent, dâ wirt
great being are whatever works they work there becomes
niht ûz. Hie merke, daz man allen flîz dar ûf sol legen,
nothing out Here mark that one all diligence there on shall lay
daz man guot sî, niht als vil waz man getuo oder welher
that one good be not so much what one do or of-what
leie geslehte diu werc sîn, sunder wie der grunt der werke sî.
sort kind the works be but how the ground of-the works be

Merke, waz daz wesen unde den grunt guot mache

V · WHAT MAKES THE BEING AND THE GROUND GOOD

A man's being and ground are good, and his works take their goodness from it, when his mind is turned wholly to God. Let God become great to you and all your striving be toward Him, and every work grows better. Cleave to God and He hangs all goodness on you; seek Him and you find Him and all good. Stepping on a stone in that intent is more godly than receiving the Body of Christ with a mind less detached. What you once pursued now pursues you.

Der grunt, dar an daz lît, daz des menschen wesen unde
The ground there on that lies that the man's being and
grunt guot sî grœzlîchen, dâ des menschen werc ir güete
ground good be greatly whence the man's works their goodness
abe nement, daz ist, daz des menschen gemüete genzlîche ze
off take that is that the man's mind wholly to
gote gekêret sî. Dar ûf setze allez dîn studieren, daz dir
God turned be There on set all thy study that to-thee
got grôz werde unt daz aller dîn ernst unde flîz zuo
God great become and that all thy earnestness and diligence to
ime sî in allen dînen werken und in allem dînem lâzen.
him be in all thy works and in all thy leaving
In der wârheit, ie dû des mê hâst, ie alliu dîniu werc,
In the truth ever thou of-it more hast ever all thy works
welherleie sie sint, bezzer sint. Hafte gote an, sô henket er
of-whatever-kind they are better are Cling to-God on so hangs he
dir alle güete an. Suoche got, sô vindest dû got und allez
to-thee all goodness on Seek God so findest thou God and all
guot. Jâ in der wârheit, dû möhtest in solicher meinunge
good Yea in the truth thou mightest in such intention
ûf einen stein treten, ez wêre mê ein götlich werc, denne
upon a stone tread it would-be more a divine work than

ob dû des dînen mêr meindest in deme, daz dû nêmest
if thou of-the thine more intendedst in that that thou shouldst-take
den lîcham unsers herren, unde dîn meinunge minre abe
the body of-our lord and thy intention less off
gescheiden wêre. Der gote an haftet, dem haftet got an und
separated were Who to-God on clings to-him clings God on and
alliu tugent. Unde daz dû vor suochtest, daz suochet nû
all virtue And what thou before soughtest that seeks now
dich, unde daz dû vor jagtest, daz jaget nû dich, unde daz
thee and what thou before huntedst that hunts now thee and what
dû vor mohtest geflichen, daz fliuhet nû dich. Dar umbe
thou before mightest flee that flees now thee There for
der gote ane haftet grœzlîche, dem haftet an allez, daz
who to-God on clings greatly to-him clings on all that
götlich ist, unde fliuhet allez, daz ungelîch unde fremde ist.
divine is and flees all that unlike and alien is

Von der abegescheidenheit unde von haben gotes

VI · DETACHMENT AND THE HAVING OF GOD

Asked whether people should withdraw into solitude or a church to find peace, Eckhart says no: whoever truly has God has Him in the street as in the cell, since God works all the works of one who intends Him alone. A thought of God passes with the thought; one must have an essential God, kept present as a thirsty man keeps the drink in mind. This inner solitude is learned as a pupil learns his letters, until he writes freely.

Ich wart gefrâget: etlîche liute zügen sich sêre von den
I was asked some people drew themselves greatly from the
liuten unde wêren gerne alleine unt dar an lêge ir fride,
people and were gladly alone and there in lay their peace

unde daz sie wêren in der kirchen, obe daz daz beste
and that they were in the church whether that the best
wêre? Dô sprach ich: nein! unde merke, war umbe. Weme
were Then spoke I no and mark where fore To-whom
reht ist, in der wârheit, dem ist an allen steten unde bî
right is in the truth to-him is in all places and with
allen liuten reht; weme aber unreht ist, dem ist unreht
all people right to-whom however wrong is to-him is wrong
in allen steten unde bî allen liuten. Weme aber reht ist,
in all places and with all people To-whom however right is
der hât got in der wârheit bî im. Wer aber got reht
he has God in the truth with him Who however God rightly
in der wârheit hât, der hât in in allen steten und in
in the truth has he has him in all places and in
der strâze unde bî allen liuten als wol als in der kirchen
the street and with all people as well as in the church
oder in der einœde oder in der zellen: ob er in anders
or in the solitude or in the cell if he him otherwise
reht hât und ob er in alleine hât, den menschen enmac
rightly has and if he him alone has the man may
nieman gehindern. War umbe? Dâ hât er alleine got, unde
no-one hinder Where fore There has he alone God and
wer denne in allen dingen lûter got meinet, der mensche
who then in all things purely God intends the man
treit got in allen sînen werken und in allen steten, und
bears God in all his works and in all places and
alles des menschen werc diu würket got lûterlîchen, wan
all the man's works those works God purely for
wer daz werc sachet, des ist daz werc eigenlîcher unde
who the work causes his is the work more-properly and
wêrlîcher denne des, der dâ würket daz werc. Meinen
more-truly than his who there works the work (If)-intend

wir denne got lûterlîchen und alleine, in der wârheit sô
we then God purely and alone in the truth so
muoz er unser werc würken und an sînen werken allen
must he our works work and in his works all
enmag in nieman gehindern, weder menige noch stete.
may him no-one hinder either crowd or places
Alsô enmac disen menschen nieman gehindern, wan er
So may this man no-one hinder for he
enmeinet niht noch ensuochet niht noch ensmecket ime
intends nothing nor seeks anything nor tastes to-him
niht dan got; wan er wirt dem menschen in aller sîner
anything but God for he becomes to-the man in all his
meinunge geeiniget, und alsô als got dekein manicvaltekeit
intention united and so as God no multiplicity
mac zerstrewen, alsô enmac disen menschen niht zerstrewen
may scatter so may this man nothing scatter
noch vermanicvaltigen, wan er ist einz in dem einen, dâ
nor multiply for he is one in the one where
alliu manicvaltekeit einz ist und ein unvermanicvaltekeit ist.
all multiplicity one is and an unmultipliedness is
Der mensche sol got nemen in allen dingen unde sol sîn
The man shall God take in all things and shall his
gemüete wenen, daz er alle zît got habe in gegenwürtekeit
mind accustom that he all time God have in presence
in dem gemüete und in der meinunge und in der minne.
in the mind and in the intention and in the love
Merke, wie dû dînen got meinest. Sô dû bist in der
Mark how thou thy God intendest When thou art in the
kirchen oder in der zelle, daz selbe gemüete behalt unde
church or in the cell that same mind keep and
trag daz under die menige und in die unruowe und in
carry that among the crowd and into the unrest and into

die unglîcheit. Und als ich mê gesprochen hân, wenne
the unlikeness And as I more spoken have when
man seit von glîcheit, sô meinet man niht, daz man alliu
one speaks of likeness so means one not that one all
werc gelîch sülle ahten oder alle stete oder alle liute;
works alike shall regard or all places or all people
daz wêre gar unreht, wan ez ist ein bezzer werc beten
that were wholly wrong for it is a better work to-pray
denne spinnen und ein edeleriu stat diu kirche denne diu
than to-spin and a nobler place the church than the
strâze. Aber dû solt in den werken ein gelîchez gemüete
street But thou shalt in the works a like mind
haben und ein gelîch getrûwen, unde nim zuo dîme gote
have and a like trust and take to thy God
einen gelîchen ernst. Triuwen, wêre dir alsô gelîch, sô
a like earnestness Truly were to-thee so alike so
enhinderte dich nieman dîns gegenwürtigen gotes. Aber
would-hinder thee no-one of-thy present God But
weme alsô got in der wârheit niht innen ist, sunder allez
to-whom so God in the truth not within is but all
got von ûzwendic muoz nemen in dem und in dem, unde
God from outside must take in this and in that and
wenne er in ungelîcher wîse got suochet, ez sîn werc oder
when he in unlike manner God seeks it be works or
liute oder stete, sô enhât er got niht, unt daz mac lîhte
people or places so has he God not and that may perhaps
sîn, daz den menschen hindert, wan er hât gotes niht
be that the man hinders for he has of-God nothing
unde suochet in niht alleine noch minnet noch meinet in
and seeks him not alone nor loves nor intends him
niht alleine, unt dar umbe hindert in niht alleine bœsiu
not alone and there for hinders him not alone evil

geselleschaft, sunder in hindert ouch diu guote, unde niht
company but him hinders also the good and not
alleine diu strâze, sunder ouch diu kirche, noch niht alleine
alone the street but also the church nor not alone
bœsiu wort unde werc, mêr: ouch guotiu wort unde werc.
evil words and works but also good words and works
Wan daz hindernüsse ist in ime, wan in im ist niht got
For the hindrance is in him for in him is not God
worden alliu dinc; wan wêre er im daz, sô wêre im
become all things for were he to-him that so would-be to-him
in allen steten unde bî allen liuten gar reht unde wol,
in all places and with all people wholly right and well
wan er hête got unde den enmac ime nieman genemen
for he had God and him may from-him no-one take
noch sînes werkes enmac in nieman gehindern. War an
nor of-his work may him no-one hinder Where in
lît nû diz wâre haben gotes, daz man in wêrlîchen habe?
lies now this true having of-God that one him truly have
Diz wêrlîche haben gotes lît an dem gemüete und an eime
This true having of-God lies in the mind and in an
inneclîchen vernünftigen zuokêren unde meinen gotes, niht
inward rational turning-to and intending of-God not
an eime stêten andenken in einer glîchen wîse, wan daz
in a constant remembering in a like manner for that
wêre unmüglich der nâtûre in der meinunge ze haben unde
were impossible to-the nature in the intention to have and
sêre swêre und ouch daz allerbeste niht. Der mensche sol
very heavy and also the all-best not The man shall
niht haben noch im lâzen genüegen mit einem gedâhten
not have nor himself let suffice with a thought
gote, wenne der gedank vergât, sô vergât ouch der got;
God when the thought passes so passes also the God

mêr: man sol haben einen gewesenden got, der verre ist
but one shall have an essential God who far is
obe den gedenken des menschen und aller crêatûre. Der
above the thoughts of-the man and of-all creatures That
got vergêt niht, der mensche kêre denne willeclîche abe.
God passes not unless-the man turn then willingly off
Der got alsô in wesen hât, der nimet got götlîchen unde
Who God so in being has he takes God divinely and
dem liuhtet er in allen dingen, wan alliu dinc smeckent
to-him shines he in all things for all things taste
ime götlich unde got erbildet sich im ûz allen dingen.
to-him divine and God images himself to-him out-of all things
In ime blicket got alle zît, in im ist ein abegescheiden
In him glances God all time in him is a detached
abekêren und ein înbilden sînes geminten gegenwürtigen
turning-off and an in-imaging of-his beloved present
gotes. Ze glîcher wîse als den dâ hitzeclîchen dürstet in
God In like manner as to-him who hotly thirsts in
rehtem durste, der tête wol anders denne trinken unde
right thirst he would-do well otherwise than drink and
mac ouch wol ander dinc gedenken; mêr: aber waz er
may also well other things think but however whatever he
tuo oder bî weme er sî, in welher meinunge oder waz
do or with whom he be in whatever intention or whatever
er gedenke oder waz er würke, ime vergêt doch daz
he think or whatever he work to-him passes yet the
bilde des trankes niht, die wîle der durst wert; und als
image of-the drink not the while the thirst lasts and as
vil grœzer der durst ist, als vil mêr und inwendiger unde
much greater the thirst is so much more and more-inward and
gegenwürtiger unde stêter ist daz bilde des trankes.
more-present and more-constant is the image of-the drink

Oder der dâ hitzeclîchen ein dinc minnet mit ganzer
Or he-who there hotly a thing loves with whole
kraft, alsô daz im niht anders smecket unde ze herzen
strength so that to-him nothing else tastes and to heart
gât denne daz unde meinet daz alleine und anders zemâle
goes than that and intends that alone and otherwise wholly
niht: entriuwen, wâ der mensche ist oder bî weme er
nothing truly wherever the man is or with whom he
ist oder wes er beginnet oder waz er tuot, sô verlischet
is or what he begins or what he does so goes-out
niemer in ime daz er alsô minnet, und in allen dingen
never in him what he so loves and in all things
vindet er des dinges bilde und ist ime alsô gegenwürtic, als
finds he the thing's image and is to-him so present as
vil der minne mêr unde mêr ist. Der mensche ensuochet
much the love more and more is The man seeks
niht ruowe, wan in hindert kein unruowe. Der mensche
not rest for him hinders no unrest The man
ist verre mê von gote gelobet, wenne er alliu dinc güetlîche
is far more by God praised when he all things kindly
nimt unde mê denne diu dinc an ir selber sint. Triuwen,
takes and more than the things in them selves are Truly
hie zuo gehœret flîz unde minne und ein wol warnemen
here to belongs diligence and love and a well taking-heed
des menschen inwendikeit und ein wacker wâr vernünftic
of-the man's inwardness and a wakeful true rational
würklich wizzen, war ûffe daz gemüete stê in den dingen
working knowing where upon the mind stand in the things
unde bî den liuten. Sus mac der mensche niht gelernen mit
and with the people Thus may the man not learn with
fliehen, daz er diu dinc fliuhet unde sich an die einœde
fleeing that he the things flees and himself to the solitude

kêret von ûzwendikeit, sunder er muoz ein innerlich einœde
turns from outwardness but he must an inner solitude
lernen, wâ oder bî wem er ist. Er muoz lernen diu dinc
learn wherever or with whom he is He must learn the things
durchbrechen unde sînen got dar inne nemen unde denne
break-through and his God there in take and then
krefteclîche in sich künnen erbilden in einer wesenlîcher
strongly into himself know-how to-image in an essential
wîse, glîcher wîse, als einer, der dâ wil schrîben lernen.
manner like manner as one who there will to-write learn
Triuwen, sol er die kunst kunnen, er muoz sich vil
Truly (if)-shall he the art know he must himself much
unt dicke an den werken üeben, wie sûr unde swêr ez
and often in the works exercise however sour and hard it
ime doch werde unde wie unmüglîchen ez in dunke.
to-him yet become and however impossible it him seem
Wil er ez flîzeclîchen üeben unde dicke, er lernet ez unde
(If)-will he it diligently exercise and often he learns it and
gewinnet die kunst. Triuwen, zem êrsten muoz er haben
gains the art Truly at-the first must he have
ein andenken eins ieglîchen buochstaben unde den in sich
a remembering of-an every letter and that into himself
verbilden vil vaste. Dar nâch sô er nû die kunst hât,
image very firmly There after when he now the art has
sô wirt er des bildes zemâle ledic unde des andenkens,
so becomes he of-the image wholly free and of-the remembering
sô schrîbet er ledeclîchen unde frîlîchen, oder ez sî vederlîn
so writes he freely and freely or it be little-feather
oder künne werc, diu ûz sîner kunst süllen geschehen,
or any work which out-of his art shall happen
dâ mit ist im zemâle genuoc, daz er joch wizze, daz
there with is to-him wholly enough that he even know that

er daz werc sîner kunst wil üeben. Und ob er sî âne
he the work of-his art will exercise And though he be without
stêtez angedenken, swaz er joch denke, dennoch würket
constant remembering whatever he even think still works
er sîn werc ûzer sîner kunst. Alsô sol der mensche mit
he his work out-of his art So shall the man with
götlîcher gegenwürtikeit liuhten âne alle arbeit, mêr: eine
divine presence shine without all toil but a
blôzheit nemen in allen dingen unde der dinge zemâle
bareness take in all things and of-the things wholly
ledic blîben. Dâ muoz zem êrsten ein angedenken und ein
free remain There must at-the first a remembering and a
merklich înerbilden zuo gehœren, als dem schuoler zuo der
noticeable in-imaging to belong as to-the pupil to the
kunst. Alsô sol der mensche mit götlîcher gegenwürtikeit
art So shall the man with divine presence
durchgangen sîn unde mit der forme sîns geminten gotes
through-gone be and with the form of-his beloved God
durchformet sîn und in ime gewesent sîn, daz ime sîn
through-formed be and in him in-being be that to-him his
gegenwürtikeit liuhte âne alle arbeit.
presence shine without all toil

Wie der mensche sîn werc sol wirken ûf daz hoehste vernünfteclîchen

VII · HOW A MAN SHOULD DO HIS WORKS WISELY, TO THE HIGHEST

It is not enough that things leave no image in a heart full of God; we must turn all things, however strange, to our profit, and never stop growing. A man should use his reason in every work, keeping a knowing watch on himself and taking God in everything, like servants waiting for their lord who look for him in all that comes. To one whose mind is equal, God shines as bare in the most worldly work as in the most godly. Since no one lives without works, he must learn to have God in them; and the beginner, when he must work among people, should first arm himself with God and fix Him firmly in his heart.

Der liute vindet man vil unde kumt der mensche
Of-the people finds one many and comes the man
lîhteclîche dar zuo, ob er wil, daz in diu dinc, dâ bî
easily there to if he will that him the things with which
er wandelt, niht enhindernt noch kein blîbent bilde in îme
he walks not hinder nor any abiding image in him
sitzet, wan swâ daz herze vol gotes ist, dâ enmügent die
sits for where the heart full of-God is there may the
crêatûre niht stat gehaben noch vinden; mêr: dar an ensol
creatures no place have nor find but there in shall
uns niht genüegen, wir sullen uns alliu dinc grœzlîcher
to-us not suffice we shall to-us all things more-greatly
tuon ze frumen, daz sie sîn waz wir sîn, waz wir sehen
make for profit that they be what we be what we see
oder hœren, wie fremde daz sî oder wie ungelîch.
or hear however alien that be or however unlike
Denne allerêrst ist uns reht unde niht ê, unde niemer
Then all-first is to-us right and not before and never
sol der mensche hier an ze ende komen, er müge hier
shall the man here at to end come but-he may here

an âne underlâz wahsen unde mê gewinnen in einem
at without ceasing grow and more gain in a
wâren zuonemen. Unde der mensche sol zuo allen sînen
true increasing And the man shall to all his
werken unde bî allen dingen sîner vernunft merklîchen
works and with all things his reason noticeably
gebrûchen und in allen dingen ein vernünftigez mitewizzen
use and in all things a rational co-knowing
haben sîn selbes unde sîner innewendikeit unde nemen
have of-his self and of-his inwardness and take
in allen dingen got in der hœhsten wîse, als ez müglich
in all things God in the highest manner as it possible
ist. Wan der mensche sol sîn, als unser herre sprach 'ir
is For the man shall be as our lord spoke you
sulnt sîn alse liute, die alle zît wachent unde beitent irs
shall be as people who all time wake and await their
herren.' Entriuwen, die beitenden liute sint wacheric unde
lord Truly the awaiting people are watchful and
sehent sich umbe, wâ er her kume des sie beitent, unde
look them about whence he hither come whom they await and
wartent sîn in allem dem, daz dâ kumt, swie fremde
watch for-him in all that which there comes however alien
ez in doch sî, ob er dâ mite iht sî. Alsô süllen
it to-them yet be whether he there with anything be So shall
wir haben ein wizzendez warnemen unsers herren in allen
we have a knowing heed of-our lord in all
dingen. Dar zuo muoz flîz gehœren unde muoz kosten
things There to must diligence belong and must cost
allez, daz man geleisten mac an sinnen unde an kreften,
all that one achieve may in senses and in powers
sô wirt den liuten reht unde nement got in allen dingen
so becomes to-the people right and take God in all things

gelîch unde vindent gotes gelîch vil in allen dingen, unde
alike and find of-God equally much in all things and
dâ ist wol ein werc anders denne daz ander. Aber der sîn
there is well one work other than the other But who his
werc tête ûz einem gelîchen gemüete, in der wârheit,
work should-do out-of a like mind in the truth
des werc wêren ouch alliu gelîch, unde dem reht wêre, in
his works would-be also all alike and to-whom right were in
der wârheit, dem liuhte got als blôz in dem weltlîchesten
the truth to-him would-shine God as bare in the most-worldly
als in dem aller götlîchesten, dem got alsô wêre worden.
as in the all most-divine to-whom God so were become
Triuwen, niht alsô, daz der mensche selber iht weltlîches
Truly not so that the man self anything worldly
oder ungelîches würke, mêr: swaz ime von ûzwendigen
or unlike work but whatever to-him from outward
dingen zuovellet an sehen oder an hœren, daz sol er ze
things befalls in seeing or in hearing that shall he to
gote kêren. Deme got alsô gegenwürtic ist in allen dingen
God turn To-whom God so present is in all things
unde sîner vernunft an dem obersten gewaltig ist unde der
and his reason in the highest mighty is and he
gebrûchende ist, der weiz alleine von wârem fride unde der
enjoying is he knows alone of true peace and he
hât ein reht himelrîche. Wan dem reht sol sîn, dem muoz
has a right heaven For to-whom right shall be to-him must
ie under zwein dingen einz geschehen: eintweder er sol got
ever of two things one happen either he shall God
nemen unde lernen haben in den werken, oder er sol alliu
take and learn to-have in the works or he shall all
dinc unde werc lâzen. Wan nû der mensche niht in disem
things and works leave For now the man not in this

lebenne mac gesîn âne werc, diu menschlich sint, der
life may be without works which human are of-which
vil ist, dar umbe sô lerne der mensche sînen got haben in
many is there for so learn the man his God to-have in
allen dingen und ungehindert blîben in allen werken unde
all things and unhindered remain in all works and
steten. Unt dar umbe swenne der anhebende mensche iht
places And there for when the beginning man anything
sol würken mit den liuten, sô sol er sich krefteclîche gotes
shall work with the people so shall he himself strongly of-God
vor warnen unde vesteclîche in daz herze setzen und alle
before arm and firmly into the heart set and all
sîne meinunge, gedenke, wille unde krefte mit ime vereinen,
his intention thought will and powers with him unite
daz sich anders niht müge erbilden in dem menschen.
that itself otherwise nothing may image in the man

Von dem stêten flîze in dem hoehsten zuonemen

VIII · CONSTANT ZEAL IN THE HIGHEST GROWTH

No work is ever done so well that a man may grow so free or so secure in it that his reason may idle or sleep. He should raise himself always with both powers, reason and will, take his very best in the highest, and guard himself wisely against all harm outside and within; then he misses nothing and grows greatly without ceasing.

Der mensche sol ouch niemer kein werc sô wol genemen noch
The man shall also never any work so well take nor
rehte getuon, daz er niemer sô frî sol werden in den werken
rightly do that he ever so free shall become in the works
oder sô sicher, daz sîn vernunft niemer müezic sol werden oder
or so secure that his reason ever idle shall become or

geslâfen, er sol sich ie mit den zwein kreften, der vernunft
asleep he shall himself ever with the two powers of-the reason
unde dem willen, erheben unde sîn aller bestez dar inne in dem
and the will raise and his all best there in in the
hœhsten nemen unde sich vor allem schaden vernünfteclîche
highest take and himself before all harm rationally
warnen ûzwendic und inwendic, sô versûmet er in keinen dingen
guard outward and inward so neglects he in no things
niemer niht, sunder er nimt âne underlâz zuo grœzlîchen.
ever anything but he takes without ceasing to greatly

Wie die neigunge zuo den sünden dem menschen frument zuo allen zîten

IX · HOW THE INCLINATION TO SIN ALWAYS PROFITS A MAN

The assault of vice is never without great profit to the just. Of two men, one is hardly troubled by faults and the other is often moved, to anger, vanity or the body, yet stands unmoved in his highest powers and will not sin; the second is far more to be praised, for virtue is perfected in weakness, as Paul says. The inclination to sin is not sin; only the will to sin is. A just man would not wish it gone, for without it he would be careless and lack the honor of the fight and its reward; it drives him like a scourge to watchfulness and virtue, and virtue and vice alike lie in the will.

Dû solt wizzen, daz der anstôz der untugende ist in dem
Thou shalt know that the assault of-the vice is in the
gerehten menschen niemer âne grôzen frumen unde nutz.
just man never without great profit and use
Nû merke. Ez sint zwêne menschen. Der ein ist alsô,
Now mark There are two men The one is so
daz kein gebreste an in stôze oder wênic. Aber der ander
that no failing on him strike or little But the other

ist alsô, daz in anstôzen die gebresten. Von der ûzern
is so that him assail the failings By the outer
gegenwürtikeit der dinge sô wirt sîn ûzer mensche beweget,
presence of-the things so becomes his outer man moved
ez sî lîhte ze zorne oder zuo îteler êre oder lîhte lîplich,
it be perhaps to anger or to vain honor or perhaps bodily
nâch dem als der gegenwurf ist; aber mit sînen obersten
after that as the object is but with his highest
kreften sô stêt er zemâle stête unbeweget unde wil niht des
powers so stands he wholly steadfast unmoved and will not the
gebresten tuon, weder ze riuwen noch ze keiner sünde, unde
failing do neither to repent nor to any sin and
vihtet alsô wider den gebresten grœzlîchen, wan der gebreste
fights so against the failing greatly for the failing
ist vil lîhte nâtiurlich, als manic mensche von nâtûre zornic
is very likely natural as many-a man by nature angry
oder hôhvertic ist oder wie daz sî, unde wil doch die
or proud is or however that be and will yet the
sünden niht tuon. Dirre sol verre mêr gelobet sîn und ist
sins not do This-one shall far more praised be and is
sîn lôn vil grœzer unde mêr unde sîn tugent vil edeler
his reward much greater and more and his virtue much nobler
denne des êrsten. Wan volkomenheit der tugende kumt von
than of-the first For perfection of-the virtue comes from
dem strîte, als sant Paulus sprichet ‘diu tugent wirt volbrâht
the strife as saint Paul says the virtue becomes accomplished
in der krankheit.’ Diu neigunge zuo den sünden enist niht
in the weakness The inclination to the sins is not
sünde, aber wellen sünden, wellen zürnen, daz ist sünde. In
sin but will to-sin will to-rage that is sin In
der wârheit, dem reht wêre, hête er gewalt ze wünschenne,
the truth to-whom right were had he power to wish

er sölte niht wellen wünschen, daz ime vergienge neigunge
he should not will wish that from-him should-pass inclination
ze sünden, wan âne die sô stüende der mensche ungewis
to sins for without it so would-stand the man uncertain
in allen dingen und in allen sînen werken und âne sorge
in all things and in all his works and without care
bî den dingen unde darbete ouch der êren des strîtes unde
with the things and would-lack also the honors of-the strife and
siges unde des lônes. Wan der anstôz unde diu bewegunge
victory and of-the reward For the assault and the movement
der untugende bringent die tugent unde den lôn in dem
of-the vice bring the virtue and the reward in the
müejenne. Wan diu neigunge machet den menschen flîziger
toiling For the inclination makes the man more-diligent
allewege sich in der tugende grœzlîcher ze üebenne unde
always himself in the virtue more-greatly to exercise and
trîbet in zuo der tugende mit gewalte unde si ist ein
drives him to the virtue with force and it is a
strengiu geisel, die den menschen ze der huote unde ze der
stern scourge which the man to the guard and to the
tugende trîbet. Wan ie sich der mensche kranker vindet,
virtue drives For ever himself the man weaker finds
ie baz er sich der sterke unde des siges warnen sol; wan
ever better he himself of-the strength and of-the victory arm shall for
diu tugent und ouch diu untugent ligent in dem willen.
the virtue and also the vice lie in the will

Wie der wille alliu dinc vermac unde wie alle tugende in dem willen ligent, ob er anders gereht ist

X · THE WILL CAN DO ALL THINGS

No one with a good will should fear, or grieve that he cannot carry it out in works, for all virtue lies in the good will, and what you will wholly you have. As an evil will is sin without the deed, so a good will does all things before God. Love has its being in the will and its outbreak in devotion and jubilation; these are not always best and should at times be left for a work of love, as one would leave a rapture like Paul's to bring soup to a sick man. Whatever is willingly given up for God is returned a hundredfold, as Christ said, and to God's friends whatever God wills is their highest comfort.

Der mensche ensol sich sô sêre dekeines dinges erschrecken,
The man shall himself so sorely of-no thing frighten
die wîle er sich vindet in einem guoten willen, noch ensol
the while he himself finds in a good will nor shall
sich nihtesniht betrüeben, ob er des niht vollebringen mac
himself at-all trouble if he it not accomplish may
mit den werken. Aber er ensol sich niht verahten von den
with the works But he shall himself not despise from the
tugenden, als er in ime vindet einen rehten guoten willen;
virtues when he in him finds a right good will
wan diu tugent und allez guot lît in dem guoten willen.
for the virtue and all good lies in the good will
Dir enmac nihtes gebresten, obe dû einen wâren rehten
To-thee may nothing lack if thou a true right
willen hâst, weder minne noch dêmüetikeit noch dehein
will hast neither love nor humility nor any
tugent. Aber daz dû krefteclîche unde mit allem willen
virtue But what thou strongly and with all will
wilt, daz hâst dû unde des enmac dir got und alle
willest that hast thou and of-that may from-thee God and all

crêatûre niht benemen, ob der wille anders ganz ist und ein
creatures not take if the will otherwise whole is and a
götlich wille ist unde gote gegenwürtig ist. Niht alsô 'ich
divine will is and to-God present is Not so I
wolte mêr: daz wêre noch zuokünftic, sunder 'ich wil, daz
would but that were still future but I will that
ez iezuo alsô sî.' Nû merkent. Wêre ein dinc über tûsent
it now so be Now mark Were a thing over thousand
mîle unde wil ich ez haben, ich habe ez eigenlîcher denne
miles and will I it have I have it more-properly than
daz ich in mîner schôz hân, unde des ich niht wil haben,
what I in my lap have and which I not will have
daz guot ist niht minder kreftic zuo dem guoten denne
the good is not less strong to the good than
daz bœse zuo dem bœsen. Daz merke. Daz ich niemer
the evil to the evil That mark Though I never
kein bœs werc getête, dennoch hân ich den willen zuo dem
any evil work did yet have I the will to the
bœsen, ich hân die sünde. als ob ich diu werc hête getân,
evil I have the sin as if I the works had done
und ich möhte in eime ganzen willen alsô grôze sünde
and I might in a whole will as great sin
tuon, als ob ich alle welt hête getœtet unde doch niemer
do as if I all world had killed and yet never
kein werc dar zuo getête. War umbe solte daz selbe niht
any work there to did Where fore should the same not
mügen gesîn in eime guoten willen? Jâ vil und ungelîches
may be in a good will Yea much and incomparably
mêr. In der wârheit, mit dem willen vermac ich elliu dinc.
more In the truth with the will can I all things
Ich mag aller menschen arbeit tragen und alle armen spîsen
I may all men's toil bear and all poor feed

und aller menschen werc würken, und waz dû erdenken
and all men's works work and whatever thou think-up
maht, gebrichet dir niht an dem willen wan alleine an der
canst lacks to-thee not in the will but alone in the
maht, in der wârheit, vor gote hâst dû ez allez getân und
might in the truth before God hast thou it all done and
enmac dir daz nieman benemen noch dich des geirren
may from-thee that no-one take nor thee of-it hinder
einen ougenblik. Wan wellen tuon, als balde ich mac, unde
one eye-blink For will to-do as soon I can and
hân getân daz ist vor gote gelîch. Ouch wölte ich als vil
have done that is before God alike Also would I as much
willen hân als alliu diu welt hât und ist mîn begerunge
will have as all the world has and is my desire
dar zuo grôz unde ganz, in der wârheit, sô hân ich in,
there to great and whole in the truth so have I it
wan daz ich haben wil daz hân ich. Ouch wolte ich in
for what I have will that have I Also would I in
der wârheit als vil minne haben als alle menschen ie
the truth as much love have as all men ever
gewunnen unde got alsô vil loben oder waz dû erdenken
won and God so much praise or whatever thou think-up
maht, daz hâst dû allez in der wârheit, obe der wille ganz
canst that hast thou all in the truth if the will whole
ist. Nû möhtest dû frâgen, wâ der wille ein reht wille
is Now mightest thou ask where the will a right will
sî? Dâ ist der wille ganz unde reht, dâ er âne alle
be There is the will whole and right where it without all
eigenschaft ist unt dâ er sîn selbes ûz gangen ist und
possessiveness is and where it of-its self out gone is and
in den willen gotes gebildet unde geformet ist. Jâ ie des
into the will of-God imaged and formed is Yea ever of-that

mê ist, ie der wille rehter unde wârer ist, und in dem
more is ever the will righter and truer is and in the
willen vermaht dû elliu dinc, ez sî minne oder waz dû
will canst thou all things it be love or whatever thou
wilt. Nû ist ein frâge: wie möhte ich dise minne hân, die
wilt Now is a question how might I this love have the
wîle ich ir niht enpfinde noch gewar wirde, als ich sihe
while I it not feel nor aware become as I see
an vil liuten, die bewîsent grôziu werc, unde vinde an
in many people who show great works and find in
in grôze andâht unde wunder, des ich niht enhân? Hie
them great devotion and wonder which I not have Here
solt dû zwei dinc merken, die an der minne sint. Daz ein
shalt thou two things mark which in the love are The one
ist ein wesen der minne, daz ander ist ein werc oder ein
is a being of-the love the other is a work or an
ûzbruch des wesens der minne. Stat der minne ist alleine
outbreak of-the being of-the love Place of-the love is alone
in dem willen. Wer mê willen hât, der hât ouch der
in the will Who more will has he has also of-the
minne mêr. Aber wer des mêr habe, des enweiz nieman
love more But who of-it more have that knows no-one
von dem andern, daz lît verborgen in der sêle, die wîle
of the other that lies hidden in the soul the while
got verborgen lît in dem grunde der sêle. Disiu minne lît
God hidden lies in the ground of-the soul This love lies
alzemâle in dem willen: wer mê willen hât, der hât ouch
wholly in the will who more will has he has also
mê minne. Nû ist ein anderz, daz ist ein ûzbruch und ein
more love Now is an other that is an outbreak and a
werc der minne, daz schînet sêre, als innekeit und andâht
work of-the love that shines greatly as inwardness and devotion

unde jubilieren, entriuwen! und ist alwege daz beste niht,
and jubilation truly and is always the best not
wan ez ist etwenne von minne niht, sunder ez kumt von
for it is sometimes from love not but it comes from
nâtûre etwenne, daz man solichen smak unde süezekeit hât,
nature sometimes that one such taste and sweetness has
oder ez mac des himels îndruc sîn oder ez mac sinlich
or it may of-the heaven an-impression be or it may sensually
îngetragen sîn, unde die des mêr habent, die ensint
in-carried be and those-who of-it more have they are
allewege die aller besten niht, wan ez sî joch, daz ez wol
always the all best not for it be even that it well
von gote sî, sô gît unser herre daz solichen liuten durch ein
from God be so gives our lord that to-such people for an
niugern unde durch ein reizen und ouch daz man dâ mite
enticing and for an alluring and also that one there with
sêre enthalten wirt von andern menschen. Aber die selben
greatly held-apart becomes from other men But the same
sô sie her nâch mê minne gewinnent, sô habent sie lîhte
when they here after more love gain so have they likely
niht als vil gefüelens und enpfindens unde dar ân schînet
not as much feeling and perceiving and there on shines
wol, daz sie minne habent, obe sie âne solichen enthalt
well that they love have if they without such support
got ganz unde stête getriuwe haltent. Nû sî, daz ez zemâle
God whole and steadfast faithfully keep Now be that it wholly
minne sî, sô enist ez doch daz aller beste niht dar an, wan
love be so is it yet the all best not there in for
man sol solichen jubilus underwîlen lâzen durch ein bezzerz
one shall such jubilation sometimes leave for a better
von minne und underwîlen durch ein minnewerc ze würken,
from love and sometimes for a love-work to work

dâ man sîn niht nôt hât, geistlîchen oder weltlîchen oder
where one of-it no need has spiritual or worldly or
lîplichen. Als ich mê gesprochen hân, wêre der mensche
bodily As I more spoken have were the man
alsô in eime înzucke als sanctus Paulus was unde weste
so in a rapture as saint Paul was and knew
einen siechen menschen, der eins suppelîns von ime bedörfte,
a sick man who a little-soup from him needed
ich ahte verre bezzer, daz dû liezest von minne von dem
I esteem far better that thou shouldst-leave from love from the
zucke unde diendest dem dürftigen in mêrre minne. Niht
rapture and shouldst-serve the needy in greater love Not
ensol der mensche wênen, daz er gnâden in disem sülle
shall the man suppose that he of-grace in this shall
beroubet werden. Wan swaz der mensche von willen lât
robbed become For whatever the man of will leaves
willeclîchen, daz wirt ime vil edeler, wan Kristus sprach
willingly that becomes to-him much nobler for Christ spoke
'wer iht lât durch mich, der sol hundertvalt als vil
who anything leaves for me he shall hundredfold as much
wider nemen.' Jâ in der wârheit, swaz der mensche lât
back take Yea in the truth whatever the man leaves
unde sich des verwiget durch got, jâ ez sî ouch, daz der
and himself of-it gives-up for God yea it be also that the
mensche grœzlîchen beger soliches trôstes, enpfindens und
man greatly desire such comfort perceiving and
innekeit, unde tuot dar zuo, waz er vermac, unde got gît ez
inwardness and does there to what he can and God gives it
im niht und er getrœstet sich sîn und enbirt sîn willeclîche
him not and he renounces himself of-it and forgoes it willingly
durch got, in der wârheit, er solz in ime vinden ze glîcher
for God in the truth he shall-it in him find in like

wîse, als ob er allez guot hête gehabet, daz ie wart, in
manner as if he all good had had that ever was in
ganzer besitzunge. Unde der des willeclîchen ûz wêre gangen
whole possession And who of-it willingly out were gone
unde sich es verwegen hête durch got, er sol hundertvalt
and himself of-it given-up had for God he shall hundredfold
als vil nemen. Wan waz der mensche gerne hête unde
as much take For what the man gladly had and
sich des getrœstet und enbirt durch got, ez sî lîplich oder
himself of-it renounces and forgoes for God it be bodily or
geistlich, daz vindet er allez in got, als ob daz der mensche
spiritual that finds he all in God as if that the man
hête gehabet und ez ûz wêre gangen willeclîche. Wan der
had had and it out were gone willingly For the
mensche sol willeclîchen beroubet sîn aller dinge durch got
man shall willingly robbed be of-all things for God
und in der minne sich erwegen unde getrœsten alles trôstes
and in the love himself give-up and renounce of-all comfort
von minne. Daz man solichez enpfinden sülle durch minne
from love That one such perceiving shall for love
lâzen under wîlen, daz bewîset uns der liebe Paulus, dâ
leave under whiles that shows us the dear Paul where
er sprichet 'ich hân gewünschet, daz ich müeste gescheiden
he says I have wished that I must separated
werden von Kristô umbe die minne mîner brüeder.' Daz
become from Christ for the love of-my brothers That
meinet er in dirre wîse, er meinte niht in der êrsten wîse
means he in this manner he meant not in the first manner
der minne, wan von der enwolte er niht sîn gescheiden
of-the love for from that would he not be separated
einen ougenblik umb allez, daz geschehen mac in himel und
one eye-blink for all that happen may in heaven and

in erden: er meinte in dem trôste. Dû solt aber wizzen,
in earth he meant in the comfort Thou shalt however know
daz die friunde gotes niemer âne trôst sint, wan waz got
that the friends of-God never without comfort are for what God
wil daz ist ir aller hœhster trôst, ez sî trôst oder untrôst.
wills that is their all highest comfort it be comfort or discomfort

Waz der mensche tuon sol, sô er gotes vermisset unde sich verborgen hât

XI · WHAT A MAN SHOULD DO WHEN GOD SEEMS ABSENT AND HIDDEN

The good will never loses God; only the mind's feeling misses Him and thinks He has gone. Then do just what you did in the greatest comfort, for God is found where He is let go. Many have their own will and want to teach God; it was when Paul and Mary gave up their will that God could work. One Ave said by a man gone out of himself outweighs a thousand psalters. Such a man is wrapped in God like a head in a cap: nothing touches him without touching God first, and all suffering takes its taste from God. Faults that slip in must not make him leave his work.

Ouch solt dû wizzen, daz der guote wille gotes niht mac
Also shalt thou know that the good will of-God not may
gemissen, mêr: daz enpfinden des gemüetes daz misset sîn
miss but the perceiving of-the mind that misses him
underwîlen unde wênet dicke, got sî für gangen. Waz solt
sometimes and supposes often God be forth gone What shalt
dû denne tuon? Rehte daz selbe, daz dû têtist, sô dû in
thou then do Just the same that thou didst when thou in
dem grœsten trôste wêrest. Daz selbe lerne tuon, sô dû
the greatest comfort wert The same learn to-do when thou
in dem meisten lîden bist, unde halt dich in aller wîse,
in the most suffering art and hold thee in all manner

als dû dich dâ hieltest. Ez enist dehein rât alse guot,
as thou thee there heldest There is no counsel as good
got ze vinden, denne wâ man got lât. Unde wie dir
God to find than where one God leaves And as to-thee
was, dô dû in zem letsten hetest, alsô tuo nû, die wîle
was when thou him at-the last hadst so do now the while
dû sîn missest, sô vindest dû in. Mêr: der guote wille der
thou him missest so findest thou him But the good will it
verliuset noch vermisset gotes niht noch niemer. Vil liute
loses nor misses of-God not nor ever Many people
sprechent: wir haben guoten willen; sie habent aber niht
say we have good will they have however not
gotes willen, sie wellent haben iren willen unde wellent
God's will they will have their will and will
unsern herren lêren, daz er tuo alsô und alsô. Daz enist
our lord teach that he do so and so That is
niht ein guot wille. Man sol an gote suochen sînen aller
not a good will One shall in God seek his all
liebsten willen. Des meinet got in allen dingen, daz wir den
dearest will That intends God in all things that we the
willen ûf geben. Dô sant Paulus mit unserm herren vil
will up give When saint Paul with our lord much
gekôsete und unser herre mit ime vil geredde, daz truoc
talked and our lord with him much spoke that brought
allez niht für, biz daz er den willen ûf gap unde sprach
all nothing forth until that he the will up gave and spoke
'herre, waz wilt dû, daz ich tuo?' Dô weste unser herre
lord what wilt thou that I do Then knew our lord
wol, waz er tuon solte. Alsô ouch, dô unserr frouwen der
well what he do should So also when to-our lady the
engel erschein: allez, daz si ie getet oder ie geredde, daz
angel appeared all that she ever did or ever spoke that

enhête sî niemer muoter gotes gemachet, sunder als balde
would-have her never mother of-God made but as soon
si iren willen ûf gap, alsô zehant wart si ein wâre muoter
she her will up gave so at-once became she a true mother
des êwigen gotes wortes und enpfienc got alzehant; der
of-the eternal God's word and received God at-once he
wart ir nâtiurlîcher sun. Ouch enmachet kein dinc einen
became her natural son Also makes no thing a
wâren menschen âne daz ûfgeben des willen. In der wârheit,
true man but the up-giving of-the will In the truth
âne ûfgeben des willen in allen dingen sô schaffen wir
without up-giving of-the will in all things so accomplish we
mit gote niht alzemâle. Mêr: kême ez alsô, daz wir allen
with God nothing wholly But should-come it so that we all
unsern willen ûf gêben und uns aller dinge durch got
our will up gave and ourselves of-all things for God
törsten erwegen ûzwendic und inwendic, sô hête wir elliu
dared give-up outward and inward so would-have we all
dinc getân, unde niht êr. Der liute vindet man wênic (sie
things done and not before Of-the people finds one few they
wizzenz oder enwizzenz niht), die wölten, daz in alsô
know-it or know-it not who would that to-them so
wêre unde daz sie grœzer dinc enpfunden, unde wölten die
were and that they greater things perceived and would the
wîse unde daz guot haben; ez ist allez niht denne eigener
manner and the good have it is all nothing but own
wille. Dû soltest dich gote genzlîcher ergeben mit allen
will Thou shouldst thee to-God more-wholly give with all
dingen unde dâ enruoch dich, waz er tuo mit dem sînen.
things and there care-not thee what he do with the his
Ez sint tûsent menschen tôt und in dem himel, die nie
There are thousand men dead and in the heaven who never

in rehter volkomenheit irs willen ûz giengen. Daz wêre
in right perfection of-their will out went That were
alleine ein volkomener und ein wârer wille, daz man ganz
alone a perfect and a true will that one whole
wêre getreten in gotes willen unde wêr âne eigen willen.
were stepped into God's will and were without own will
Unde wer des mê hât, der ist mê unde mê wêrlîcher in
And who of-it more has he is more and more truly in
got gesetzet. Jâ ein âve Marîâ, gesprochen in dem unde
God set Yea an ave Maria spoken in this and
dâ der mensche ûz gêt sîn selbes, daz ist nützer denne
where the man out goes of-his self that is more-useful than
tûsent psalter gelesen âne daz; jâ ein trit wêre bezzer
thousand psalters read without that yea a step were better
in dem dan über mer gegangen âne daz. Der mensche,
in that than over sea gone without that The man
der alsô ganz wêre ûz gangen mit allem dem sînen, in der
who so wholly were out gone with all the his in the
wârheit, der wêre alsô ganz in got gesetzet, wâ man den
truth he would-be so wholly into God set where one the
menschen rüeren solte, dâ müeste man got in dem êrsten
man touch should there must one God in the first
rüeren, wan er ist in gote alzemâle unde got ist umb in,
touch for he is in God wholly and God is around him
als mîn kappe umb mîn houpt ist, unde wer mich an wölte
as my cap around my head is and who me on would
grîfen, der müeste mîn kleit zem êrsten rüeren. Gelîcher
grasp he must my clothing at-the first touch In-like
wîse, sol ich trinken, sô muoz daz tranc zem êrsten
manner (if)-shall I drink so must the drink at-the first
über die zungen gên; dâ vindet daz tranc sînen smac. Ist
over the tongue go there finds the drink its taste (If)-is

diu zunge bekleidet mit bitterkeit, in der wârheit, wie
the tongue clothed with bitterness in the truth however
süeze der wîn ist an im selber, er muoz ie bitter werden
sweet the wine is in it self it must ever bitter become
von dem, durch daz er an mich kumt. In der wârheit, ein
from that through which it to me comes In the truth a
mensche, der des sînen ganz wêre ûz gangen, der würde
man who of-the his wholly were out gone he would-become
alsô mit gote umbevangen, daz alle crêatûre in niht möhten
so with God embraced that all creatures him not might
berüeren, sie rüerten got zem êrsten, unde waz an in
touch unless-they touched God at-the first and what to him
komen solte, daz müeste durch got an in komen, dâ
come should that must through God to him come there
nimet ez sînen smak unde wirt gotvar. Swie grôz daz
takes it its taste and becomes God-colored However great the
lîden sî, kumt ez durch got, dar under lîdet got zuo dem
suffering be comes it through God there under suffers God at the
êrsten. Jâ in der wârheit, bî gote ist niemer ein lîden
first Yea in the truth by God is never a suffering
sô kleine, daz dâ gevelt ûf den menschen, als verre als
so small that there falls on the man as far as
man ez in got setzet, ez sî missevallen oder widerwertikeit,
one it into God sets it be displeasure or adversity
ez rüere got ân alle mâze mêr denne den menschen,
it touches God without all measure more than the man
und ez sî ime mê wider, als verre als ez dem menschen
and it be to-him more against as far as it to-the man
wider ist. Aber lîdet ez got umbe ein solich guot, daz er
against is But (if)-suffers it God for a such good that he
dir dar inne hât versehen, unde wilt dû daz lîden, daz
to-thee there in has provided and (if)-wilt thou the suffering that

got lîdet unde durch in kumt an dich, sô wirt ez billich
God suffers and through him comes to thee so becomes it rightly
gotvar, ez sî smâcheit ald bitterkeit als süezikeit unt daz
God-colored it be contempt or bitterness as sweetness and the
meiste vinsternüsse als daz klêrste lieht, ez nimt allez sînen
greatest darkness as the clearest light it takes all its
smak an got unde wirt götlich, wan ez erbildet sich allez
taste in God and becomes divine for it images itself all
nâch im waz disem menschen kumt, wan er meinet niht
after him whatever to-this man comes for he intends not
anders und im smecket niht anders, unde dâ von nimt
other and to-him tastes not other and there from takes
er got in aller bitterkeit als in der hœhsten süezikeit. Daz
he God in all bitterness as in the highest sweetness The
lieht liuhtet in der vinsternüsse, dâ wart man sîn gewar.
light shines in the darkness there became one of-it aware
Waz solte den liuten diu lêre oder daz lieht denne daz
What should to-the people the teaching or the light unless that
sie ez nützen? Sô sie sint in der vinsternüsse oder in
they it use When they are in the darkness or in
dem lîden sint, sô sol man daz lieht sehen. Jâ ie mêr
the suffering are so shall one the light see Yea ever more
wir eigen sîn ie minr eigen. Der mensche, der des sînen
we own are ever less own The man who of-the his
wêre ûz gegangen, der möhte niemer gotes geniezen in
were out gone he might never of-God enjoy in
deheinen werken. Wêre aber, daz sich der mensche vertrête
any works Were however that himself the man misstepped
oder versprêche oder daz solichiu dinc dar în vielen, daz
or misspoke or that such things there in fell that
unreht wêre, die wîle daz got daz beginnen was in dem
wrong were the while that God the beginning was in the

werke, sô muoz er von nôt den schaden ûf sich nemen
work so must he of necessity the harm upon himself take
unde dû ensolt dîn werc dar umbe deheine wîse niht
and thou shalt thy work there for in-no manner at-all
lâzen. Des vinde wir ein bilde an sante Bernhart und an
leave Of-that find we an image in saint Bernard and in
vil andern heiligen. Solicher învelle enmac man zemâle in
many other saints Of-such in-fallings may one wholly in
disem lebenne niemer ledic werden. Dar umbe daz etwenne
this life never free become There for that sometimes
ratten under daz korn vallent, dar umbe sol man daz edele
tares under the corn fall there for shall one the noble
korn niht verwerfen. In der wârheit, dem reht wêre unde
corn not cast-away In the truth to-whom right were and
mit gote wol künde, dem würden alsolichiu lîden und
with God well could to-him would-become such sufferings and
învelle ze grôzem frumen, wan den guoten kument elliu
in-fallings to great profit for to-the good come all
dinc ze guote (als sant Paulus sprichet und ouch sant
things to good as saint Paul says and also saint
Augustînus), jâ ouch diu sünde.
Augustine yea also the sin

Daz ist von sünden, wie man sich dar zuo sol halten, ob man sich in sünden vindet

XII · SINS, AND HOW TO BEAR ONESELF WHEN ONE FINDS ONESELF IN SIN

Sins done are not sin if they are repented. No one should will to sin, but one who stands in God's will would not wish his past sin undone, since God allowed it only to draw out his best, binding him to greater love and humility. When a man turns wholly from sin, God treats him as if he had never fallen: He is a God of the present and takes you as you are now. He bears the harm of sin gladly to bring men to great love; all the apostles had been mortal sinners.

In der wârheit, sünde hân getân ist niht sünde, ob sie leit
In the truth sins have done is not sin if they grievous
sint. Der mensche sol niht sünde wellen tuon umb allez,
are The man shall not sin will do for all
daz geschehen mac in zît oder in êwekeit, weder tœtlîche
that happen may in time or in eternity neither deadly
noch tegelîche noch keine sünde. Der mit gote wol künde,
nor daily nor any sin Who with God well could
der sol alwege ansehen, daz der getriuwe minnende got
he shall always look-at that the faithful loving God
den menschen hât brâht ûz eime sündigen lebenne in ein
the man has brought out-of a sinful life into a
gotlich leben, und ûz eime sîme vîende hât gemachet einen
divine life and out-of one his foe has made one
sînen friunt, daz mêr ist denne ein niuwez ertrîche machen.
his friend which more is than a new earth to-make
Daz wêre der meisten sache einiu, diu den menschen
That were of-the greatest causes one which the man
zemâle solte in got setzen, unde wêre ein wunder, wie sêre
wholly should into God set and were a wonder how sorely
ez den menschen solte enzünden in starker grôzer minne,
it the man should kindle in strong great love

alsô daz er des sînen zemâle ûz gienge. Jâ, der reht wêre
so that he of-the his-own wholly out went Yea who rightly were
gesetzet in den willen gotes, der solte niht wellen, die
set in the will of-God he should not will the
sünde dâ er în gevallen was, daz des niht geschehen wêre;
sin which he in fallen was that it not happened were
niht alsô als ez wider got was, sunder als verre dû dâ
not so as it against God was but as far thou there
mite bist gebunden zuo mêrre minne unde bist dâ mite
with art bound to greater love and art there with
genidert unde gedêmüetiget als daz, alleine daz er wider
lowered and humbled as that alone that he against
got hât getân. Aber dû solt gote wol getrûwen, daz er dir
God has done But thou shalt God well trust that he thee
des niht verhenget hête, er wölte denne dîn bestez dar
of-it not allowed had unless-he would then thy best there
ûz ziehen. Wan aber der mensche genzlîchen ûf stêt von
out draw For however the man wholly up stands from
sünden unde zemâle abe kêret, sô tuot der getriuwe got, als
sins and wholly off turns so does the faithful God as
obe der mensche nie in sünde wêre gevallen, unde wil in
if the man never into sin were fallen and will him
aller sîner sünden einen ougenblik niht lâzen engelten, unde
for-all his sins one eye-blink not let pay and
wêre ir als vil als alle menschen ie getêten, des wil
were of-them as many as all men ever did of-that will
in got niemer lâzen engelten, er müge mit dem menschen
him God never let pay he may with the man
alle heimlicheit haben, die er ie mit crêatûren gewan, ob
all intimacy have which he ever with creatures had if
er in anders nû bereit vindet, sô siht er niht an, waz er
he him otherwise now ready finds so looks he not at what he

vor gewesen ist. Got ist ein guot der gegenwürtekeit: wie
before been is God is a God of-the presence as
er dich vindet, alsô nimt er dich und enpfâhet dich, niht
he thee finds so takes he thee and receives thee not
waz dû gewesen sîest, sunder waz dû iezunt bist. Allen
what thou been be but what thou now art All
den schaden unde smâcheit, diu gote möhte geschehen von
the harm and disgrace which to-God might happen from
allen sünden, den wil er gerne lîden unde hân geliten vil
all sins that will he gladly suffer and have suffered many
jâr, ûf daz der mensche dar nâch kome zuo eime grôzen
years up that the man there after come to a great
bekentnisse sîner minne und umbe daz sîn minne unde sîn
knowledge of-his love and for that his love and his
dancnêmekeit deste mêr unde sîn ernst deste hitziger werde,
gratitude the more and his earnestness the hotter become
daz billich unde dicke kumt nâch den sünden. Dar umbe
which rightly and often comes after the sins There for
lîdet got gerne den schaden der sünden unde hât dicke
suffers God gladly the harm of-the sins and has often
geliten und aller dickest verhenget über die menschen, die
suffered and all most-often allowed over the men whom
er hât versehen, daz er sie ze grôzen dingen ziehen welle.
he has foreseen that he them to great things draw will
Nim war! wer was unserm herren ie lieber unde heimlîcher
Take heed who was to-our lord ever dearer and more-intimate
denne die aposteln wâren? Der beleip nie keiner, er viele
than the apostles were Of-them remained never any but-he fell
in tôtsünden, alle wâren sie tôtsünder gewesen. Daz hât
into deadly-sins all were they deadly-sinners been That has
er in der alten unde niuwen ê dicke bewîset von den, die
he in the old and new law often shown of those who

ime verre die liebsten darnâchmâles wurden, und ouch noch
to-him far the dearest afterward became and also still
erfrâget man selten, daz die liute koment zuo grôzen dingen,
learns one seldom that the people come to great things
sie sîen ze dem êrsten etwaz vertreten, unde meinet
but-they be at the first something misstepped and means
unser herre hie mite, daz wir sîne grôze barmeherzikeit
our lord here with that we his great mercy
erkennen und uns manen ze grôzer unde wârer dêmüetikeit
recognize and us exhort to great and true humility
unde andâht. Wan sô riuwe erniuwert wirt, sô sol diu
and devotion For when contrition renewed becomes so shall the
minne ouch grœzlîche gemêret unde erniuwert werden.
love also greatly increased and renewed become

Von zweierleie riuwe

XIII · TWO KINDS OF REPENTANCE

Repentance is of two kinds. The temporal, of the senses, sinks ever downward into sorrow, as if a man must despair, and stays in its grief, and nothing comes of it. Godly repentance at once lifts a man to God in a steadfast turning from all sin, in great trust and assurance, and a spiritual joy raises the soul out of all grief and fastens it on God. The greater the sins weigh, the readier God is to forgive them, and they vanish into His abyss more quickly than an eye can close.

Diu riuwe ist zweierleie. Diu ein ist zîtlich oder sinlich,
The contrition is twofold The one is temporal or sensual
diu ander ist götlich und übernâtiurlich. Diu zîtlîche ziuhet
the other is divine and supernatural The temporal draws
sich alle zît niderwert in ein mêrre lîden unde setzet den
itself all time downward into a greater suffering and sets the

menschen in einen jâmer, als ob er iezunt verzwîveln
man into a lamentation as if he now despair
sülle, unt dâ belîbet diu riuwe in dem leide unde kumt
should and there remains the contrition in the sorrow and comes
niht für baz, dâ enwirt niht ûz. Aber diu götlîche riuwe
not on further there becomes nothing out But the divine contrition
ist vil anders. Als balde als der mensche ein misvallen
is much otherwise As soon as the man a displeasure
gewinnet, alzehant erhebet er sich ze gote unde setzet
gains at-once raises he himself to God and sets
sich in ein emezigez abekêren von allen sünden in einen
himself in a constant turning-off from all sins in an
unbewegenlîchen willen unde dâ erhebet er sich in ein
unmovable will and there raises he himself into a
grôz getriuwen ze gote unde gewinnet eine grôze sicherheit
great trust to God and gains a great security
unde dâ von kumt ein geistlîchiu fröide, diu die sêle
and there from comes a spiritual joy which the soul
erhebet ûz allem leide unde jâmer unde bevestent sî
raises out-of all sorrow and lamentation and fastens her
an gote. Wan ie sich der mensche gebrestenlîcher vindet
on God For ever himself the man more-failing finds
unde mê missetân hât, ie mêr er ursache hât, sich an
and more misdone has ever more he cause has himself to
got ze binden ungeteilter minne, dâ kein sünde unde
God to bind in-undivided love where no sin and
gebreste ist. Dar umbe der beste grât, dar ûf man getreten
failing is There for the best stair there on one step
mac als man zuo got in ganzer andâht wil gên, daz
may when one to God in whole devotion will go that
ist, daz man âne sünde sî in der kraft der götlîchen
is that one without sin be in the power of-the divine

riuwe. Unde ie man dâ die sünden grœzer wiget, ie
contrition And ever one there the sins greater weighs ever
got bereiter ist, die sünde ze vergebenne unde zuo der
God readier is the sin to forgive and to the
sêle ze komenne unde die sünde ze vertrîbenne, wan ein
soul to come and the sin to drive-out for an
ieglîcher ist daz aller flîzigest abe ze tuon, daz im aller
every-one is that all most-diligent off to do what to-him all
meist wider ist; unde ie die sünde mê unde grœzer sint,
most against is and ever the sins more and greater are
ie sie got âne mâze gerner vergît unde belder, ie
ever them God without measure more-gladly forgives and quicker ever
mê sie ime wider sint. Unde denne sô diu götlîche
more they to-him against are And then when the divine
riuwe sich erhebet ze gote, sô sint alle sünde belder
contrition itself raises to God so are all sins quicker
verswunden in dem abegründe gotes denne ich mîn ouge
vanished in the abyss of-God than I my eye
möhte zuo getuon, unde werdent sô alzemâle ze nihte
might to do and become so wholly to nothing
als sie nie geschehen wêren, ob im ganziu riuwe dâ
as-if they never happened were if to-him whole contrition there
wirt.
becomes

Von der wâren zuoversiht unde von der hoffenunge

XIV · TRUE CONFIDENCE AND HOPE

True and perfect confidence is tested by whether one has great hope and trust in God, for nothing better shows whether one's love is whole. Whatever one dares to trust God for, one finds in Him a thousand times over; as no one can love God too much, no one can trust Him too much. He never forsook those who had great confidence in Him but did great things with them, for this trust comes from love, which has not only trust but true knowing and a certainty without doubt.

Wâre unde volkomene zuoversiht die sol man dar an brüeven,
True and perfect confidence that shall one there on prove
obe man hât grôze hoffenunge unde zuoversiht zuo gote.
whether one has great hope and confidence in God
Wan kein dinc ist, dar an man ez müge mêr gebrüeven,
For no thing is there on one it may more prove
obe man ganze minne habe denne von getrûwen. Wan
whether one whole love have than by trusting For
wer den andern sêre unde genzlîche minnet, daz sachet diu
who the other greatly and wholly loves that causes the
triuwe, wan allez, daz man gote tar getrûwen, daz vindet
faith for all that one God dare trust that finds
man in der wârheit an im unde tûsent mâl mêr. Und alsô
one in the truth in him and thousand times more And so
als got nie mensche möhte ze vil geminnen, alsô enmöhte
as God never man might too much love so might
im nie mensche ze vil getrûwen. Alliu dinc, diu man
him never man too much trust All things which one
getuon mac, diu sint niht alse zimlich als grôz getrûwen ze
do may they are not as fitting as great trust in
gote. Alle, die grôze zuoversiht zuo ime ie gewunnen, die
God All who great confidence in him ever gained those

erliez er nie, er worhte grôziu dinc mit in. Dâ hete er
left he never but-he worked great things with them There had he
wol gewist an allen menschen, daz disiu getrûwunge kumt
well shown in all men that this trusting comes
von minne, wan minne hât niht alleine getrûwen, sunder
from love for love has not alone trust but
si hât ein wâr wizzen und ein unzwîvellîche sicherheit.
she has a true knowing and an undoubting security

Von zweierleie sicherheit des êwigen lebens

XV · TWO KINDS OF CERTAINTY OF ETERNAL LIFE

There are two ways of knowing of eternal life in this life. One is that God tells a man Himself, or announces it by an angel or shows it by a special light; this is rare. The other, far better, often comes to all who love perfectly: from love and intimacy a man is so sure of God that if every creature, and God Himself, denied him, he would not mistrust, for love trusts all good. This certainty cannot deceive, as a revelation might. Love drives out fear, as Paul says, and covers the multitude of sins, which perish as if they had never been. God forgives wholly, and the one forgiven more should love more, as Jesus said.

Ez ist zweierleie wizzen in disem lebenne des êwigen
There is twofold knowing in this life of-the eternal
lebennes. Daz ein ist, daz ez got dem menschen selber
life The one is that it God to-the man self
sage oder ez im bî einem engel erbiete oder mit einem
say or it him by an angel announce or with a
sunderlîchen liehte bewîse. Daz geschiht selten unde wênic
special light show That happens seldom and to-few
liuten. Daz ander wizzen daz ist vil ungelîch bezzer
people The other knowing that is much incomparably better

unde nützer unde daz geschiht dicke allen volkomenen
and more-useful and that happens often to-all perfect
minnenden liuten. Daz ist, daz der mensche von minne
loving people That is that the man from love
unde von heimlicheit, die er hât zuo sînem gote, daz er
and from intimacy which he has with his God that he
ime sô ganz getriuwe unde sô sicher ist, wan er in minnet
him so wholly trusting and so sure is for he him loves
âne underscheit in allen crêatûren. Unde versageten im
without distinction in all creatures And should-deny him
alle crêatûre unde verswüeren ime, jâ versagete im ouch
all creatures and should-forswear him yea should-deny him also
got selber, er enmissetriuwete niht, wan minne enkan niht
God self he would-mistrust not for love can not
missetrûwen, si getriuwet alles guotes unde des ist kein
mistrust she trusts all good and of-that is no
nôt, daz man den minnenden unde geminnten iht dürfe
need that one to-the loving and beloved anything need
sagen; wan mit dem, daz er enpfindet, daz er sîn friunt ist,
say for with that that he perceives that he his friend is
dâ mite weiz er zehant allez daz, daz ime guot ist unde
there with knows he at-once all that which to-him good is and
ze sîner sêlikeit gehœret. Wan als lieb dir zuo im ist, des
to his blessedness belongs For as dear to-thee to him is of-that
bist dû sicher, daz im âne alle mâze mêr unde lieber ist
art thou sure that to-him without all measure more and dearer is
zuo dir unde dir ungelîches mêr getriuwet; wan er ist selber
to thee and thee incomparably more trusts for he is self
diu triuwe, des sol man an im sicher sîn unde sint alle die
the faith of-that shall one of him sure be and are all those
sicher, die in minnent. Disiu sicherheit ist verre mêr unde
sure who him love This security is far more and

ganzer unde wârer denne diu êrste unde mac niht getriegen.
wholer and truer than the first and may not deceive
Aber daz sagen möhte getriegen unde wêre vil lîhte ein
But the saying might deceive and were very likely a
unreht lieht. Mêr: diz enpfindet man in allen kreften der
false light But this perceives one in all powers of-the
sêle und enmac niht getriegen in den, die in wêrlîche
soul and may not deceive in those who him truly
minnent. Die zwîvelnt als wênic, als der mensche an got
love They doubt as little as the man of God
zwîvelt, wan minne vertrîbet alle vorhte, diu minne enhât
doubts for love drives-out all fear the love has
niht vorhte, als sant Paulus sprichet und ouch geschriben
no fear as saint Paul says and also written
ist. Diu minne bedecket die manicvaltekeit der sünde, wan
is The love covers the multitude of-the sins for
dâ sünde geschehent, dâ enmac niht ganze triuwe sîn
where sins happen there may not whole faith be
noch minne, wan si bedecket alzemâle die sünde, si enweiz
nor love for she covers wholly the sins she knows
niht von sünde; niht alsô, daz man niht gesündet habe,
nothing of sin not so that one not sinned have
sunder daz sie zemâle verderbent unde vergânt als ob sie
but that they wholly perish and pass as if they
nie niht gewesen wêren. Wan alliu werc gotes sint zemâle
never at-all been were For all works of-God are wholly
volkomen und überflüzzic alsô: swem er vergît, dem vergît
perfect and superabundant so whomever he forgives to-him forgives
er alzemâle unde ganz und ouch vil gerner grôz denne
he wholly and whole and also much more-gladly great than
kleine, unt diz machet ganz getrûwen. Diz ahte ich verre
small and this makes whole trust This esteem I far

und ungelîch bezzer unde bringet mê lônes und ist wârer
and incomparably better and brings more reward and is truer
denne daz êrste wizzen, wan dâ enhindert noch sünde noch
than the first knowing for there hinders neither sin nor
niht. Wan wen got in gelîcher minne vindet, den urteilt er
anything For whom God in like love finds him judges he
gelîch, ob er vil oder niht habe missetân, mêr: dem
alike whether he much or nothing have misdone but to-whom
mêr vergeben wirt, der sol ouch mê minnen, als unser
more forgiven becomes he shall also more love as our
herre Jêsus sprach 'dem mê vergeben wirt, der minne mê.'
lord Jesus spoke to-whom more forgiven becomes he love more

Von der wâren penitencie und von sêligem lebenne

XVI · TRUE PENANCE AND THE BLESSED LIFE

Many think penance means outward works like fasting and going barefoot, but the best penance is a great and perfect turning from all that is not God and a whole turning to Him in unmoved love. The more of that there is in a work, the truer the penance; a man could turn so strongly that all the sins since Adam would be forgiven him. This comes from Christ's own penance, and a man should form himself in all he does on Christ's life. Whatever outward work hinders this, leave it freely, for God looks only at the love and the mind in our works. As God redeemed the whole world, let Him redeem all that sin has spoiled in you.

Vil liute dunket, daz sie grôziu werc süllen tuon von ûzern
Many people seems that they great works shall do of outer
dingen, als vasten, barfuoz gên und ander dinc des gelîche,
things as fasting barefoot going and other things of-the like
daz penitencie heizet. Aber diu aller beste penitencie, dâ
which penance is-called But the all best penance there

mite man grœzlîche und ûf daz hœhste bezzert, daz ist,
with one greatly and to the highest betters that is
daz der mensche habe ein grôz unde volkomen abekêren
that the man have a great and perfect turning-off
von allem dem, daz niht zemâle got unde götlich ist an
from all that which not wholly God and divine is in
im und an allen crêatûren und habe ein grôz und ein
him and in all creatures and have a great and a
volkomen und ein ganz zuokêren zuo sîme lieben gote
perfect and a whole turning-to to his dear God
in einer unbewegenlîcher minne, alsô daz sîn andâht und
in an unmovable love so that his devotion and
ouch sîn gelust grôz zuo ime sî. In welhem werke dû
also his desire great to him be In whatever work thou
des mê hâst, in dem bist dû mê gereht. Als vil deste
of-it more hast in that art thou more just As much the
mê unde mê ist, reht als vil deste wârer diu penitencie
more and more is just as much the truer the penance
unde riuwe unde weschet mê sünde abe und ouch alle
and contrition and washes more sin off and also all
pîne. Jâ wol unde möhtest dû schiere in kurzer zît dich
pain Yea well and mightest thou quickly in short time thee
alsô krefteclîchen kêren von allen sünden mit alsô wârem
so strongly turn from all sins with so true
misvallen unde mishagen unde dich alsô krefteclîchen ze
displeasure and dislike and thee so strongly to
gote kêren, hêtest dû alle die sünde getân, die von Âdâmes
God turn hadst thou all the sins done that from Adam's
zîten ie geschâhen und iemer mê geschehent, daz dir daz
times ever happened and ever more happen that to-thee that
allez ganz würde vergeben mit der pîne, daz dû stürbest
all wholly would-be forgiven with the pain that thou diedst

iezunt, dû füerest für daz antlütze gotes. Diz ist diu wâre
now thou wouldst-go before the face of-God This is the true
penitencie unde daz kumt ûz aller volkomenlîchest von dem
penance and that comes out all most-perfectly from the
wirdigen lîdenne in der volkomenen penitencie unsers herren
worthy suffering in the perfect penance of-our lord
Jêsû Kristî. Ie sich der mensche mê dar inne erbildet, ie
Jesus Christ Ever himself the man more there in images ever
im mê abevallent alle sünde unde pîne der sünde. Ouch
from-him more off-fall all sins and pain of-the sins Also
sol sich der mensche des wenen, daz er sich in allen sînen
shall himself the man of-it accustom that he himself in all his
werken alle zît erbilde in daz leben und in diu werc unsers
works all time image into the life and into the works of-our
herren Jêsû Kristî, in allem sîme tuon unde lâzen unde
lord Jesus Christ in all his doing and leaving and
lîden unde leben unde meinen, in aller zît hier inne, als
suffering and living and intending in all time here in as
er uns hât gemeinet. Disiu penitencie ist zemâle ein erhaben
he us has intended This penance is wholly a raised
gemüete von allen dingen, alzemâle in gote. Und in welhen
mind from all things wholly into God And in whatever
werken dû diz aller meist gehaben maht unde hâst, von den
works thou this all most have canst and hast of those
werken diu tuo aller frîlîchest. Unde hindert dich des dehein
works them do all most-freely And (if)-hinders thee of-it any
ûzerlich werc, ez sî wachen, vasten, lesen oder waz daz
outward work it be waking fasting reading or whatever that
sî, daz lâ frîlîchen âne alle sorge, daz dû hie mite iht
be that leave freely without all care that thou here with at-all
versûmest keine penitencie. Wan got siht niht an, waz diu
neglectest any penance For God looks not at what the

werc sint, denne alleine, waz diu minne sî unde diu andâht
works are but alone what the love be and the devotion
unde daz gemüete in den werken. Wan im enist niht vil
and the mind in the works For to-him is not much
umbe unsriu werc, sunder alleine umbe unser gemüete in
about our works but alone about our mind in
allen unsern werken unt daz wir in alleine in allen dingen
all our works and that we him alone in all things
minnen. Wan der mensche ist alze gîtic, den an gote niht
love For the man is all-too greedy whom in God not
genüeget. Allen dînen werken sol dâ mite gelônet sîn,
suffices All thy works shall there with rewarded be
daz sie dîn got weiz unt daz dû in dar inne meinest.
that them thy God knows and that thou him there in intendest
Dâ mite genüege dir alle zît. Ouch ie dû in ledeclîcher
There with suffice to-thee all time Also ever thou him more-freely
meinest und einvelteclîcher, sô ie dîniu werc eigenlîcher alle
intendest and more-simply so ever thy works more-properly all
sünde büezent. Ouch maht dû gedenken, daz got was ein
sins atone Also canst thou think that God was a
gemeiner erlœser aller welte, unt dâ von bin ich im vil
common redeemer of-all world and there from am I to-him much
mê dankes schuldic, denne ob er mich alleine erlôst hête.
more thanks owing than if he me alone redeemed had
Alsô solt dû ouch sîn ein gemeiner erlœser alles des, daz
So shalt thou also be a common redeemer of-all that which
ich mit sünden an mir verderpt hete, unde mit allem dem
I with sins in me corrupted had and with all that
lege dich zemâle in in, wan dû hâst mit sünden verderpt
lay thee wholly into him for thou hast with sins corrupted
allez, daz an dir ist, herze, sinne, lîcham, sêle, krefte unde
all that in thee is heart senses body soul powers and

waz an dir und in dir ist, ez ist allez gar siech unde
whatever on thee and in thee is it is all wholly sick and
verdorben. Des fliuch zuo im, an deme kein gebreste ist,
corrupted Of-that flee to him in whom no failing is
sunder allez guot, daz er sî ein gemeiner erlœser aller dîner
but all good that he be a common redeemer of-all thy
verderpnüsse an dir inwendic und ûzwendic.
corruption in thee inward and outward

Wie sich der mensche in fride halte, ob er sich niht vindet ûf ûzerlîcher arbeit als Kristus unde vil heiligen gehabt habent, wie er gote sulle nâch volgen

XVII · PEACE WITHOUT THE SAINTS' HARDSHIPS

People grow fearful when they cannot match the hard lives of Christ and the saints, and think themselves far from God. No one should ever set God far off for weakness or fault: God never goes far, and at most He stays before the door. Each must mark the way to which God chiefly calls him; for, as Paul says, not all are called by one way, and God has bound salvation to no single way; one should not despise another's way or keep changing one's own. Christ is to be followed in spirit, not in every bodily work: one word left unsaid can be harder than keeping silent altogether, a small insult harder than a great blow. So a man may follow Christ in his weakness.

Den liuten mac vorhte unde krankeit dâ von komen, daz
To-the people may fear and weakness there from come that
unsers herren Jêsû Kristî leben unde ouch der heiligen alsô
our lord Jesus Christ's life and also of-the saints so
strenge und arbeitsam was unde der mensche des niht vil
strict and toilsome was and the man of-it not much
vermac noch dar ûf ist getriben. Dar umbe swenne sich
can nor there to is driven There for when themselves

die liute dar an als ungelîch vindent, sô ahtent sie sich
the people there in as unlike find so regard they themselves
dicke verre von gote, als dem sie niht künnen gevolgen.
often far from God as whom they not can follow
Daz sol nieman tuon. Der mensche ensol sich dekeine
That shall no-one do The man shall himself in-no
wîse niemer verre von gote genemen weder umbe gebresten
manner ever far from God take neither for failings
noch umbe krankeit noch umbe kein dinc. Nû sî iemer,
nor for weakness nor for any thing Now be ever
daz dich dîne grôze gebresten alsô ûz trîben, daz dû dich
that thee thy great failings so out drive that thou thee
niht nâhen zuo gote mügest nemen, sô solt dû dir doch
not near to God mayest take so shalt thou to-thee yet
got nâhen nemen, wan dâ lît grôzer schade an, daz der
God near take for there lies great harm in that the
mensche ime got verre setzet. Wan der mensche gang verre
man to-him God far sets For the man go far
oder nâch, got gêt doch niemer verre, er belîbet ie stênde
or near God goes yet never far he remains ever standing
nâhe, und enmac er niht innen blîben, sô kumt er niht
near and (if)-may he not within remain so comes he not
verrer denne für die tür. Alsô ist ez nû in der gestrengikeit
farther than before the door So is it now in the strictness
des nâchvolgens. Daz merke, waz dîns nâchvolgens dar an
of-the following That mark what of-thy following there in
sî. Dû solt merken unde gemerket haben, war zuo dû von
be Thou shalt mark and marked have where to thou by
gote allermeist gemant sîest, wan alle liute sint mit nihte
God all-most admonished be for all people are by no-means
in einen wec ze gote geruofen, als sant Paulus sprichet.
into one way to God called as saint Paul says

Vindest dû denne, daz dîn nêhster wec niht ist in vil
(If)-findest thou then that thy nearest way not is in many
ûzwendigen werken unde grôzer arbeit oder in darben, dâ
outward works and great toil or in privation there
alsô einvalteclîchen ouch niht grôz an lît, der mensche
also simply also not much on lies unless-the man
werde denne sunderlîchen dar zuo getriben von gote unde
become then specially there to driven by God and
habe die maht wol ze tuon âne irrunge sîner inwendikeit:
have the power well to do without disturbing of-his inwardness
und vindest dû diss niht in dir, sô wis ganz mit fride
and (if)-findest thou this not in thee so be wholly with peace
unde nim dich des niht vil an. Sô möhtest dû sprechen
and take thee of-it not much on So mightest thou speak
'lît dar an niht, wes habent denne unser vorvaren unde
(if)-lies there on nothing why have then our forebears and
vil heiligen getân?' Sô gedenke, unser herre hât in
many saints done So think our lord has to-them
die wîse gegeben unde gab in ouch die maht, daz ze
the manner given and gave to-them also the power that to
tuonne, daz sie der wîse mohten gevolgen und im, daz
do that they the manner might follow and to-him that
von ime geviel, unt dar inne solten sie ir bestez bekomen,
from them pleased and there in should they their best attain
wan got enhât des menschen heil niht gebunden ze keiner
for God has the man's salvation not bound to any
sunderlîchen wîse. Waz ein wîse hât, daz mügen hât got
special manner What a manner has that ability has God
allen guoten wîsen gegeben unde keiner guoter wîse ist
to-all good manners given and to-no good manner is
daz verseit, wan ein guot ist wider daz ander niht unde dar
that denied for a good is against the other not and there

an süllent sich die liute merken, daz sie unrehte tuont,
on shall themselves the people mark that they wrongly do
als sie etwenne einen guoten menschen sehent oder hœrent
when they sometimes a good man see or hear
von im sagen und er denne niht volget ir wîse, sô ist ez
of him tell and he then not follows their manner so is it
allez verlorn: ob in ir wîse niht gevellet, sôe nahtent
all lost if to-them their manner not pleases so heed
sie ouch zehant ir guoten wîse und ir guoten meinunge
they also at-once their good manner and their good intention
niht. Daz ist niht reht. Man sol mê ahten der liute wîse,
not That is not right One shall more regard the people's manner
daz ist ein guotiu andâht, unde versmêhe niemannes wîse.
that is a good devotion and despise no-one's manner
Ein ieglîcher halte sîne guote wîse unde ziehe dar în
An every-one keep his good manner and draw there into
alle wîse unde neme in sîner wîse alle guot und alle
all manner and take in his manner all good and all
wîse. Wandelunge der wîse machet ein unstête wîse unde
manner Changing of-the manner makes an unsteady manner and
gemüete. Waz dir mac gegeben ein wîse, daz maht dû
mind What to-thee may give one manner that canst thou
ouch in der andern erkriegen, ob si guot unde lobelich
also in the other attain if it good and praiseworthy
ist unde got alleine meinet; noch alle menschen enmügent
is and God alone intends yet all men may
niht éinem wege gevolgen. Unde alsô ist ez ouch von dem
not one way follow And so is it also of the
nâchvolgen der gestrengikeit solicher heiligen. Die wîse
following of-the strictness of-such saints The manner
solt dû wol minnen und mac dir wol gevallen, der dû
shalt thou well love and may to-thee well please which thou

doch niht endarft nâch volgen. Nû möhtest dû sprechen
yet not needest after follow Now mightest thou speak
'unser herre Jêsus Kristus der hete ie die hœhste wîse,
our lord Jesus Christ he had ever the highest manner
dem süllen wir iemer von rehte nâch volgen.' Daz ist wol
him shall we ever by right after follow That is well
wâr, unserm herren sol man billîche nâch volgen, aber doch
true our lord shall one rightly after follow but yet
in aller wîse niht. Unser herre der vaste vierzic tage: alsô
in all manner not Our lord he fasted forty days so
ensol sich des nieman an nemen, daz er alsô volge. Kristus
shall himself of-it no-one on take that he so follow Christ
der hât vil werke getân, dâ mite er meinte, daz wir ime
he has many works done there with he meant that we him
geistlîche süllen nâch volgen unde niht lîplîche; unt dar
spiritually shall after follow and not bodily and there
umbe sol man sich flîzen, daz man vernünfteclîchen künne
for shall one himself strive that one rationally know-how
nâch volgen, wan er hât mê gelâget unserr minne denne
after follow for he has more sought our love than
unserr werke. Wir süllen ie im eigenlîchen nâch volgen.
our works We shall ever him properly after follow
Alse wie? Daz merke in allen dingen, wie und in welher
As how That mark in all things how and in which
wîse. Als ich dicke hân gesprochen, ich ahte vil bezzer
manner As I often have spoken I esteem much better
ein vernünftigez werc denne ein lîplîchez werc. Alse wie?
a rational work than a bodily work As how
Kristus hât gevastet vierzic tage. Dar an volge ime, daz
Christ has fasted forty days There in follow him that
dû war nemest, war zuo dû allermeist sîest bereit: dâ lâz
thou heed take where to thou all-most be ready there leave

dich an unde nim wol dîn selbes war, daz gebürt dir
thee on and take well of-thy self heed that befits to-thee
mê, dich unbekümbert ze lâzen, denne ob dû zemâle vastest
more thee unburdened to leave than if thou wholly fastedst
aller spîse. Und alsô ist dir etwenne swêrer ein wort
from-all food And so is to-thee sometimes harder a word
ze verswîgenne dan ob man ze mâle swige von aller rede.
to keep-silent than if one in full were-silent from all speech
Und alsô ist einem menschen etwenne swêrer ze ertragen
And so is to-a man sometimes harder to bear
ein kleinez smêhelîchez wort, dâ niht an ist, denne im
a small contemptuous word where nothing on is but to-him
lîhte wêre ein grôzer slac, dâ er sich ûf gesetzet hât,
easily were a great blow which he himself upon set has
und ist ime vil swêrer alleine ze sîne in der menige denne
and is to-him much harder alone to be in the crowd than
in der wüeste, und ist ime dicke ein kleinez dinc swêrer
in the desert and is to-him often a small thing harder
ze lâzenne denne ein grôz und ein kleinez werc ze üebenne
to leave than a great and a small work to exercise
denne einez, daz man für vil grôz hât. Alsus mac der
than one that one for very great holds Thus may the
mensche wol unserm herren nâch volgen nâch sîner krankeit
man well our lord after follow after his weakness
und enmac noch endarf sich niemer verre dâ von genemen.
and may nor needs himself ever far there from take

In welher wîse der mensche mac nemen als ime gebürt zarte spîse unde schoeniu kleit unde froelîche gesellen, als im die anhangen nâch gewonheit der nâtûre

XVIII · FINE FOOD, FAIR CLOTHES, AND MERRY COMPANY

Do not be troubled by food or clothes that seem too good; train your ground and mind to stand far above them, touching nothing but God, for the inner should order the outer. Take what falls to you from your ground, and be as ready to take its opposite, insult, toil or any suffering, with joy and thanks. Then a man may well eat, being ready to fast. Shun all singularity in dress, food and speech that serves no use, yet not all singularity is forbidden. Form yourself within on Christ, so that His works shine back from you: you work, and He takes it.

Dû endarft in der wîse niht sîn beworren mit spîse
Thou needest in the manner not be troubled with food
noch mit kleidern, ob sie dich ze guot dunken, sunder
nor with clothes whether they thee too good seem but
wene dinen grunt unt dîn gemüete, daz ez verre dar über
accustom thy ground and thy mind that it far there above
erhaben sî, und ez sol niht berüeren, ze mügen noch ze
raised be and it shall nothing touch to like nor to
minnen dan alleine got. Über diu andren dinc alliu sol ez
love but alone God Above the other things all shall it
erhaben sîn. Unde war umbe? Wan daz wêre ein krankiu
raised be And where fore For that were a weak
inwendikeit, die daz ûzerlîche kleit solte berihten: daz inner
inwardness which the outward clothing should direct the inner
sol daz ûzer berihten, als ez alleine an dir stêt. Mêr: sô
shall the outer direct as it alone on thee stands But when
ez dir anders zuovellet, sô maht dû ez ûz dînem grunde
it to-thee otherwise befalls so canst thou it out-of thy ground
guot nemen, alsô daz dû dich dar inne vindest; geviele ez
good take so that thou thee there in findest should-fall it

anders, daz dû ez gerne unde willeclîchen woltest nemen.
otherwise that thou it gladly and willingly wouldst take
Alsô ist ez ouch mit der spîse unde mit den friunden
So is it also with the food and with the friends
unde mâgen unde mit allem dem, daz dir got gebe oder
and kinsmen and with all that which to-thee God give or
neme. Und alsô ahte ich daz bezzer denne elliu dinc, daz
take And so esteem I that better than all things that
sich der mensche gote lâze grœzlîche, swenne er ûf in
himself the man to-God leave greatly when he upon him
iht werfen welle, ez sî smâcheit, ez sî arbeit, ez sî swaz
anything cast will it be contempt it be toil it be whatever
lîdens daz sî, daz er ez mit fröuden unde dancnêmekeit
of-suffering that be that he it with joys and gratitude
neme unde lâze sich got mê füeren dan daz sich der
take and let himself God more lead than that himself the
mensche selber dar în setze. Unt dar umbe lernent gerne
man self there in set And there for learn gladly
alliu dinc von gote unde volgent ime sô wirt iu reht,
all things from God and follow him so becomes to-you right
und in dem sô mac man wol êre nemen unde gemach;
and in that so may one well honor take and ease
geviele aber ungemach und unêre ûf den menschen, daz
should-fall however discomfort and dishonor upon the man that
man die ouch tragen möhte unde gerne wölte tragen. Unt
one those also bear might and gladly would bear And
dar umbe mit allem rehte und urteile mügent die wol
there for with all right and judgment may those well
ezzen; die alsô reht unde bereit wêren ze dem vastenne.
eat who so right and ready were to the fasting
Unt daz ist wol diu sache, daz got sîne friunde grôz
And that is well the cause that God his friends great

unde vil lîdens überhept, unde daz enmöhte sîn unmêzigiu
and much suffering spares and that could his immeasurable
triuwe anders niht erlîden, dar umbe daz sô vil unde
faithfulness otherwise not suffer there for that so much and
sô grôzer frume in dem lîden lît, und er sich des niht
so great profit in the suffering lies and he himself of-it not
wil noch enzimt ze versûmen in keinen guoten dingen;
will nor befits to neglect in any good things
und er lêzet sich wol benüegen an eime guoten gerehten
and he lets himself well suffice in a good just
willen, anders lieze er im kein lîden engên umbe den
will otherwise let he to-him no suffering escape for the
unzellîchen frumen, der in dem lîden lît. Und alsô die
countless profit which in the suffering lies And so the
wîle got benüeget, sô wis ze fride. Wenne ime ein anderz
while God suffices so be at peace When to-him an other
behaget an dir, sô wis ouch ze fride, wan der mensche
pleases in thee so be also at peace for the man
sol inwendic gote sô ganz sîn in allem sînem willen,
shall inwardly to-God so wholly be in all his will
daz er sich niht vil bewerre weder mit wîse noch mit
that he himself not much trouble neither with manner nor with
werken, unde sunderlîchen solt dû fliehen alle sunderlicheit,
works and especially shalt thou flee all singularity
ez sî an kleidern, an spîse, an worten, als hôhiu wort
it be in clothes in food in words as high words
ze redenne, oder sunderlicheit der gebêrde, dâ enkein
to speak or singularity of-the bearing where no
nutze an lît. Mêr, doch solt dû wizzen, daz dir niht
use in lies But yet shalt thou know that to-thee not
ist verboten alliu sunderlicheit. Ez ist vil sunderlicheit,
is forbidden all singularity There is much singularity

die man in vil zîten unde bî vil liuten halten muoz.
which one at many times and with many people keep must
Wan der sunderlich ist, der muoz ouch sunderlicheit tuon
For who singular is he must also singularity do
zuo maniger zît in vil wîsen. Der mensche sol sich
at many time in many manners The man shall himself
îngebildet haben in unsern herren Jêsum Kristum inwendic
in-imaged have into our lord Jesus Christ inwardly
in allen dingen, daz man in ime vinde einen widerschîn
in all things that one in him find a reflection
aller sîner werke unde sîner götlîchen bilde, unde sol der
of-all his works and of-his divine images and shall the
mensche in im tragen in einer volkomenen gelîchunge alse
man in him bear in a perfect likening as
verre als er mac alliu sîniu werc. Dû solt würken und
far as he can all his works Thou shalt work and
er sol nemen. Tuo dû dîn werc ûz aller dîner andâht
he shall take Do thou thy work out-of all thy devotion
und ûz aller dîner meinunge, des wene dîn gemüete
and out-of all thy intention of-that accustom thy mind
zuo aller zît unt daz dû dich in allen dînen werken in
at all time and that thou thee in all thy works into
in erbildest.
him imagest

War umbe got ofte gestatet, daz guote liute, die in der wârheit guot sint, daz sie dicke werdent gehindert von iren guoten werken

XIX · WHY GOD LETS GOOD PEOPLE BE HINDERED

God often lets His friends fall into sickness so that every prop they might lean on falls away. A loving man would rejoice to be able to do great things, watching and fasting, and would make his works a support and a hope. Our Lord takes this away because He alone will be their support, out of His pure goodness, since our works do not move Him to give. The more bare and empty the mind falls on God, the deeper a man is set in God and the readier for His gifts, for a man should build on God alone.

Dar umbe gestatet des der getriuwe got, daz dicke sîn friunde
There for allows of-it the faithful God that often his friends
vallent in krankeit, ûf daz in aller enthalt abe gê, dâ
fall into weakness up that from-them all support off go there
sie sich ûf neigen oder enthalten möhten. Wan daz wêre
they themselves on lean or support might For that were
einem minnenden menschen ein grôziu fröide, daz er vil
to-a loving man a great joy that he many
unde grôziu dinc vermöhte, ez sî an wachen, an vasten oder
and great things could it be in waking in fasting or
an andern dingen und an sunderlîchen grôzen unde swêren
in other things and in special great and heavy
dingen; diz ist in ein grôziu fröide und ein stiurunge und
things this is to-them a great joy and a support and
ein hoffenunge, alsô daz in ir werc sint als ein enthalt
a hope so that to-them their works are as a support
und ein stiurunge und ein zuoverlâz. Daz wil unser herre abe
and a prop and a reliance That will our lord off
nemen unde wil, daz er alleine ir enthalt und ir zuoverlâz
take and will that he alone their support and their reliance

sî, unde daz tuot er umbe niht anders dan durch sîne
be and that does he for nothing else than for his
einvaltigen güete unde barmeherzikeit, wan got enbegert niht
simple goodness and mercy for God desires not
ze dekeinem werke denne sîn eigene güete. Niht endienent
to any work but his own goodness Not serve
unseriu werc dar zuo, daz uns got iht gebe oder tuo. Daz
our works there to that us God anything give or do That
wil unser herre, daz sîn friunde dien sîn enpfallen, unt dar
wills our lord that his friends of-these be fallen-away and there
umbe nimt er sie abe von disem enthalt, ûf daz er alleine
for takes he them off from this support up that he alone
ir enthalt muoz sîn, wan er wil in grôz geben und enwil
their support must be for he will them great give and wills
umbe niht wan umbe sîne frîe güete und er sol ir enthalt
for nothing but for his free goodness and he shall their support
und ir trôst sîn unde sie süllent ein lûter niht sich
and their comfort be and they shall a pure nothing themselves
vinden und ahten in allen den grôzen gâben gotes. Wan
find and regard in all the great gifts of-God For
ie blôzer unde lediger daz gemüete ûf got vellet unde von
ever barer and freer the mind on God falls and by
im enthalten wirt, ie der mensche tiefer in got gesetzet
him held becomes ever the man deeper into God set
wirt und in allen den wirdigesten gâben gotes enpfenclîcher
becomes and in all the worthiest gifts of-God more-receptive
wirt. Wan der mensche sol alleine ûf got bûwen.
becomes For the man shall alone on God build

Von unsers herren lîcham, wie man den nemen sol ofte und in welher wîse und andâht

XX · THE BODY OF OUR LORD

Whoever would receive the Body of Our Lord should look not at what he feels but at his will and intent: a clear conscience, a will turned to God, and a love that grows with frequent receiving while reverence does not fade. Then the oftener the better. To one who feels cold or poor, Eckhart says: go all the more, for His riches fill your poverty and He has atoned for your sins. The soul is joined to God more nearly than body and soul, nearer than a drop of water poured into a cask of wine. Feeling matters little against faith; as in Christ, the higher powers rest in God while the lower suffer, and one may receive Him spiritually a thousand times a day.

Swer den lîcham unsers herren gerne nemen wil, der
Whoever the body of-our lord gladly take will he
endarf niht warten des, daz er in im bevinde oder smecke,
needs not await that that he in him perceive or taste
wie grôz diu innekeit oder diu andâht sî, sunder er sol war
how great the inwardness or the devotion be but he shall heed
nemen, wie getân sîn wille unde meinunge sî. Dû ensolt
take how made his will and intention be Thou shalt
niht grôz wegen, wes dû enpfindest; wan ahte grôz, waz
not greatly weigh what thou perceivest but esteem great what
dû nemest unde waz dû meinest. Der mensche, der frîlîche
thou takest and what thou intendest The man who freely
wil unde mac zuo unserm herren gên, der sol zem êrsten
will and may to our lord go he shall at-the first
an im haben, daz er sîn gewizzen vinde ân allez strâfen
in him have that he his conscience find without all rebuke
der sünde. Daz ander ist, daz des menschen wille in got
of-the sin The second is that the man's will to God
sî gekêret, daz er niht enmeine unde daz in nihtes niht
be turned that he nothing intend and that him nothing at-all

geluste denne gotes unt daz zemâle götlich ist, unt daz
lust but of-God and what wholly divine is and that
ime missevalle waz gote ungelîch ist. Wan an dem selben
him displease what to-God unlike is For in the same
sol ouch der mensche brüeven, wie verre unde wie nâhe er
shall also the man prove how far and how near he
gote sî, reht als vil als er des minr oder mê hât. Daz
to-God be just as much as he of-it less or more has The
dritte ist, daz er an ime sol haben, daz diu minne zuo
third is that he in him shall have that the love to
dem sacramente und zuo unserm herren dâ von mê unde
the sacrament and to our lord there from more and
mê wahse unde daz diu êrbêre vorhte dâ von sich niht
more grow and that the reverent fear there from itself not
minre von dem dicken zuogên. Wan daz dâ dicke ist eins
lessen from the frequent going-to For what there often is one
menschen leben, daz ist des andern tôt. Dar umbe solt dû
man's life that is the other's death There for shalt thou
daz merken in dir, obe dîn minne wahset zuo gote unde
that mark in thee whether thy love grows to God and
diu êrberkeit niht verlischet. Ie dû denne dicker zuo dem
the reverence not goes-out Ever thou then more-often to the
sacramente gêst, ie daz verre bezzer unde nützer ist. Unt
sacrament goest ever that far better and more-useful is And
dar umbe lâ dir dînen got niht abe sprechen noch predigen,
there for let thee thy God not off speak nor preach
wan ie mêr ie bezzer unde gote verre lieber. Wan unsern
for ever more ever better and to-God far dearer For our
herren gelustet, daz er in dem menschen unde mit dem
lord lusts that he in the man and with the
menschen wone. Nû möhtest dû sprechen 'eyâ, herre, ich
man dwell Now mightest thou speak eya lord I

vinde mich alse blôz unde kalt unde trêge, dar umbe tar
find me so bare and cold and slothful there for dare
ich niht zuo unserm herren gên.' Sô spriche ich, deste baz
I not to our lord go So say I the better
bedarft dû, daz dû zuo dînem gote gangest, wan in ime
needest thou that thou to thy God go for in him
wirdest dû geheiliget und im alleine zuo gefüeget unde
becomest thou sanctified and to-him alone to joined and
geeiniget, wan die gnâde vindest dû in dem sacramente
united for the grace findest thou in the sacrament
unde niendert anders als eigenlîchen, daz dîne lîplîche krefte
and nowhere else so properly that thy bodily powers
dâ werdent geeiniget unde gesamenet von der wirdigen kraft
there become united and gathered by the worthy power
der lîplîchen gegenwürtikeit unsers herren lîchames, alsô daz
of-the bodily presence of-our lord's body so that
alle zerströute sinne die werdent hier inne gesamenet unde
all scattered senses they become here in gathered and
geeiniget, unde die sunderlîche wâren ze sêre geneiget,
united and those-which separately were too greatly inclined
die werdent hie ûf gerihtet unde gote ordenlîchen erboten
they become here up directed and to-God orderly offered
unde von dem minnenden gote sô werdent sie inwendic
and by the loving God so become they inwardly
gewenet unde gespenet von lîplîchen hindernüssen der
accustomed and weaned from bodily hindrances of-the
zîtlîchen dinge unde werdent geringe zuo götlîchen dingen
temporal things and become light to divine things
unde gesterket unde von sîme lîchamen erniuwet. Wan wir
and strengthened and by his body renewed For we
süllen in in verwandelt und alzemâle geeiniget werden,
shall into him changed and wholly united become

daz daz sîn unser wirt und allez daz unser wirt daz sîn:
that the his ours becomes and all that ours becomes that his
unser herze unt daz sîn éin herze und unser lîcham unt
our heart and the his one heart and our body and
der sîn éin lîcham. Alsô süllen alle unser sinne und unser
the his one body So shall all our senses and our
wille, meinunge, krefte, gelider in in getragen werden, daz
will intention powers limbs into him borne become that
man sîn enpfinde unde gewar werde in allen kreften lîbes
one him perceive and aware become in all powers of-body
unde sêle. Nû möhtest dû sprechen ‘eyâ, herre, ich enwirde
and soul Now mightest thou speak eya lord I become
niht grôzer dinge in mir gewar denne armuot: wie getörste
not of-great things in me aware but poverty how dared
ich denne zuo ime gên?’ Entriuwen, wilt dû denne dîne
I then to him go Truly (if)-wilt thou then thy
armuot wandeln, sô ganc zuo dem geneigeten schatze alles
poverty change so go to the inclined treasure of-all
unmêziges rîchtuomes, sô wirdest dû rîch; wan dû solt daz
immeasurable riches so becomest thou rich for thou shalt that
wizzen in dir, daz er alleine ist der schatz, an dem dir
know in thee that he alone is the treasure in which to-thee
mac genüegen unde der dich mac erfüllen. Dar umbe wil
may suffice and who thee may fill There for will
ich zuo dir gân, daz dîn rîchtuom erfülle mîn armuot und
I to thee go that thy richness fill my poverty and
alliu dîn unmêzikeit erfülle mîn îtelkeit unde dîn unmêzigiu,
all thy immeasurableness fill my vanity and thy immeasurable
unbegrîfenlîchiu gotheit erfülle mîn alzesnœde verdorbene
incomprehensible godhead fill my all-too-base corrupted
menscheit. ‘Eyâ, herre, ich hân ze vil gesündet, ich enmac
humanity Eya lord I have too much sinned I may

niht gebüezen.' Des ganc zuo im, er hât wirdeclîche
not atone Of-that go to him he has worthily
gebüezet alle schulde, in im maht dû wol opfern daz
atoned all guilt in him canst thou well offer the
wirdige opfer dem himelischen vater für alle dîne schulde.
worthy offering to-the heavenly father for all thy guilt
'Eyâ, herre, ich wolte in gerne loben, sô enkan ich niht.'
Eya lord I would him gladly praise so can I not
Ganc zuo im, er ist alleine ein annemendiu dancnêmekeit
Go to him he is alone an acceptable gratitude
des vaters und unmêzigez wârgesprochen volkomenez lop
of-the father and immeasurable truly-spoken perfect praise
aller götlîcher güete. Kurzlîchen, wilt dû alles gebresten
of-all divine goodness Briefly (if)-wilt thou of-all failing
benomen werden alzemâle unde mit tugenden unde mit
bereft become wholly and with virtues and with
gnâden bekleidet werden und in den ursprunc wunneclîche
graces clothed become and into the origin blissfully
geleitet unde gefüeret werden mit allen tugenden unde
led and brought become with all virtues and
gnâden, sô halt dich alsô, daz dû daz sacrament wirdeclîche
graces so hold thee so that thou the sacrament worthily
unde dicke mügest nemen, sô wirdest dû zuo ime geeiniget
and often mayest take so becomest thou to him united
unde mit sîme lîchamen geedelt. Jâ in dem lîchamen unsers
and with his body ennobled Yea in the body of-our
herren wirt diu sêle alsô nâhe in got gefüeget, daz alle die
lord becomes the soul so near into God joined that all the
engel weder von Cherubîn noch von Seraphîn mügent daz
angels neither of Cherubim nor of Seraphim may the
underscheit niht gewizzen noch vinden zwischen in beiden.
distinction not know nor find between them both

Wan wâ sie got rüerent, dâ rüerent sie die sêle, unde wâ
For where they God touch there touch they the soul and where
diu sêle dâ got. Nie enwart sô nâhiu einunge; wan diu sêle
the soul there God Never was so near union for the soul
ist vil nêher mit gote vereinet denne lîp unde sêle, die
is much nearer with God united than body and soul which
einen menschen machent. Disiu einunge ist vil nêher denne
a man make This union is much nearer than
der einen tropfen wazzers güzze in ein vaz wînes; dâ
he-who a drop of-water poured into a vat of-wine there
wêre wazzer unde wîn unt daz wirt alsô in ein gewandelt,
were water and wine and that becomes so into one changed
daz alle crêatûre niht künden daz underscheit vinden. Nû
that all creatures not could the distinction find Now
möhtestû sprechen 'wie mac diz wesen? nû enpfinde ich
mightest-thou speak how may this be now perceive I
nihtesniht.' Waz lît dar an? Ie dû minr enpfindest unde
nothing-at-all What lies there on Ever thou less perceivest and
grœzlîcher gloubest, ie dîn geloube lobelîche ist unde
more-greatly believest ever thy faith more-praiseworthy is and
mêr geahtet unde gelopt sol werden, wan ein ganz geloube
more esteemed and praised shall become for a whole faith
ist vil mêr denne ein wênen in dem menschen. In im
is much more than a supposing in the man In him
sô habe wir ein wâr wizzen. In der wârheit, uns gebristet
so have we a true knowing In the truth to-us lacks
nihtes denne eins wâren gelouben. Daz uns dunket, wir
nothing but a true faith That us seems we
haben mê guotes in eime denne in dem andern, daz kumt
have more good in one than in the other that comes
niht wan von ûzern gesetzen und ist an eime niht mêr
not but from outer ordinances and is in one not more

denne an dem andern. Swer gelîch geloubet, der nimt
than in the other Whoever alike believes he takes
gelîch unde hât gelîch. Nû möhtest dû sprechen ‘wie möhte
alike and has alike Now mightest thou speak how might
ich grœzer dinc gelouben die wîle ich mich niht alsô vinde
I greater things believe the while I me not so find
unde mich gebrestlich vinde unde geneiget zuo vil dingen?’
and me failing find and inclined to many things
Sich, dâ solt dû zwei dinc merken an dir, die ouch unser
See there shalt thou two things mark in thee which also our
herre an ime hete. Er hete die obersten unde die nidersten
lord in him had He had the highest and the lowest
krefte, die heten ouch zwei werc. Sîn obersten krefte die
powers they had also two works His highest powers they
heten ein besitzunge und ein gebrûchunge êwiger sêlikeit.
had a possession and an enjoyment of-eternal blessedness
Aber die nidersten krefte die wâren in den selben stunden
But the lowest powers they were in the same hours
in dem meisten lîden unde strîten ûf der erde unde der
in the greatest suffering and striving on the earth and of-the
werc keinez enhinderte daz ander an sîme fürwurfe. Alsô
works none hindered the other in its object So
sol in dir sîn, daz die obersten krefte süllen sîn erhaben in
shall in thee be that the highest powers shall be raised into
got unde zemâle erboten unde zuo gefüeget. Mêr: triuwen,
God and wholly offered and to joined But truly
allez lîden sol man zemâle bevelhen dem lîchame unde den
all suffering shall one wholly commend to-the body and to-the
nidersten kreften unde den sinnen, aber der geist sol sich
lowest powers and to-the senses but the spirit shall itself
mit ganzer kraft erheben unde ledeclîchen in sînen got
with whole strength raise and freely into its God

versenken. Mêr: diu lîdunge der sinne unde der nidersten
sink But the suffering of-the senses and of-the lowest
krefte diu gêt dise niht an noch disiu anvehtunge; wan ie
powers that goes this not on nor this temptation for ever
der strît mêr unde sterker ist, ie ouch der sig unde diu
the strife more and stronger is ever also the victory and the
êre des siges grœzer unde lobelîcher ist. Wan ie danne
honor of-the victory greater and more-praiseworthy is For ever then
diu anvehtunge grœzer ist unde der anstôz der untugende
the temptation greater is and the assault of-the vice
sterker ist unt der mensche ouch überwindet, ie ouch diu
stronger is and the man also overcomes ever also the
tugent eigener ist unt dîme gote lieber ist. Unt dar umbe,
virtue more-proper is and to-thy God dearer is And there for
wilt dû dînen got wirdeclîchen enpfâhen, sô nim war,
(if)-wilt thou thy God worthily receive so take heed
wie dîn obersten krefte in dînen got gerihtet sîn unde
how thy highest powers into thy God directed be and
wie dîn wille denne sînen willen suochende sî unde waz
how thy will then his will seeking be and what
dû an ime meinende sîst unde wie dîn triuwe an ime
thou in him intending be and how thy faith in him
bestanden sî. Der mensche enpfâhet den werden lîcham
stood-fast be The man receives the worthy body
unsers herren niemer in disem, er enpfâhe sunderlîche
of-our lord never in this but-he receive special
grôze gnâde, unde ie dicker ie nützer. Jâ der mensche
great grace and ever more-often ever more-useful Yea the man
möhte den lîcham unsers herren nemen in solicher andâht
might the body of-our lord take in such devotion
unde meinunge (wêre der mensche in der ordenunge), daz er
and intention were the man in the order that he

solte komen in den understen kôr der engel. Er möhte in
should come into the lowest choir of-the angels He might him
alsô enpfâhen ze einem mâle, daz er in den andern würde
so receive at one time that he into the second would-be
erhaben. Jâ, in solicher andâht möhtest dû in enpfâhen,
raised Yea in such devotion mightest thou him receive
dû würdest geahtet in den ahten oder in den niunden
thou wouldst-be esteemed in the eighth or in the ninth
kôr. Dar umbe, wêren zwei menschen in allem leben gelîch
choir There for were two men in all life alike
unde hête der ein einest unsers herren lîcham mit wirdikeit
and had the one once our lord's body with worthiness
ein mâl enpfangen mêr dan der ander, durch daz sol der
one time received more than the other through that shall the
mensche sîn als ein blitzendiu sunne vor dem andern unde
man be as a flashing sun before the other and
sol ein sunderlîche einunge mit gote haben. Diz nemen
shall a special union with God have This taking
unde diz sêlige niezen des lîchamen unsers herren dar an
and this blessed enjoying of-the body of-our lord there on
lît niht alleine ûzwendiger nutz, ez lît dar an ouch ein
lies not alone outward use it lies there on also a
geistlîcher nutz mit begirlîchem gemüete und in einunge und
spiritual use with desirous mind and in union and
in andâht. Diz mac der mensche sô getriulîchen nemen, daz
in devotion This may the man so faithfully take that
er rîcher wirt an gnâden denne kein mensche ûf ertrîche.
he richer becomes in graces than any man on earth
Diz mac der mensche tuon tûsent stunt in dem tage unde
This may the man do thousand times in the day and
mêr, er sî swâ er sî, er sî siech oder gesunt. Mêr, man
more he be wherever he be he be sick or healthy But one

sol sich sacramentlîchen dar zuo füegen unde nâch wîse
shall himself sacramentally there to join and after manner
guoter ordenunge unde nâch grôzheit der begerunge. Hât
of-good order and after greatness of-the desire (If)-has
man aber der ordenunge unde begerunge niht, sô reize
one however of-the order and desire not so incite
man sich dar zuo unde bereite sich dar zuo unde halt
one himself there to and prepare himself there to and hold
sich dar nâch, sô wirt man heilig in der zît unde sêlig
himself there after so becomes one holy in the time and blessed
in der êwikeit. Die geb uns der herre der wârheit unde
in the eternity That give us the lord of-the truth and
diu minne der kiuscheit unde daz leben der êwikeit. Âmen.
the love of-the chastity and the life of-the eternity Amen

Von dem flîze

XXI · ZEAL

One may go to the sacrament without great anxiety; confession first is fitting, but a man who cannot reach it should confess to God in repentance and be at peace. He must learn to be free in his works, guarding his mind against images from outside and keeping his inwardness present, for reason belongs to nothing so much as to God, and once turned to creatures it must be won back with great effort. All God's gifts are given to prepare us for the one gift that is Himself, and a man must stand ever ready for them. Virtue is had only when it is wrought in its ground, without a why; a whole will counts before God as the deeds of a thousand years.

Swenne ein mensche unsers herren lîchamen wil nemen,
When a man our lord's body will take
sô mac ez wol zuo gên âne grôz bekümbernüsse. Sô ist
so may be well to go without great worry So is

ez zimlich unde sêre nütze, daz man vor bîhte, ouch ob
it fitting and greatly useful that one before confess also if
man keine strâfunge hât, umbe die fruht des sacramentes
one no rebuke has for the fruit of-the sacrament
der bîhte. Wêre aber, daz den menschen iht strâfete
of-the confession Were however that the man anything rebuked
unde mac er der bîhte vor bekümbernüsse niht bekomen,
and may he to-the confession for worry not come
sô gê er ze sîme gote unde gebe sich dem schuldic mit
so go he to his God and give himself to-him guilty with
grôzem riuwen unde sî ze fride biz daz er muoze habe
great contrition and be at peace until that he leisure have
der bîhte. Enpfallen die wîle hier inne die gedenken oder
for-the confession (If)-fall-away the while here in the thoughts or
daz strâfen der sünde, sô mac er gedenken, got habe ir
the rebuke of-the sin so may he think God have them
ouch vergezzen. Man sol got ê bîhten denne den liuten
also forgotten One shall to-God before confess than to-the people
und ist man schuldic die bîhte vor gote grôz wegen unde
and is one bound the confession before God greatly to-weigh and
sêre strâfen. Ouch sol man niht lîhtlîchen, als man zuo
greatly to-rebuke Also shall one not lightly when one to
dem sacramente wil gên, daz übergên und underwegen lâzen
the sacrament will go that pass-over and aside leave
durch ûzerlîchez lîden, wenne des menschen meinunge gereht
for outward suffering when the man's intention just
unde götlich ist unde guot. Man sol daz lernen, daz man
and divine is and good One shall that learn that one
in den werken ledic sî. Daz ist aber einem ungeloubigen
in the works free be That is however to-an unbelieving
menschen ungewonlich ze tuon, daz er ez dar zuo bringe,
man unaccustomed to do that he it there to bring

daz in kein menige noch kein werc hindere, unde dâ zuo
that him no crowd nor any work hinder and there to
gehœret grôzer flîz und daz im got als gegenwürtic
belongs great diligence and that to-him God as present
sî unde stêteclîche liuhte als blôz ze einer ieglîchen zît
be and constantly shine as bare at an every time
und in aller menige, dar zuo gehœret gar ein behender
and in every crowd there to belongs quite a nimble
flîz unde sunderlîche zwei dinc. Daz ein, daz sich der
diligence and especially two things The one that himself the
mensche wol verslozzen habe inwendic, daz sîn gemüete sî
man well locked have inward that his mind be
gewarnet vor allen den bilden, diu ûzwendic stênt, daz
guarded against all the images which outward stand that
sie ûzwendic ime belîben und in keiner fremder wîse
they outward to-him remain and in no alien manner
mit ime wandeln und umbe gên und deheine stat in ime
with him walk and about go and no place in him
vinden. Daz ander, daz sich sîn inwendic bilde, ob ez
find The other that himself his inward images whether it
bilde sîn oder ein erhabenheit des gemüetes oder ûzwendic
images be or a raising of-the mind or outward
bilde oder waz daz sî, daz der mensche gegenwürtic
images or whatever that be which the man present
hât, daz er sich in den iht zerlâze noch zerströuwe noch
has that he himself in them not dissolve nor scatter nor
veriuzer in der menige. Der mensche sol alle sîne krefte
externalize in the crowd The man shall all his powers
dar zuo wenen unde kêren unde gegenwürtic haben sîn
there to accustom and turn and present have his
inwendikeit. Nû möhtest dû sprechen ‘der mensche muoz
inwardness Now mightest thou speak the man must

sich ûz kêren, sol er ûzwendigiu dinc würken, wan
himself out turn (if)-shall he outward things work for
kein werc kan gewürket werden denne in sînem eigenen
no work can worked become but in its own
bilde.' Daz ist wol wâr. Aber die ûzerkeit der bilde sint
image That is well true But the outwardness of-the images are
dem geuobten menschen niht ûzerlich, wan elliu dinc sint
to-the practiced man not outward for all things are
dem inwendigen menschen ein inwendigiu götlîchiu wîse.
to-the inward man an inward divine manner
Diz ist vor allen dingen niht, wan daz der mensche sîne
This is before all things nothing but that the man his
vernunft wol unt zemâle got gewene und üebe, sô wirt
reason well and wholly to-God accustom and exercise so becomes
im alle zît innen götlich. Der vernunft enist niht als
to-him all time inward divine To-the reason is nothing as
eigen noch als gegenwirtic noch als nâhe als got. Niemer
own nor as present nor as near as God Never
enkêret si sich anderswar nâch. Zuo den crêatûren enkêret
turns she herself elsewhere after To the creatures turns
si sich niht, ir geschehe denne gewalt und unreht, si
she herself not unless-to-her happen then force and wrong she
wirt dâ rehte gebrochen unde verkêret. Dâ si danne ist
becomes there truly broken and perverted Where she then is
verdorben in eime jungen menschen oder waz mensche daz
spoiled in a young man or whatever man that
ist, dâ muoz si mit ganzem flîze gezogen werden unde
is there must she with whole diligence drawn become and
muoz man dar zuo tuon allez daz man vermac, daz man
must one there to do all that one can that one
die vernunft her wider wene unde ziehe. Wan wie eigen
the reason hither back accustom and draw For however own

oder nâtiurlich ir got sî, sô si doch mit dem êrsten
or natural to-her God be so she yet with the first
wirt verkêret unde wirt begründet mit den crêatûren unde
becomes perverted and becomes grounded with the creatures and
mit in verbildet unde dar zuo gewenet, sô wirt si an
with them imaged and there to accustomed so becomes she in
dem teil alsô verkrenket und ungewaltig ir selbes und ir
that part so weakened and powerless of-her self and her
edeliu meinunge alsô sêre verhindert, daz aller flîz, den
noble intention so sorely hindered that all diligence which
der mensche vermac, der ist im iemer kleine genuoc, daz
the man can it is to-him ever small enough that
er sich alsô zemâle wider wene. Sô er daz allez getuot,
he himself so wholly back accustom When he that all does
dennoch bedarf er stêter huote. Vor allen dingen sô sol
still needs he constant guard Before all things so shall
der mensche sehen dar zuo, daz er sich sêre unde wol
the man see there to that he himself greatly and well
gewene. Daz sich ein ungeweneter und ungeüebeter mensche
accustom That himself an unaccustomed and unpracticed man
alsô wolte halten und alsô tuon als ein gewenet mensche,
so would hold and so do as an accustomed man
der wolte sich alzemâle verderben unde würde niemer
he would himself wholly ruin and would-become never
niht ûz im. Swenne sich der mensche selber zemâle zem
anything out-of him When himself the man self wholly at-the
êrsten hât aller dinge entwenet und im entfremdet, dar
first has of-all things weaned and to-himself estranged there
nâch mag er denne gewêrlîche alliu sîniu werc würken unde
after may he then truly all his works work and
der ledeclîche gebrûchen und embern âne alle hindernüsse.
them freely enjoy and forgo without all hindrances

Mêr: swaz der mensche minnende ist unde lust nimt und
But whatever the man loving is and delight takes and
im volget mit willen, ez sî in spîse oder in trank oder in
to-him follows with will it be in food or in drink or in
waz dinge ez sî, daz enmac âne gebresten niht bestên
whatever thing it be that may without failing not stand
in eime ungeüebeten menschen. Der mensche sol sich
in an unpracticed man The man shall himself
wenen, daz er des sînen in keinen dingen niht ensuoche
accustom that he of-the his in no things anything seek
noch enneme unde daz er got in allen dingen vinde unde
nor take and that he God in all things find and
neme. Wan got engît keine gâbe noch nie gegab, daz man
take For God gives no gift nor ever gave that one
die gâbe hête unt dar an geruowete, sunder alle die gâbe,
the gift had and there on rested but all the gifts
die er gegeben hât in himel und ûf erden, die gab er
which he given has in heaven and on earth those gave he
alle dar umbe, daz er eine gâbe geben möhte, daz was
all there for that he one gift give might that was
er selber. Mit disen gâben allen wil er uns bereiten zuo
he self With these gifts all will he us prepare to
der gâbe, diu er selber ist, und elliu diu werc, diu got
the gift which he self is and all the works which God
ie geworhte in himel und in erden, diu worhte er durch
ever worked in heaven and in earth those worked he for
eines werkes willen, daz er daz möhte gewürken, daz ist
one work's sake that he that might work that is
in sêligen, daz er uns möhte sêligen. Alsô spriche ich:
himself to-bless that he us might bless So say I
in allen gâben und in allen werken sülle wir got lernen
in all gifts and in all works shall we God learn

ansehen und an niht sülle wir uns lâzen genüegen und
to-look-at and in nothing shall we ourselves let suffice and
an nihte stên belîben. Ze keiner wîse ist unser stêns
in nothing stand remain At no manner is our standing
in disem lebenne noch nie menschen wart, wie verre er
in this life nor ever to-man was however far he
ouch ie kam. Vor allen dingen sol sich der mensche alle
also ever came Before all things shall himself the man all
zît hân gerihtet gên den gâben gotes und alwege niuwe.
time have directed toward the gifts of-God and always new
Ich spriche kurzlîchen: von eime menschen, der wolte sêre
I say briefly of a man who would very
gerne etwaz haben von unserm herren, dâ sprêche ich,
gladly something have from our lord there would-say I
si wêre niht wol bereit, und gêbe ir got die gâbe
she were not well ready and should-give to-her God the gift
alsô unbereit, si solte verderben. Ein frâge: war umbe was
so unready she should perish A question where fore was
si niht bereit? si hete doch einen guoten willen, wan
she not ready she had yet a good will for
ir sprechet, daz er elliu dinc vermüge und daz in dem
you say that he all things can and that in that
elliu dinc unde volkomenheit lige. Daz ist wâr: ez sint
all things and perfection lie That is true there are
zwêne sinne ze nemen an dem willen. Der ein ist ein
two senses to take in the will The one is a
zuovallender wille und ein ungewesender wille; der ander
chancing will and an unbeing will the other
ist ein zuoverhengender wille und machender wille und
is an allowing will and making will and
ein gewenet wille. Triuwen, des enist niht genuoc, daz des
an accustomed will Truly it is not enough that the

menschen gemüete abe gescheiden sî in eime gegenwirtigen
man's mind off separated be in a present
punkten, als man sich gote füegen wil, sunder man
point when one himself to-God join will but one
muoz ein wol geüebete abegescheidenheit haben, diu vor
must a well practiced detachment have which before
unde nâch gênde sî: denne mac man grôziu dinc von gote
and after going be then may one great things from God
enpfâhen unde got in den dingen. Und ist man unbereit,
receive and God in the things And (if)-is one unready
man verderbet die gnâde unde got in der gâbe. Daz ist diu
one ruins the grace and God in the gift That is the
sache, daz uns got niht gegeben mag alle zît, als wir es
cause that us God not give may all time as we it
biten. Ez gebristet an ime niht, wan im ist tûsent stunt
ask It lacks in him not for to-him is thousand times
gêher ze gebenne wan uns ze nemenne. Aber wir tuon im
hastier to give than us to take But we do to-him
gewalt und unreht mit dem, daz wir in sîns nâtiurlîchen
force and wrong with that that we him of-his natural
werkes hindern mit unser unbereitschaft. Der mensche sol
work binder with our unreadiness The man shall
sich in allen gâben lernen selber ûz im tragen unde niht
himself in all gifts learn self out-of him to-carry and nothing
eigens behalten noch niht ensuochen weder nutz noch lust
own keep nor anything seek either profit or delight
noch innekeit noch süezikeit noch lôn noch himelrîche
or inwardness or sweetness or reward or heaven
noch eigen willen. Got engap sich nie noch engît sich
or own will God gave himself never nor gives himself
niemer in keinen fremden willen. Niht engît er sich wan
ever into any alien will Not gives he himself but

in sîn selbes willen. Swâ got sînen willen vindet, dâ
into his self's will Wherever God his will finds there
gît er sich în unde lêzet sich in dem mit allem dem
gives he himself in and lets himself into that with all that
daz er ist. Unde ie wir mêr des unsern entwerden, ie
which he is And ever we more of-the ours un-become ever
wir mêr in disem gewêrlîche werden. Dar umbe enist niht
we more in this truly become There for is not
genuoc, daz wir ze einem mâle ûf geben uns selber unde
enough that we at one time up give us self and
allez, daz wir haben unde vermügen, sunder wir süllen uns
all that we have and can but we shall us
dicke erniuwern und alsô einigen und erledigen uns selber
often renew and so simplify and free us self
in allen dingen. Ouch ist ez sêre nütze, daz ime der
in all things Also is it greatly useful that to-him the
mensche niht lâze genüegen dar an, daz er hât die tugende
man not let suffice there on that he has the virtues
in dem gemüete, als gehôrsam, armuot und ander tugent,
in the mind as obedience poverty and other virtue
sunder der mensche sol sich selber an den werken und an
but the man shall him self in the works and in
den frühten üeben der tugende unde sich dicke versuochen
the fruits exercise of-the virtues and himself often test
unde begern unde wellen von den liuten werden geüebet
and desire and will by the people become exercised
unde versuochet. Wan dâ mite enist ez niht genuoc,
and tested For there with is it not enough
daz man tuo diu werc der tugende oder die gehôrsam
that one do the works of-the virtues or the obedience
getuon müge oder daz man armüete oder die bescheidenheit
do may or that one poverty or the discretion

enpfâhen müge oder daz man sich mit der andern wîse
receive may or that one himself with the other manner
gedêmüetigen oder gelâzen müge, sunder man sol dar nâch
humble or leave may but one shall there after
stên unde niemer ûfhœren biz man die tugent gewinne in
stand and never up-cease until one the virtue gain in
irem wesen und in irem grunde. Unt daz man sî habe, daz
her being and in her ground And that one her have that
mac man an dem brüeven, als man sich zuo der tugende
may one in that prove when one himself to the virtue
vindet geneiget vor allen dingen unde wenne man diu werc
finds inclined before all things and when one the works
der tugende würket an bereitunge des willen und ûf
of-the virtue works without preparation of-the will and on
sundern eigenen ûfsatz einer gerehten oder grôzen sache
special own purpose of-a just or great cause
(unde si würket sich als mêr durch sich selber unde durch
and she works herself as rather for her self and for
die minne der tugende und umbe kein warumbe): denne
the love of-the virtue and for no why then
hât man die tugent volkomenlîche unde niht ê. Als lange
has one the virtue perfectly and not before So long
lerne man sich lâzen biz daz man niht eigens behelt. Aller
learn one himself to-leave until that one nothing own keeps All
gestürme unfride kumt zemâle von eigem willen, man merk
of-storms discord comes wholly from own will one mark
ez oder merk ez niht. Man sol sich selber unde mit allen
it or mark it not One shall him self and with all
sinnen in ein lûter entwerden willens unde begerens legen
senses into a pure un-becoming of-willing and of-desiring lay
in den guoten unde liepsten willen gotes mit dem und
into the good and dearest will of-God with that and

allem, daz man wellen unde begern mag in allen dingen.
all that one will and desire may in all things
Ein frâge: sol man sich ouch gotes süezikeit willeclîche
A question shall one himself also of-God's sweetness willingly
erwegen: mac daz denne niht wol komen von trâgheit unde
give-up may that then not well come from sloth and
von kleiner minne zuo im? Jâ halt wol âne daz bekennen
from small love to him Yea indeed well without the knowing
des underscheides. Wan ez kome von trâgheit oder von
of-the distinction For it come from sloth or from
wârer abegescheidenheit oder von gelâzenheit, sô sol man
true detachment or from leftness so shall one
merken, obe man sich hier inne vindet, als man sô gar
mark whether one himself here in finds when one so wholly
von innen gelâzen ist, daz man denne got alsô getriuwe
from within left is that one then to-God as faithful
ist, als man in dem grœsten enpfinden wêre, daz man hier
is as one in the greatest perceiving were that one here
inne allez daz tuo, daz man dâ tête, unde niht minr, unde
in all that do which one there did and not less and
daz man sich als abegescheidenlîche halte von allem trôste
that one himself as detachedly hold from all comfort
unde helfunge als man tête, sô man gegenwürteclîchen
and help as one did when one presently
got enpfünde. Dem rehten menschen in dem volkomenen
God perceived To-the right man in the perfect
guoten willen mac denne kein zît ze kurz sîn. Wan wâ
good will may then no time too short be For where
der wille alsô stêt, daz er genzeclîche wil allez, daz er
the will so stands that he wholly will all that he
vermac — niht alleine nû, sunder sölt er leben tûsent jâr,
can not alone now but should be live thousand years

er wölte tuon allez, daz er vermöhte—, der wille bezalt
he would do all that he could the will pays
als vil als man in tûsent jâren möhte getuon mit den
as much as one in thousand years might do with the
werken: daz hât er allez getân vor gote.
works that has he all done before God

Wie man gote volgen sol, unde von guoter wîse

XXII · HOW ONE SHOULD FOLLOW GOD, AND OF A GOOD WAY

One who begins a new life should ask God for what is best and dearest to Him, and take whatever God sends as from Him without means. If another way later pleases him more, he should keep the way God gave and draw all good ways into it, for changing ways breeds instability. A good that will not bear another good is not from God. God gives each man his best and never takes away fallen one He might have found standing. He destroys no good, and grace does not destroy nature or man's free will but fulfills it, as glory is grace fulfilled; so we should destroy no small good for a greater. A man should seek and find God at all times.

Der mensche, der eines niuwen lebens oder werkes wil
The man who a new life or work will
bestên, der sol gân zuo sîme gote unde von dem sol er mit
undertake he shall go to his God and from him shall he with
grôzer kraft unde ganzer andâht begern, daz er ime füege
great strength and whole devotion desire that he to-him arrange
daz aller beste unt daz im aller liebest unde wirdigest sî,
the all best and what to-him all dearest and worthiest be
unde welle unde meine dâ niht des sînen denne alleine
and will and intend there nothing of-the his but alone
den liebesten willen gotes und anders niht. Swaz im
the dearest will of-God and else nothing Whatever to-him

danne got zuo füege, daz neme er âne mitel von gote
then God to arrange that take he without means from God
unde halte ez für sîn liebstez unde sî dar inne ganz unde
and hold it for his dearest and be there in whole and
zemâle ze fride. Sî wol, daz ime nâchmâles ein ander
wholly at peace Be-it well that to-him afterward an other
wîse baz gevellet, sô sol er gedenken, dise wîse hât dir
manner better pleases so shall he think this manner has to-thee
got zuo gegeben, unde sî im diu aller beste. Des sol er
God to given and be to-him the all best Of-that shall he
gote getriuwen unde sol alle guote wîse in die selbe wîse
God trust and shall all good manners into the same manner
ziehen unde nemen alliu dinc in dem unde nâch dem,
draw and take all things in that and after that
waz künnes sie sint. Wan swaz got guotes hât getân
of-what kind they are For whatever God of-good has done
unde gegeben in einer wîse, daz mac man ouch vinden
and given in one manner that may one also find
unde geben in allen guoten wîsen, wan in einer wîse sol
and give in all good manners for in one manner shall
man nemen alle guote wîse unde niht die eigenschaft der
one take all good manners and not the possessiveness of-the
wîse. Wan der mensche muoz ie einez tuon, er enmac
manner For the man must ever one-thing do he may
niht alliu dinc getuon. Er muoz ie einez sîn und in dem
not all things do He must ever one be and in the
einen sol man elliu nemen. Wan daz der mensche wölte
one shall one all take For that the man would
allez tuon unt diz unt daz unde von sîner wîse lâzen unde
all do and this and that and from his manner leave and
nemen eins andern wîse, die ime nû vil baz geviele, in
take an other's manner which to-him now much better pleased in

der wârheit daz machete grôz unstêtekeit, wan der mensche
the truth that made great unsteadiness for the man
ê volkomen würde, der ûz der welte kême zemâle in
sooner perfect became who out-of the world came wholly into
einen orden, denne jener, der ûz einem orden kême in
an order than he who out-of an order came into
einen andern, wie heilig der ouch gewesen wêre. Daz ist
an other however holy he also been were That is
durch die wandelunge der wîse. Der mensche neme eine
through the changing of-the manner The man take a
guote wîse unde belîbe iemer dâ bî unde bringe in die
good manner and remain ever there by and bring into it
alle guote wîse und ahte, daz si von gote genomen sî,
all good manners and esteem that it from God taken be
unde beginne niht hiute einz unde morne ein anderz, unde
and begin not today one and tomorrow an other and
sî âne alle sorge, daz er in der iemer iht versume. Wan
be without all care that he in it ever anything neglect For
mit gote enmac man niht versûmen: alse wênic als got
with God may one nothing neglect as little as God
iht versûmen mac, alse wênic mac man mit gote iht
anything neglect may as little may one with God anything
versûmen. Dar umbe nim einz von gote unde dar în ziuch
neglect There for take one from God and there into draw
allez guot. Ist aber, daz ez sich niht wil vertragen, daz
all good (If)-is however that it itself not will bear that
einz daz ander niht lîdet, daz sî dir ein gewis zeichen,
one the other not suffers that be to-thee a sure sign
daz ez von gote niht enist. Ein guot ist wider daz ander
that it from God not is One good is against the other
niht, wan als unser herre sprach ‘ein ieglîch rîche, daz in
not for as our lord spoke an every kingdom that in

ime selber geteilt ist, daz muoz vergên,' und als er ouch
it self divided is that must perish and as he also
sprach 'wer mit mir niht ist, der ist wider mich, unde wer
spoke who with me not is he is against me and who
mit mir niht samenet, der zerströuwet,' alsô sî dir ein
with me not gathers he scatters so be to-thee a
gewis zeichen, welhez guot ein ander guot oder lîhte ein
sure sign whichever good an other good or likely a
minr guot niht enlîdet oder zerströuwet, daz daz von gote
lesser good not suffers or scatters that that from God
niht enist. Ez sol bringen und niht zerstœren. Alsô ein
not is It shall bring and not destroy So a
wâre kurze rede, dâ er inne wil, daz dâ kein zwîvel ist,
true short discourse where he in will that there no doubt is
der getriuwe got gît einem ieglîchen menschen ie sîn aller
the faithful God gives to-an every man ever his all
bestez, unt daz ist gewis wâr, unde niemer nimt er keinen
best and that is surely true and never takes he any
menschen ligende, den er möhte alsô stênde haben funden,
man lying whom he might so standing have found
wan diu gotheit gotes diu meinet alliu ding in dem aller
for the godhead of-God it intends all things in the all
besten. Dâ wirt gefrâget, war umbe denne got niht nême
best There becomes asked where fore then God not took
die liute, die er kennet, daz sie ûz der gnâde des toufes
the people whom he knows that they out-of the grace of-the baptism
solten vallen, daz sie sturben in ir kintheit, ê daz sie
should fall that they died in their childhood before that they
zuo ir bescheidenheit kêmen, wan er von in erkennet,
to their discretion came since he of them knows
daz sie solten vallen unde niht wider ûf stân: daz wêre
that they should fall and not again up stand that were

dâ ir bestez? Dâ spriche ich: got ist niht ein zerstœrer
there their best There say I God is not a destroyer
keines guotes, sunder er ist ein volbringer. Got ist niht ein
of-any good but he is an accomplisher God is not a
zerstœrer der nâtûre, sunder er ist ir volbringer. Ouch diu
destroyer of-the nature but he is her accomplisher Also the
gnâde zerstœret die nâtûre niht, si volbringet sî. Zerstôrte
grace destroys the nature not she accomplishes her Should-destroy
nû got die nâtûre alsô in dem beginne, sô geschêhe ir
now God the nature so in the beginning so would-happen to-her
gewalt unde unreht. Des entuot er niht. Der mensche hât
force and wrong That does he not The man has
einen frîen willen, dâ mite er kiesen mac guot und übel;
a free will there with he choose may good and evil
unde leit ime got für in übeltuon den tôt und in woltuon
and laid to-him God before for evil-doing the death and for well-doing
daz leben, der mensche sol sîn frî und ein herre aller sîner
the life the man shall be free and a lord of-all his
werke und unzerstœret und unbetwungen. Gnâde zerstœret
works and undestroyed and uncompelled Grace destroys
niht die nâtûre, si volbringet sî, wan glôrie ist volbrâhtiu
not the nature she accomplishes her for glory is accomplished
gnâde. Alsô ist niht in gote, daz zerstœre daz iht wesens
grace So is nothing in God that destroy what anything of-being
hât, sunder er ist ein volbringer aller dinge. Alsô sulle
has but he is an accomplisher of-all things So shall
wir kein kleine guot in uns zerstœren noch kleine wîse
we no small good in us destroy nor small manner
durch eine grôze, sunder wir sullen sî volbringen in daz
for a great but we shall them accomplish into the
allerhœhste. Alsô wart gesprochen von einem menschen, der
all-highest So was spoken of a man who

solte eins niuwen lebens beginnen von niuwens, unde sprach
should a new life begin from new and spoke
ich alsô in dirre wîse, daz der mensche solte werden ein
I so in this manner that the man should become a
gotsuochender in allen dingen unde ein gotvindender mensche
God-seeker in all things and a God-finding man
ze aller zît und in allen steten unde bî allen liuten in allen
at all time and in all places and with all people in all
wîsen. In disem mac man alle zît âne underlâz zuonemen
manners In this may one all time without ceasing increase
unde wahsen unde niemer ze ende komen des zuonemens.
and grow and never to end come of-the increasing

Von den werken innerlich und ûzerlich

XXIII · INWARD AND OUTWARD WORKS

A man drawn into himself should still break into a work, inward or outward, and learn to work with God, bringing unity into activity and activity into unity. Humility is perfect only when God humbles a man with himself, for the highest height lies in the deepest ground. God gives no gift for us to own: we should hold all things as lent, for the less we own the more God is ours. The truly poor man can do without all he does not need, like the man in the tub before Alexander. Let God work in you as He will, by nature or by grace, as a man wants water and cares nothing what the pipe is made of; as far as you are in God, so far you are in peace.

Ein mensche wölte sich in sich selber ziehen mit allen
A man would himself into him self draw with all
sînen kreften inwendic und ûzwendic und in dem selben
his powers inward and outward and in the same
stêt er doch alsô, daz in im kein bilde noch getwanc ist
stands he yet so that in him no image nor compulsion is

unde stêt alsô âne êwic werc inwendic und ûzwendic. Dâ
and stands so without eternal work inward and outward There
sol man wol war nemen, obe daz sich iht ziehen welle
shall one well heed take whether it itself anything draw will
zuo ime selber. Ist aber, daz sich der mensche niht wil
to him self (If)-is however that himself the man not will
ze einem werke nêhen unde sichs annemen, sô sol man
to a work approach and himself-of-it take-on so shall one
sich brechen in ein werc, ez sî inwendic oder ûzwendic,
himself break into a work it be inward or outward
wan an niht sol sich der mensche lâzen genüegen, wie
for in nothing shall himself the man let suffice however
guot ez schînet oder sî, wâ er sich vindet in hertikeit
good it seems or be where he himself finds in hardness
oder in twingunge sîn selbes, daz man mêr mac nemen
or in compulsion of-his self that one more may take
daz der mensche dâ werde geworht denne daz er würke,
that the man there become worked than that he work
daz der mensche dâ lerne mitewürken mit sîme gote;
that the man there learn co-work with his God
niht daz man dem innern sülle entgên oder enpfallen oder
not that one the inner shall escape or fall-away or
vermeinen, sunder in dem unde mit dem und ûz dem
neglect but in that and with that and out-of that
sol man lernen würken alsô, daz man die einikeit breche
shall one learn to-work so that one the oneness break
in die würklicheit unde die würklicheit în leite in die
into the activity and the actuality in lead into the
einikeit unde daz man alsô gewone ledeclîche ze würken.
oneness and that one so become-wont freely to work
Wan man sol daz ouge zuo disem inwendigen werke kêren
For one shall the eye to this inward work turn

unde dar ûz würken, ez sî lesen, beten oder ob ez gebürt
and there out work it be reading praying or if it befits
ûzwendic werc. Mêr, wil daz ûzwendic werc daz inner
outward work But (if)-will the outward work the inner
zerströuwen, sô volge man dem inren; mêr, möhten sie
scatter so follow one the inner but might they
beidiu sîn in einem, daz wêre daz beste, daz man ein
both be in one that were the best that one a
mitwürken hête mit gote. Nû ist ein frâge: wie sol man
co-working had with God Now is a question how shall one
dâ mitwürken gehaben? Dâ der mensche ime selben
there co-working have Where the man to-him self
und allen werken enpfallen ist, als sant Dionysius sprach:
and to-all works fallen-away is as saint Dionysius spoke
der sprichet aller schœnste von got, der von völle des
he speaks all fairest of God who from fullness of-the
inwendigen rîchtuomes aller meist kan von ime geswîgen.
inward richness all most can of him be-silent
Dâ sô entsinkent bilde unde werc, der lob und der
There so sink-away images and works the praise and the
danc oder waz er gewürken möhte. Ein antwurt, ein
thanks or whatever he work might An answer one
werc belîbet ime billîche und eigenlîche; doch daz ist ein
work remains to-him rightly and properly yet that is an
vernihten sîn selbes. Doch ist daz vernihten unde verkleinen
annihilating of-his self Yet is the annihilating and lessening
niemer sô grôz sîn selbes, got volbringe ouch daz selbe
never so great of-his self unless-God accomplish also the same
in ime selber, sô gebristet im. Denne ist diu dêmüetikeit
in him self so lacks to-him Then is the humility
allerêrst genuoc volkomen, als got den menschen dêmüetiget
all-first enough perfect when God the man humbles

mit dem menschen selber, unt dâ alleine genüeget den
with the man self and there alone suffices to-the
menschen und ouch der tugent unde niht ê. Ein frâge:
man and also to-the virtue and not before A question
wie sol got den menschen ouch mit im selber vernihten?
how shall God the man also with him self annihilate
Ez schînet, als daz vernihten des menschen wêre gotes
It seems as-if the annihilating of-the man were God's
erhœhen: wan daz êwangelium sprichet 'wer sich nidert,
exalting for the gospel says who himself lowers
der sol erhœhet werden'? Antwurt: jâ unde nein! Er sol
he shall exalted become Answer yea and no He shall
sich selber nidern unde daz selbe mac niht genuoc sîn,
him self lower and the same may not enough be
got der tuo ez denne, und er sol erhœhet werden,
unless-God he do it then and he shall exalted become
niht daz diz nidern einez sî unt daz erhœhen ein anderz,
not that this lowering one be and the exalting an other
sunder diu hœhste hôcheit der hœhe diu lît in dem tiefen
but the highest height of-the height it lies in the deep
grunde der dêmüetikeit. Wan ie der grunt tiefer ist unde
ground of-the humility For ever the ground deeper is and
niderr, ie ouch diu erhœhunge unde diu hœhe hœher
lower ever also the exaltation and the height higher
unde unmêziger ist, unde ie der brunne tiefer ist, ie
and more-immeasurable is and ever the well deeper is ever
er ouch hœher ist: diu tiefe unde diu hœhe ist einz. Dar
it also higher is the depth and the height is one There
umbe wer sich mê genidern kan, ie er hœher ist, unt
for who himself more lower can ever he higher is and
dar umbe sprach unser herre 'wer der meiste wil sîn der
there for spoke our lord who the greatest will be he

werde der minste under iu.' Wer daz wil wesen, der sol
become the least among you Who that will be he shall
diz werden. Diz wesen wirt alleine funden in dem werden.
this become This being becomes alone found in the becoming
Der der minste wirt, der ist in der wârheit der meiste,
He the least becomes he is in the truth the greatest
aber der der minste worden ist, der ist ietzunt der aller
but he who least become is he is now the all
meiste unde alsô wirt daz wort wâr unde volbrâht des
greatest and so becomes the word true and accomplished of-the
êwangelisten 'wer sich nidert, der wirt erhœhet.' Wan allez
evangelist who himself lowers he becomes exalted For all
unser wesen lît an nihte denne an einem nihtwerden. 'Sie
our being lies in nothing but in a nothing-becoming They
sint rîche worden in allen tugenden,' alsô stât geschriben.
are rich become in all virtues so stands written
Entriuwen, daz enmac niemer geschehen, man werde zem
Truly that may never happen unless-one become at-the
êrsten arm von allen dingen. Swer alliu dinc wil nemen,
first poor of all things Whoever all things will take
der muoz ouch elliu dinc begeben. Daz ist ein gelîcher
he must also all things give-up That is an equal
kouf und ein glîch widergelt, als ich vorlang eines sprach.
bargain and an equal requital as I long-ago one-time spoke
Dar umbe als got sich selber und elliu dinc ze sînem frîen
There for as God him self and all things to his free
eigen geben hât, dar umbe wil er uns alle eigenschaft gar
own given has there for will he us all possessiveness wholly
unt zemâle benemen. Jâ in der wârheit, des enwil got
and entirely take-away Yea in the truth of-that will God
keine wîse niht, daz wir als vil eigens haben als mir in
in-no manner at-all that we as much own have as to-me in

mînen ougen möhte geligen, wan alle die gâbe, die er uns
my eyes might lie for all the gifts which he us
ie gegab, noch gâbe der nâtûre noch gâbe der gnâde,
ever gave neither gifts of-the nature nor gifts of-the grace
gegab er nie keine wîse anders denne er wölte, daz wir
gave he never in-any manner otherwise than he would that we
niht eigens hêten; unt des hât er niht gegeben noch
nothing own had and of-that has he nothing given neither
sîner muoter noch keinem menschen noch keiner crêatûre
his mother nor any man nor any creature
noch kein wîse niht. Unde durch daz, daz er uns lerne
nor in-any manner at-all And through that that he us teach
und uns diss gewarne, dâ durch nimt er uns dicke beide
and us of-this warn there through takes he from-us often both
lîplich unde geistlich guot. Wan daz eigen der êre ensol
bodily and spiritual good For the possession of-the honor shall
niht unser sîn, sunder alleine sîn; mêr, wir sullen elliu
not ours be but alone his but we shall all
dinc haben als ob sie uns gelihen sîen unde niht gegeben,
things have as if they to-us lent be and not given
âne alle eigenschaft, daz sî lîp oder sêle, sinne, krefte,
without all possessiveness it be body or soul senses powers
ûzerlich guot oder êre, friunde, mâge, hûs, hof und elliu
outward good or honor friends kinsmen house court and all
dinc. Waz meinet got, daz er disen alsô sêre lâget? Dâ
things What means God that he this so sorely lays-wait-for There
wil er selber alleine daz er müge und müeze sîn. Hier an
will he self alone that he may and must be Here in
lît sîn grœstiu wunne unde spil, unde ie er diz mêr unde
lies his greatest bliss and play and ever he this more and
grœzlîcher mac gesîn, ie sîn wunne unde sîn fröide grœzer
more-greatly may be ever his bliss and his joy greater

ist. Wan ie wir aller dinge mêr eigens haben, ie wir
is For ever we of-all things more own have ever we
sîn minr eigen haben, unde ie wir alliu dinc minr haben,
of-him less own have and ever we all things less have
ie wir sîn mêr haben mit allem dem, daz er geleisten
ever we of-him more have with all that which he achieve
mac. Dar umbe dô unser herre von allen sêligen sachen
may There for when our lord of all blessed things
wolte reden, dô satzte er daz armüete des geistes ze einem
would speak then set he the poverty of-the spirit for a
houpte ir aller unde was diu êrste ze einem zeichen,
head of-them all and was the first for a sign
daz alle sêlikeit unde vollekomenkeit alle und alzemâle ein
that all blessedness and perfection all and wholly a
begin haben in dem armüete des geistes. Und in der
beginning have in the poverty of-the spirit And in the
wârheit, dâ daz ein grunt wêre, dâ alliu güete ûf gebûwet
truth where that a ground were where all goodness on built
möhte werden, der wêre niht, sunder diz unde daz. Daz
might become it would-be not but this and that That
wir uns blôz halten der dinge, diu ûzer uns sint, dâ
we ourselves bare hold of-the things which outside us are there
wider wil uns got ze eigen geben allez, daz in dem himel
against will to-us God for own give all that in the heaven
ist, unde den himel mit aller sîner kraft, jâ allez, daz ûf
is and the heaven with all its power yea all that on
im ie geflôz. Und alle engel und heiligen habent daz, daz
it ever flowed And all angels and saints have that that
unser als eigen sî als in; ie mînr denne mir kein dinc
ours as own be as to-them ever less than to-me any thing
eigen sî wider daz, daz ich mîn selbes ûz gên durch in,
own be against that that I of-my self out go for him

dâ wider sol got mit allem dem, daz er ist unde geleisten
there against shall God with all that which he is and achieve
mac, alzemâle mîn eigen sîn, rehte mîn als sîn, noch minr
may wholly my own be right mine as his neither less
noch mêr. Tûsentstunt mêr sol er mîn eigen sîn denne
nor more Thousand-times more shall he my own be than
kein mensche ie kein dinc gewan, daz er in der kisten
any man ever any thing gained that he in the chest
hât, oder sîn selbes ie wart. Nie wart niht sô eigen als
has or of-his self ever was Never was anything so own as
got mîn sol sîn mit allem dem, daz er vermag und ist.
God mine shall be with all that which he can and is
Diz eigen sullen wir dâ mit erarnen, daz wir hie sîn âne
This own shall we there with earn that we here be without
eigenschaft unser selbes und alles, des er niht enist. Unde
possessiveness of-our self and of-all that he not is And
ie diz armüete volkomener unde lediger ist, ie diz eigen
ever this poverty more-perfect and freer is ever this own
eigener ist, unt daz selbe widergelt ensol niht gemeinet
more-own is and the same requital shall not intended
werden noch minder an gesehen werden unde daz ouge
become nor less on looked become and the eye
ensol sich niemer eines dar ûf gekêren, ob man iemer
shall itself never once there on turn whether one ever
iht gewinnen sülle oder ez enpfâhen sülle, wan alleine
anything gain shall or it receive shall but alone
durch minne der tugende. Wan ie lediger, ie einiger, als
for love of-the virtue For ever freer ever more-one as
der edel Paulus sprichet ‘wir süllen sîn haben als ob wir
the noble Paul says we shall be having as if we
niht haben unde doch alliu dinc besitzen.’ Der hât niht
nothing have and yet all things possess He has not

eigenschaft, der niht begert noch enwil haben an im selber
possessiveness who nothing desires nor will have in him self
noch an allem dem, daz ûzer im ist, jâ ouch an got noch
nor in all that which outside him is yea also in God nor
an allen dingen. Wilt dû wizzen, waz ein wâr arm mensche
in all things Wilt thou know what a true poor man
ist? Der mensche ist wêrlîchen arm von geiste, der allez
is The man is truly poor of spirit who all
daz wol enbern mac, daz niht nôt ist. Dar umbe sprach
that well forgo may which not need is There for spoke
der, der in der kuofen blôz saz, zuo dem grôzen Alexander,
he who in the tub bare sat to the great Alexander
der alle welt under ime hete: 'ich bin' sprach er, 'vil ein
who all world under him had I am spoke he very a
grœzer herre denne dû bist: wan ich hân mêr versmêhet
greater lord than thou art for I have more despised
denne dû besezzen hâst. Daz dû grôz ahtest ze besitzenne,
than thou possessed hast What thou great esteemest to possess
daz ist mir ze kleine ze versmêhenne.' Der ist vil sêliger,
that is to-me too small to despise He is much more-blessed
der aller dinge mag enbern und ir niht bedarf, denne
who all things may forgo and them not needs but
der alliu dinc besezzen hât mit nôtdurft. Der mensche
he-who all things possessed has with need The man
ist der beste, der des enbern kan, des er kein nôt hât.
is the best who that forgo can of-which he no need has
Dar umbe, der aller meist kan enbern unde versmêhen, der
There for who all most can forgo and despise he
hât aller meist gelâzen. Ez schînet ein grôz dinc, daz ein
has all most left It seems a great thing that a
mensche tûsent marc goldes durch got gêbe unde vil mit
man thousand marks of-gold for God gave and much with

sîme guote bûwete klûsen unde klœster und alle armen
his goods built hermitages and cloisters and all poor
spîsete. Mêr: der wêre vil sêliger, der alsô vil durch
fed But he were much more-blessed who so much for
got versmêhete. Der mensche hête ein reht himelrîche,
God despised The man would-have a right heaven
der sich durch got künde aller dinge erwegen, waz got
who himself for God could of-all things give-up whatever God
gêbe oder niht engêbe. Sô sprichest dû 'jâ, herre, wêre
gave or not gave So sayest thou yea lord were
niht mêr denne ein sache noch ein hindernüsse mit mînen
not more than a cause nor a hindrance with my
gebresten.' Hâst dû gebresten, sô bit got ofte, ob ez sîn
failings (If)-hast thou failings so pray God often if it his
êre sî und ime behage, daz er dir sie abe neme, wan
honor be and to-him please that he from-thee them off take for
dû âne in niht enmaht. Nimt er sie abe, sô dank
thou without him nothing canst (If)-takes he them off so thank
ime; unt tuot erz niht, sô lîdest dû ez durch in, niht
him and (if)-does he-it not so sufferest thou it for him not
mêr als ein gebreste einer sünde, sunder als ein grôziu
more as a failing of-a sin but as a great
üebunge unt dâ dû lôn an verdienen solt unde gedult
exercise and where thou reward in earn shalt and patience
an solt üeben. Dû solt ze fride sîn, ob er dir sîne
in shalt exercise Thou shalt at peace be whether he to-thee his
gâbe gît oder niht engît. Er gît eime ieglîchen nâch dem,
gift gives or not gives He gives to-an every-one after that
daz sîn bestez ist und ime füeget. Sol man eime einen
which his best is and to-him befits (If)-shall one for-one a
roc snîden, man muoz in machen nâch sîner mâze: der
coat cut one must it make after his measure what

dem einen füeget, der enfüeget dem andern zemâle niht,
to-the one befits it befits to-the other wholly not
man mizzet eime ieglîchen nâch dem daz er im füeget.
one measures to-an every-one after that which he him befits
Alsô gît got eime ieglîchen daz aller beste nâch dem, daz
So gives God to-an every-one the all best after that which
er mêr kennet unde sîn nêhstez ist. In der wârheit, der
he better knows and his nearest is In the truth who
ime des ganz getriuwet, der nimt unde hât als vil in
him of-it wholly trusts he takes and has as much in
dem minsten als in dem aller meisten. Wölte mir got
the least as in the all most Would to-me God
geben, daz er sante Paulô gap, ich nême ez, ob er wölte,
give what he to-saint Paul gave I would-take it if he would
gerne. Mêr, sô nû er mir ez niht wil geben (wan harte
gladly But since now he to-me it not will give for very
wênic liuten wil er, daz sie in disem lebenne daz wizzen),
few people will he that they in this life that know
daz mir daz got niht engît, dar umbe ist er mir als liep
that to-me that God not gives there for is he to-me as dear
unde sage im als grôzen danc unde bin alsô ze ganzem
and say him as great thanks and am so at whole
fride, daz er mirz enthelt als daz er mirz gît, und ist
peace that he from-me-it withholds as that he to-me-it gives and is
mir dar an genuog und als liep, als er mirz tête, ob
to-me there in enough and as dear as-if he to-me-it did if
mir anders reht ist. In der wârheit, alsô sol mir genüegen
to-me otherwise right is In the truth so shall to-me suffice
an dem willen gotes in allem dem, dâ got wölte würken
in the will of-God in all that where God would work
oder geben, dâ solte mir sô liep und sô wert sîn zuo
or give there should to-me so dear and so worthy be to

sînem willen, daz mir daz lieber wêre denne ob er mir
his will that to-me that dearer were than if he to-me
die gâbe gêbe und in mir dâ worhte: sô wêren alle gâbe
the gift gave and in me there worked so were all gifts
in ein und alliu wesen. Got unt alle crêatûre tuon ir
in one and all beings God and all creatures do their
bestez oder ir ergestez dar zuo, des enmügent sie mir
best or their worst there to that may they from-me
mit nihtiu benemen. Waz mag ich danne klagen, wenne
with nothing take What may I then lament when
aller menschen gâbe mîn eigen sint? In der wârheit, alsô
all men's gifts my own are In the truth so
wol genüeget mir in dem, daz mir got tête oder daz er
well suffices to-me in that that to-me God did or that he
mir gêbe oder niht engêbe, daz ich es mit einem haller
to-me gave or not gave that I it with a farthing
niht wölte vergelten, daz ich alsoliches lebens wêre, daz ich
not would repay that I such life were that I
iht wizzen möhte daz beste. Nû sprichest dû 'ich fürhte,
at-all know might the best Now sayest thou I fear
ich tuo niht genuoc flîz dar zuo unde bewar in niht, als
I do not enough diligence there to and guard it not as
ich möhte.' Daz lâ dir leit sîn unde lîde daz selbe mit
I might That let to-thee sorrowful be and suffer the same with
gedult unde nim ez für ein üebunge unde wis in fride.
patience and take it for an exercise and be in peace
Got der lîdet gerne smâcheit und ungemach unde wil gerne
God he suffers gladly contempt and discomfort and will gladly
enbern sînes dienstes unde lobes umbe daz, die in in fride
forgo his service and praise for that those in him peace
haben, daz die in meinent und an in gehœrent. Wes solte
have that those him intend and to him belong Why should

wir denne niht fride haben, waz er uns gebe oder wes
we then not peace have whatever he us give or what
wir enbern? Sô ist geschriben unde sprichet unser herre,
we forgo So is written and says our lord
daz sie sint sêlic, die dâ lîdent umbe gerehtikeit. In der
that they are blessed who there suffer for justice In the
wârheit, künde ein diep, den man ietzunt solte hâhen, der
truth could a thief whom one now should hang who
es wol verdienet hête unde hête gestolen, und einer der
it well deserved had and had stolen and one who
gemürdet hête, den man von rehte solt entlîben, künden
murdered had whom one by right should put-to-death could
sie in in daz vinden: sich, dû wilt daz lîden durch die
they in them that find see thou wilt that suffer for the
gerehtikeit swenne man dir reht tuot, sie würden âne
justice when one to-thee right does they would-become without
mitel sêlic. In der wârheit, wie unreht wir sîn, nemen wir
means blessed In the truth however wrong we be (if)-take we
von gote, waz er uns tête, von im reht unde lîden durch
from God what he to-us did from him right and suffer for
die gerehtikeit, sô sîn wir sêlic. Denne klage niht, mêr,
the justice so are we blessed Then lament not but
denne klage alleine, daz dû noch klagest unde daz dich
then lament alone that thou still lamentest and that thee
niht benüeget, daz maht dû alleine klagen, daz dû ze vil
not suffices that canst thou alone lament that thou too much
hâst; wan dem reht wêre, der nême als in darben als in
hast for to-whom right were he would-take as in lacking as in
haben. Nû sprichest dû ‘eyâ, got würket alsô grôziu dinc
having Now sayest thou eya God works so great things
in vil liuten unde sie werdent alsô mit götlîchem wesen
in many people and they become so with divine being

überwesent unde got würket in in unde sie niht'. Des
over-being and God works in them and they not Of-that
danke got in in, unde gît er dirz, in gotes namen,
thank God in them and (if)-gives he to-thee-it in God's name
sô nimz; gît er dirs niht, sô solt dû sîn willeclîchen
so take-it (if)-gives he to-thee-it not so shalt thou of-it willingly
darben unde meinen niht dan in unde wis unbeworren,
lack and intend nothing but him and be untroubled
ob got dîniu werc würke oder ob dû sie würkest,
whether God thy works work or whether thou them workest
wan got muoz sie würken, meinest dû in alleine, er
for God must them work (if)-intendest thou him alone he
welle oder enwelle. Enruoch ouch dich, waz wesens oder
will or not-will Care-not also thee what being or
wîse got ieman gebe. Wêre ich alsô guot unde heilig, daz
manner God anyone give Were I so good and holy that
man mich mit den heiligen erheben müeste, sô sprêchen
one me with the saints raise must so would-speak
die liute unde vorschten aber, ob ez gnâde oder nâtûre
the people and would-search however whether it grace or nature
sî, daz in mir ist, unde sint dâ mite beworren. An dem
be that in me is and are there with troubled In that
ist in unreht. Lâ got würken in dir, dem gib daz werc
is to-them wrong Let God work in thee to-him give the work
und enruoch, weder er würke mit der nâtûre, oder ob
and care-not whether he work with the nature or whether
der nâtûre beide ist, die nâtûre unde gnâde sîn. Waz gât
of-the nature both is the nature and grace his What goes
dich daz an, wâ mite im füeget ze würkenne oder waz
thee that on where with to-him befits to work or what
er würke in dir oder in eim andern? Er sol würken, wie
he work in thee or in an other He shall work how

oder wâ oder in welher wîse ez im füeget. Ein mensche
or where or in which manner it to-him befits A man
hête gerne geleitet einen brunnen in sînen garten unde
would-have gladly led a well into his garden and
sprach ‘daz mir des wazzers würde, des enahte ich zemâle
spoke that to-me of-the water became of-that heeded I wholly
niht, waz künnes diu rinne sî, durch die ez mir würde,
not of-what kind the pipe be through which it to-me became
weder îsenîn oder hülzîn oder beinîn oder rostic, sî daz mir
whether iron or wooden or of-bone or rusty be that to-me
daz wazzer würde.’ Alsô ist den gar unreht, die sich
the water became So is to-those wholly wrong who themselves
dâ mite bewerrent, wâ durch got sîniu werc würket in
there with trouble where through God his works works in
dir: weder ez sî nâtûre oder gnâde, dâ mite lâz in würken
thee whether it be nature or grace there with let him work
und habe alleine fride. Wan als vil bist dû in gote, als
and have alone peace For as much art thou in God as
vil dû bist in fride, und als vil ûz got, als vil dû
much thou art in peace and as much out-of God as much thou
bist ûz fride. Ist iht einz in gote, daz selbe hât fride:
art out-of peace (If)-is anything one in God that same has peace
als vil in gote, als vil in fride. Dar an kenne die wîle,
as much in God as much in peace There on know the while
wie vil dû in got bist, und ob ez anders ist, wâ dû
how much thou in God art and whether it otherwise is where thou
fride und unfride hâst. Wan wâ dû unfride hâst, in dem
peace and unpeace hast For where thou unpeace hast in that
muoz dir von nôt unfride sîn, wan unfride kumt von
must to-thee of necessity unpeace be for unpeace comes from
der crêatûre unde niht von gote. Ouch ist niht in gote,
the creature and not from God Also is nothing in God

daz ze fürhtende sî: allez daz in got ist daz ist alleine ze
that to fear be all that in God is that is alone to
minnende. Alsô enist niht in im, daz ze trûrende sî. Der
love So is nothing in him that to mourn be He-who
allen sînen willen hât unde sînen wunsch, der hât fride.
all his will has and his wish he has peace
Daz hât nieman dan des wille unde gotes wille alzemâle
That has no-one but whose will and God's will wholly
ein ist. Die einunge geb uns got. Âmen.
one is That union give us God Amen

MEISTER ECKHART

Daz buoch der götlîchen trœstunge

The Book of Divine Consolation

1

PART ONE

From Paul's God of all comfort, Eckhart names three afflictions, loss of outward goods, of friends, and in oneself, and promises truths, about thirty teachings, and wise people's examples. The good man is the unmade, born son of goodness, as the Son is of the Father, and so the just of justice; whoever is born of God alone can no more be grieved than God, and rejoices more in the work of justice than an angel in its being. If harm saddens him, God's justice allowed it, and he should rejoice. All sorrow comes from loving what loss has taken: whoever seeks comfort in creatures finds none, and whoever loves God alone in them finds it everywhere.

Benedictus deus et pater domini nostri Jesu Kristi etc. (2.
Blessed God and father of-the-lord our Jesus Christ etc. 2
Cor. I, 2.). Der edel lêrer sanctus Paulus der sprichet disiu
Cor. I 2 The noble teacher saint Paul he says these
wort alsô in sîner epistel 'gesegenet sî got unde der vater
words thus in his epistle blessed be God and the father
unsers herren Jêsû Kristî, ein vater der barmherzikeit unt got
of-our lord Jesus Christ a father of-the mercy and God
alles trôstes, der uns trœstet in allem unserm betrüepnüsse.'
of-all comfort who us comforts in all our affliction
Nû ist drîerleie betrüepnüsse, daz den menschen anvallet
Now is threefold affliction that the man assails
unde trenget in disem ellende. Einez ist an dem schaden
and presses in this exile One is in the loss
ûzerlîches guotes. Daz ander ist an sînen liebsten friunden.
of-outward goods The second is in his dearest friends
Daz dritte ist an im selben an smâcheit, an ungemach
The third is in him self in contempt in discomfort
und an smerzen des lîbes und an leit des herzen.
and in pains of-the body and in sorrow of-the heart

Her umbe sô hân ich willen an disem buoche ze lêren
Here for so have I will in this book to teach
etlîche lêre, in der sich der mensche trœsten mag in
some teaching in which himself the man comfort may in
allem sînem ungemache, betrüepnüsse unde leide. Unde hât
all his discomfort affliction and sorrow And has
man etlîche wârheit dar ûz unde dâ von genomen, daz den
one some truth there out and there from taken that the
menschen billîchen unde genzelîchen getrœsten mag in allem
man rightly and wholly comfort may in all
sînem leide, dar nâch vindet man bî drîzic sachen unt lêre,
his sorrow there after finds one about thirty matters and teaching
in der ieclîcher alleine sich der mensche wol getrœsten
in which each alone himself the man well comfort
mac, unde dar nâch vindet man in dem dritten teile des
may and there after finds one in the third part of-the
buoches bilde unt lêre an worten unt werken, die wîse
book images and teaching in words and works which wise
liute hânt getân unde gesprochen, als sie wâren in leide.
people have done and spoken when they were in sorrow
Von dem êrsten sol man wizzen, daz der wîse unde wîsheit,
At the first shall one know that the wise and wisdom
wâr unt wârheit, guot unt güeti, gerehtekeit unde gereht
true and truth good and goodness justice and just
sich einander an sehent. Diu güeti ist niht gemachet
themselves each-other on look The goodness is not made
noch geschaffen noch geboren: si ist gebernde unt gebirt
nor created nor born she is bearing and bears
den guoten, unde der guote, alsô verre als er guot ist, ist
the good and the good as far as he good is is
ungemachet, ungeschaffen, mêr: unt doch geboren kint unde
unmade uncreated but and yet born child and

sun der güeti. Diu güeti gebirt sich und allez, daz si ist, in
son of-the goodness The goodness bears herself and all that she is in
dem guoten wesenne. Wizzen, minnen unt würken giuzet si
the good being Knowing loving and working pours she
alzemâle in den guoten, unt der guote nimet allez sîn wesen,
wholly into the good and the good takes all his being
wizzen, minnen unde würken von dem innigôsten der güeti
knowing loving and working from the innermost of-the goodness
unt von ir alleine. Guot unt güeti sint niht mê denne ein
and from her alone Good and goodness are not more than one
güeti alleine, sunder geborn gebernde unt doch geboren kint
goodness alone but born bearing and yet born child
der güeti unde geboren werden. In dem guoten ist alleine
of-the goodness and born becoming In the good is alone
ein wesen, ein leben. Allez, daz des guoten ist, daz nimet
one being one life All that of-the good is that takes
er beidiu von der güeti unt in der güeti. Unde dâ von ist
he both from the goodness and in the goodness And there from is
unt lebet unt wonet er unde dâ bekennet er sich selben
and lives and dwells he and there knows he him self
unt allez, daz er bekennet unde minnet, allez daz minnet
and all that he knows and loves all that loves
unde würket er mit der güeti, in der güeti unt diu güeti
and works he with the goodness in the goodness and the goodness
mit ime unt in ime aher werke, nâch dem als beschriben
with him and in him all works after that as written
stêt. Unde sprichet der sun ‘der vater in mir inne blîbende
stands And says the son the father in me within remaining
unt wonende würket diu werc. Der vater würket biz nû unt
and dwelling works the works The father works until now and

ich würke. Allez, daz des vaters ist, daz ist ist mîn; allez,
I work All that of-the father is that is is mine all
daz mîn ist, daz ist mînes vaters: sîn geben ist mîn nemen.'
that mine is that is my father's his giving is my taking
Doch sol man wizzen, daz der name oder daz wort besliuzet
Yet shall one know that the name or the word encloses
in ime niht anders weder minre noch mê denne blôz
in it nothing else neither less nor more than bare
unde lûter güeti. Doch gît ez, sô wir sprechen guot, unt
and pure goodness Yet gives it when we say good and
vernimet man, daz sîn güeti ist ime gegeben înfliezende
understands one that his goodness is to-him given in-flowing
unde geboren von der ungeboren güeti, und her umbe
and born from the unborn goodness and here for
sprichet daz êwangelium 'als' der vater hât daz leben in
says the gospel as the father has the life in
im selben, alsô hât er gegeben dem sune, daz er habe daz
him self so has he given to-the son that he have the
selbe leben ouch in im selbe.' Er sprichet: in ime selber,
same life also in him self He says in him self
niht von ime selben, wan der vater hât ez ime gegeben.
not from him self for the father has it to-him given
Allez, daz ich nû hân gesprochen von dem guoten unde
All that I now have spoken of the good and
von der güeti, daz ist ouch gelîch wâr von dem wâren unt
of the goodness that is also equally true of the true and
von der wârheit, von dem gerehten unt von gerehtikeit, von
of the truth of the just and of justice of
dem wîsen unde von wîsheit, von gotes sune unde gote dem
the wise and of wisdom of God's son and God the
vater, von allem dem, daz von gote geboren ist unt daz
father of all that which from God born is and which

niht enhât keinen vater ûf ertrîche, in daz sich ouch niht
not has any father on earth into which itself also not
gebirt allez, daz geschaffen ist. Allez, daz got niht enist, in
bears all that created is All that God not is in
dem ouch kein bilde niht enist denne got blôz lûter alleine.
which also no image at-all is but God bare pure alone
Wan alsô sô sprichet ouch sant Johannes in sînem êwangeliô,
For so so says also saint John in his gospel
daz allen den ist gegeben maht unde mügent gotes süne
that to-all those is given might and may God's sons
werden, die niht von bluote noch von dem willen des
become who not of blood nor of the will of-the
fleisches noch von mannes willen, sunder von gote und ûz
flesh nor of man's will but of God and out-of
gote alleine geboren sint. Bî dem bluote meinet er allez, daz
God alone born are By the blood means he all that
an dem menschen niht undertênic ist des menschen willen.
in the man not subject is to-the man's will
Bî des fleisches willen meinet er allez, daz in dem menschen
By the flesh's will means he all that in the man
sînem willen undertênic ist unt doch mit einem widerstrîte
to-his will subject is and yet with a resistance
unde neigunge nâch des fleisches begerunge, unt ist gemeine
and inclination after the flesh's desire and is common
der sêle unt dem lîbe und enist niht eigenlîchen in der
to-the soul and to-the body and is not properly in the
sêle alleine; unt dâ von werdent die krefte müede unt
soul alone and there from become the powers weary and
kranc. Bî dem willen des mannes meinet sant Johannes
sick By the will of-the man means saint John
die hœhsten krefte der sêle der nâtûre, unt ir werc ist
the highest powers of-the soul whose nature and their work is

unvermischet mit dem fleische unt stât in der sêle lûterkeit
unmixed with the flesh and stands in the soul's purity
abe gescheiden von zît unde von stat unde von allem dem,
off separated from time and from place and from all that
daz zuo zît unt stat keine zuoversiht hât oder smac, daz
which to time and place no regard has or taste which
mit nihte niht gemein hât, in dem der mensche nâch
in no-way anything in-common has in which the man after
gote gebildet ist, an dem der mensche gotes geslehte ist
God formed is in which the man God's kin is
unde gotes sippe. Unt doch, wan sie got selben niht ensint
and God's kindred And yet since they God self not are
unt in der sêle unt mit der sêle geschaffen sint, sô muoz si
and in the soul and with the soul created are so must she
ir selbes entbildet werden und in gote alleine überbildet,
of-her self unformed become and into God alone over-formed
in gote unt ûz gote geboren werden, daz got alleine vater
in God and out-of God born become that God alone father
sî. Wan alsô sint sie ouch süne unt gotes eingeboren süne.
be For so are they also sons and God's only-begotten sons
Wan alles des bin ich sun, daz mich nâch ime unt in sich
For of-all that am I son which me after him and into itself
gelîche bildet unde gebirt. Ein sôgetâner mensche ist gotes sun,
alike forms and bears A such man is God's son
guot der güeti sun, gereht sun der gerehtikeit. Alsô verre als er
good the goodness's son just son of-the justice As far as he
alleine sun ist, sô ist er ungeboren gebernde, unt er geboren sun
alone son is so is he unborn bearing and he born son
hât daz selbe wesen, daz diu gerehtikeit hât, und ist unt tritet
has the same being that the justice has and is and steps
in alle die eigenschaft der gerehtikeit unde wârheit. Ûz aller
into all the properties of-the justice and truth Out-of all

dirre lêre, diu in dem heiligen êwangeliô beschriben ist unde
this teaching which in the holy gospel written is and
sicherlîchen bekant, in dem nâtûrlichen liehte der vernünftigen
surely known in the natural light of-the rational
sêle vindet der mensche gewâren trôst alles sînes leides.
soul finds the man true comfort of-all his sorrow
Sant Augustînus sprichet: got enist niht verre noch lange. Wilt
Saint Augustine says God is not far nor long (If)-wilt
dû, daz er dir niht verre noch lange sî, sô füege dich zuo
thou that he to-thee not far nor long be so join thee to
gote; wan dâ sint tûsent jâr als der tac, der hiute ist. Alsô
God for there are thousand years as the day which today is So
sprich ich: in gote ist niht trûrikeit noch leit noch ungemach.
say I in God is no sadness nor sorrow nor discomfort
Wiltû ledic sîn alles ungemaches unde leides, sô halte
(If)-wilt-thou free be of-all discomfort and sorrow so hold
dich unde kêre dich in got unt zuo gote alleine. Sicherlîchen,
thee and turn thee into God and to God alone Surely
allez leit daz kumet dâ von, daz dû dich niht enkêrest in
all sorrow that comes there from that thou thee not turnest into
got noch zuo gote alleine. Unde stüendist dû in gerehtikeit
God nor to God alone And should-stand thou in justice
gebildet alleine unt geboren, wêrlîchen, dich enmöhte alsô
formed alone and born truly thee could as
wênic iht leidic machen, als ouch diu gerehtikeit got selben.
little anything sorrowful make as also the justice God self
Salomôn sprichet ‘den gerehten betrüebet niht allez daz ime
Solomon says the just saddens not all that to-him
beschehen mac.’ Er sprichet niht: den gerehten menschen noch
happen may He says not the just man nor
den gerehten engel noch diz noch daz, swaz des gerehten
the just angel nor this nor that whatever of-the just

ihtes ist, sunder daz sîn gereht ist unde daz er gereht ist,
anything is but what his just is and that he just is
daz ist sun unde hât vater ûf ertrîche unde crêatûre und ist
that is son and has father on earth and creature and is
gemachet unde geschaffen; wan sîn vater ist crêatûre gemachet
made and created for his father is creature made
oder geschaffen, aber gereht lûter, wan daz niht geschaffen noch
or created but just pure for that not created nor
gemachet vater hât unt gerehtikeit got alleine ist. Dar umbe
made father has and justice God alone is There for
mac leit unt ungemach alsô wênig in in gevallen als in got.
may sorrow and discomfort as little into him fall as into God
Gerehtikeit mac in niht leidic gemachen, wan alliu fröude, liebi
Justice may him not sorrowful make for all joy love
unt wunne ist gerehtikeit, und ouch wan machôti gerehtikeit
and bliss is justice and also for should-make justice
den gerehten leidic, sô machete si sich selber leidic. Ungelîch
the just sorrowful so would-make she her self sorrowful Unlike
unt ungereht enmöhte niht machen noch ouch schaffen den
and unjust could not make nor also cause the
gerehten leidic, wan allez, daz geschaffen ist, daz ist verre
just sorrowful for all that created is that is far
under ime unt hât niht enkeinen îndruk noch înfluz in dem
under him and has not any impression nor inflow in the
gerehten noch gebirt sich niht in in, des vater got alleine ist.
just nor bears itself not in him whose father God alone is
Her umbe sol der mensche geflizzen sîn, daz er sich
Here for shall the man diligent be that he himself
entbilde sîn selbes unt aller crêatûre noch keinen vater wizze
unform of-his self and of-all creatures nor any father know
denne got alleine. Sô enmac in niht leidic machen noch
but God alone So may him not sorrowful make nor

betrüeben weder got noch crêatûre, weder geschaffenz noch
sadden neither God nor creature neither created nor
ungeschaffenz, und allez sîn wesen, leben, bekennen unde
uncreated and all his being life knowing and
minnen unde wizzen ist ûz got und in got unt got. Noch
loving and knowing is out-of God and in God and God Yet
ist ein anderz, daz man wizzen sol, daz ouch den menschen
is an other that one know shall that also the man
trœstet in allem sînem ungemache. Daz ist daz sicherlîchen,
comforts in all his discomfort That is that surely
daz der gereht unde guot mensche sich fröuwet ungelîche,
that the just and good man himself rejoices incomparably
jâ unt unsprechlîchen mê in dem werke der gerehtikeit,
yea and unspeakably more in the work of-the justice
denne er oder ouch der obreste engele wunne hât unt fröude
than he or also the highest angel bliss has and joy
in sînem nâtiurlîchem wesenne oder lebenne. Unt her umbe
in his natural being or life And here for
gâben die heiligen frœlîchen ir leben dur die gerehtikeit.
gave the saints joyfully their life for the justice
Nû sprich ich: sô dem guoten unde gerehten menschen
Now say I when to-the good and just man
schade beschiht ûzerlîchen, unt ist, daz er belîbet gelîches
harm happens outwardly and (if)-is that he remains equally
gemuot unt in friden sînes herzen unbeweget, sô ist wâr,
minded and in peace of-his heart unmoved so is true
daz ich gesprochen hân, daz den gerehten niht betrüebet
what I spoken have that the just nothing saddens
von allem dem, daz ime beschiht. Unt ist aber, daz er
of all that which to-him happens And (if)-is however that he
betrüebet wirt von dem ûzerlîchen schaden, wêrlîchen, sô ist
saddened becomes by the outward harm truly so is

gar billîchen unde gotes reht, daz got verhenget hêt, daz der
wholly right and God's justice that God allowed has that the
schade dem menschen ist beschehen, der dâ wolte und ouch
harm to-the man is happened who there would and also
wânde gereht sîn unt in noch sô kleiniu dinc betrüeben
supposed just be and him yet so small things sadden
mohten. Unt ist ez denne reht gotes, wêrlîchen, sô sol er
might And (if)-is it then right of-God truly so shall he
sich niht betrüeben, sunder er sol sich fröuwen vil mê
himself not sadden but he shall himself rejoice much more
denne sînes eigenen lebennes, des sich der mensche doch
than of-his own life of-which himself the man yet
mê fröuwet unt werder ist einem ieclîchen menschen denne
more rejoices and worthier is to-an every man than
alliu disiu welt; wan waz hilfet den menschen alliu diu welt,
all this world for what helps the man all the world
sô er niht mê enwêre? Daz dritte wort, daz man wizzen
when he not more were The third word that one know
mac unde sol, ist daz: in nâtiurlîcher wârheit ein einiger
may and shall is that in natural truth a single
brunne unde lebendiu âder aller güeti weslîcher wârheit unt
well and living vein of-all goodness essential truth and
ganzes trôstes ist got alleine, und allez, daz got niht enist,
whole comfort is God alone and all that God not is
hât in ime selbe nâtiurlîche bitterkeit und untrôst unt leit,
has in it self naturally bitterness and uncomfort and sorrow
unt leit nihtes niht zuo der güeti, diu von got ist und
and lays nothing at-all to the goodness which from God is and
got alleine ist, sunder si minret unde bedecket unt verbirget
God alone is but she lessens and covers and hides
die süezikeit unt die wunne unt den trôst, den got gît.
the sweetness and the bliss and the comfort which God gives

Nû spriche ich für baz, daz allez leit kumet von liebi
Now say I on further that all sorrow comes from love
des, daz mir schade hât benomen. Ist mir denne schade
of-that which from-me harm has taken (If)-is to-me then harm
ûzerlîcher dinge leit, daz ist ein wâr zeichen, daz ich minne
of-outward things sorrow that is a true sign that I love
ûzerlîchiu dinc unt minne wêrlîchen leit unt untrôst. Waz
outward things and love truly sorrow and discomfort What
wunders ist denne daz, daz ich leidic wirde, sô ich doch
wonder is then that that I sorrowful become since I yet
leit unt untrôst minne unt daz ouch mîn herze suochet unde
sorrow and discomfort love and that also my heart seeks and
mîn minne gît daz guot der crêatûre, daz gotes eigen ist?
my love gives the good to-the creature which God's own is
Ich kêre mich zuo der crêatûre, von der untrôst von nâtûre
I turn me to the creature from which discomfort by nature
kumet, unt kêre mich von dannen, von dem trôst unde fröude
comes and turn me from thence from which comfort and joy
von nâtûre kumet: waz wunders ist daz denne, daz ich leidic
by nature comes what wonder is that then that I sorrowful
unt trûric wirde unde bin? Wêrlîchen, unmüglich ist gote
and sad become and am Truly impossible is to-God
unt aller der welte, daz der mensche gewâren trôst vinde,
and to-all the world that the man true comfort find
der trôst suochet an den crêatûren. Der aber got minnôti
who comfort seeks in the creatures Who however God loved
alleine in der crêatûre unt die crêatûren in got alleine, der
alone in the creature and the creatures in God alone he
fünde gewâren unt rehten unde gelîchen trôst allenthalben.
would-find true and right and equal comfort everywhere

2

PART TWO

About thirty comforts follow. No harm is pure harm: whoever loses forty of a hundred marks should look at the sixty, and the sick should think of the poor. All sorrow comes from loving what passes. Seneca bids us take all things as if we had wished for them. As a vessel is emptied of water for wine, and the eye is bare of color to see all colors, so the soul bare of creatures is drawn up into God by likeness and love. All good is only lent us. Nothing can hinder virtue's inner work, like a stone's downward pull. God chastens the sons He loves and suffers with those who suffer for Him, so suffering turns sweet in Him. The good who suffer pay for no hidden sin.

Nû volgent her nâch von den stüken als bî drîzigen, der
Now follow here after of the pieces as about thirty of-which
dâ ieclîchez alleine billîchen trœsten sol den redelîchen
there each alone rightly comfort shall the rational
menschen an sînem leide. Daz ein ist: allez ungemach unt
man in his sorrow The one is all discomfort and
schade ist niht sunder gemach unde kein schade ist niht
harm is not without comfort and no harm is at-all
lûter schade, unt dar umbe sprichet sant Paulus, daz gotes
pure harm and there for says saint Paul that God's
triuwe unt sîn eigen weslîchiu güeti enlîdet des niht, daz
faithfulness and his own essential goodness suffers of-it not that
kein leit unde bekorunge unlîdelîchen unt ze überswenclîchen
any sorrow and temptation unbearable and too overwhelming
sî. Er gît unt machet alle zîte etwaz trôstes, dâ mit man
be He gives and makes all times some comfort there with one
sich behelfen mac; wan ez sprechent ouch die heiligen
himself help may for it say also the saints

unde die heidenschen meister, daz got unt nâtûre lîdet des
and the heathen masters that God and nature suffer of-it
niht, daz lûter bœs oder leit müge sîn noch gewesen.
not that pure evil or sorrow may be nor been
Nû setze ich, daz ein mensche hât hundert marc, der verliuret
Now set I that a man has hundred marks he loses
ez vierzic unt behaltet ime diu sehzic, wil der mensche
of-it forty and keeps to-him the sixty (if)-will the man
alle zît gedenken an die vierzic, die er hât verloren, sô belîbet
all time think on the forty which he has lost so remains
er ungetrôst unt riuwic. Wie möhte der iemer getrœstet sîn
he uncomforted and rueful How might he ever comforted be
unt âne leit, der sich kêret zuo dem schaden unt leit? unt
and without sorrow who himself turns to the harm and sorrow and
bildet daz in sich unt siht dar în unde sihet daz an mit
images that into himself and looks there in and looks that on with
leide unt sprichet mit sînem schaden unt der schade kôset
sorrow and speaks with his harm and the harm talks
wider in unde sihet daz an von antlüte ze antlüte? Unt
back to-him and looks that on from face to face And
wêri aber, daz er sich kêrti ûf die sehzic marc, die er noch
were however that he himself turned upon the sixty marks which he still
hât, unt kêrti den rugge den vierzigen, die verloren sint, unt
has and turned the back to-the forty which lost are and
widerbildeti sich in die sehzic unt sêhi die an unt kôseti
re-imaged himself into the sixty and saw them on and talked
mit in, sô würde er sicherlîchen getrœstet. Daz iht ist
with them so would-become he surely comforted What something is
unt guot ist daz mac trœsten, daz aber niht ist noch niht
and good is that may comfort what however not is nor at-all

guot ist unde daz mîn niht ist unt mir verloren ist, daz
good is and what mine not is and to-me lost is that
muoz von nôt leit und untrôst geben unde betrüeptnüs.
must of necessity sorrow and uncomfort give and affliction
Dar umbe sprichet Salomôn 'in den tagen der leide unde der
There for says Solomon in the days of-the sorrow and of-the
betrüebede vergiz niht der tage der güeti unt der lüsten.'
affliction forget not the days of-the goodness and of-the delights
Daz ist alsô vil gesprochen: sô dû bist in leide unt in
That is as much spoken when thou art in sorrow and in
ungemache, sô gedenke des guoten unt des gemaches, daz dû
discomfort so think of-the good and of-the comfort that thou
noch vor dir hâst, unt behalt ez dir zuo dînem nutze. Und
still before thee hast and keep it to-thee to thy use And
ouch sol daz den menschen trœsten, ob er gedenken wil, wie
also shall that the man comfort if he think will how
vil tûsent der sint unt hêtin sie sehzic marc, die dû noch
many thousand of-them are and had they sixty marks which thou still
hâst, sie diuhti, daz sie herren unde frouwen wêrin unde daz
hast them would-seem that they lords and ladies were and that
sie rîche wêrin, unt wêrin von herzen frô unt vil dankbêr gote.
they rich were and were from heart glad and very thankful to-God
Noch ist aber ein anderz, daz den menschen trœsten sol.
Still is however an other that the man comfort shall
Ist er siech und in grôzem smerzen sînes lîbes, doch hât er
(If)-is he sick and in great pain of-his body yet has he
datz hûse sîn nôtdurft an spîse und an tranke unt an rât
at home his need in food and in drink and in provision
der erzenîen unt an dem dienste sînes gesindes, an klage, an
of-the medicines and in the service of-his household in lament in
bîwesen sîner friunde. Wie sol der tuon? Wie tuont arme liute,
presence of-his friends How shall he do How do poor people

die daz selbe unt noch mêr grœzer ungemach hânt unt habent
who the same and still more greater discomfort have and have
nieman, der in kaltez wazzer gebe? Sie müezent daz blôze brôt
no-one who them cold water give They must the bare bread
suochen in regen, in snê, in grôzer kelti von hûs ze hûs. Dar
seek in rain in snow in great cold from house to house There
umbe unde wilt dû getrœstet werden, sô vergiz der, den
for and (if)-wilt thou comforted become so forget those to-whom
dâ baz ist, unt gedenke allez an die, den dâ wirser ist.
there better is and think always on those to-whom there worse is
Für baz sô spriche ich: allez leit kumet von liebi unt
Further more so say I all sorrow comes from liking and
minne; wan minne unt liebi ist leides anevanc unt ûzganc.
love for love and liking is of-sorrow beginning and outgoing
Dar umbe hân ich leit umbe zerganclîchiu dinc, sô hân
There for (if)-have I sorrow for transitory things so have
ich unt hete noch liep unt minne der zerganclîcher dinge
I and had still dear and love of-the transitory things
unde hâte got niht von allem mînem herzen liep unt minne
and had God not from all my heart dear and love
noch niht, daz got wil von mir hân unt sich mit geminnet
still not what God will from me have and himself with loved
wizzen. Waz wunders ist denne daz, daz got verhenget, daz
know What wonder is then that that God allows that
ich gar billîchen schaden unt leit lîde? Sant Augustînus
I wholly rightly harm and sorrow suffer Saint Augustine
sprichet: herre, ich enwolte dich niht verlieren, ich wolte
says lord I would thee not lose I would
aber mit dir besitzen die crêatûren; daz was von mîner
however with thee possess the creatures that was from my
gîtikeit wegen, unt dar umbe verlôs ich dich: wan dir ist
greed's sake and there for lost I thee for to-thee is

unmêre, daz man mit dir dich wârheit die valschen crêatûren
displeasing that one with thee thee truth the false creatures
besitze. Er sprichet ouch anderswâ, daz der valsche gîtic ist.
possess He says also elsewhere that the false greedy is
Den an got alleine niht benüeget, wie möhte den benüegen
Whom in God alone not suffices how might him suffice
gotes gâbe an den crêatûren, den an got unt mit gote
God's gift in the creatures whom in God and with God
niht benüeget? Einen guoten menschen sol niht benüegen
not suffices A good man shall not suffice
noch trœsten, sunder ime sol ein pîne sîn allez, daz gote
nor comfort but to-him shall a pain be all that to-God
frömde unt ungelîch ist; er sol alle zît sprechen 'herre got
alien and unlike is he shall all time speak lord God
unt mîn trôst, unde wîsest dû mich ûf iht denne zuo
and my comfort and (if)-directest thou me to anything than to
dir, sô gip mir einen andern dich.' Dô unser herre gelopte
thee so give me an other thee When our lord promised
herren Moisen allez guot unde sante in in daz heilige lant,
lord Moses all good and sent him into the holy land
daz dâ bezeichenet himelrîche, dô seite Moises 'ô herre,
which there signifies heaven then said Moses o lord
niht sende mich, dû wellest denne selber mite komen.'
not send me unless-thou will then self with come
Alliu neigunge, lust und minne kumet von dem, daz ime
All inclination delight and love comes from that which to-it
gelîch ist; wan alliu dinc neigent unde minnent sich selben
like is for all things incline and love them selves
gelîchelîche. Der reine mensche minnet alle reinikeit, der
equally The pure man loves all purity the
gerehte minnet unt neiget zuo der gerehtikeit, der munt der
just loves and inclines to the justice the mouth of-the

menschen sprichet von dem, daz ime innic ist. Alsô sprichet
men speaks of that which to-him inward is So says
unser herre, daz der munt sprichet von völli des herzen. unde
our lord that the mouth speaks from fullness of-the heart and
Salomôn sprichet, daz des menschen arbeit ist ime in dem
Solomon says that the man's toil is to-him in the
munde. Dar umbe ist daz ein wârez zeichen, daz niht got ist
mouth There for is that a true sign that not God is
in des menschen herzen, sunder diu tœtlîchiu unt zîtlîchiu
in the man's heart but the mortal and temporal
crêatûre, daz noch ûzer neigunge unt trôst suochet unt vindet.
creature that still outer inclination and comfort seeks and finds
Unt dar umbe sol sich ein guoter mensche vil sêre schamen
And there for shall himself a good man very sorely shame
vor gote unt in ime selben, daz er noch gewar wirt, daz got
before God and in him self that he still aware becomes that God
niht in ime ist unt daz got der vater niht in ime würket,
not in him is and that God the father not in him works
sunder diu leidic crêatûre noch in ime lebet unt würket. Dar
but the loathsome creature still in him lives and works There
umbe sprichet Dâvît in dem salter unt elaget ez 'treheren wâren
for says David in the psalter and laments it tears were
mîn trôst tag unt naht, alle die wîle, daz man sprechen mohte:
my comfort day and night all the while that one say might
wâ ist dîn got?' wan neigunge ûf ûzerheit unt an untrôste
where is thy God for inclination to outwardness and in uncomfort
lust unt trôst vinden unt von dem mit lust geren unde vil
delight and comfort find and of that with delight desire and much
reden, daz ist ein wârez zeichen, daz got in mich niht schînet,
speak that is a true sign that God into me not shines
niht würket. Noch mê solt er sich schamen vor guoten
not works Still more should he himself shame before good

liuten, daz sie des an ime gewar würdin. Ein guot mensche
people that they of-it in him aware became A good man
sol niemer schaden geclagen noch leit, er sol daz alleine
shall never harm lament nor sorrow he shall that alone
clagen, daz er der clage unt des leides in ime gewar wirt.
lament that he of-the lament and of-the sorrow in him aware becomes
Die meister sprechent, daz undenen an dem himele ist fiur,
The masters say that below at the heaven is fire
wît unt vil unt sunder mitel, kreftic in sîner hitze, unt doch
wide and much and without means strong in its heat and yet
wirt der himel von ime niht berüeret alzemâle. Nû sprichet ein
becomes the heaven by it not touched at-all Now says an
andriu schrift, daz daz niderôste der sêle ist edeler denne des
other scripture that the lowest of-the soul is nobler than the
himels hœhste. Wie mac denne der mensche sich vermezzen,
heaven's highest How may then the man himself presume
daz er ein himelscher mensche sî unt daz sîn herze in dem
that he a heavenly man be and that his heart in the
himele sîe, der noch berüeret wirt unt leidic von sô cleinen
heaven be who still touched becomes and sorrowful by so small
dingen? Nû sprich ich ein anderz. Ein guot mensche mac
things Now say I an other A good man may
niht sîn, der dâ niht wil, daz got sunderlîchen wil; wan ime
not be who there not wills what God specially wills for to-him
gelîche ist, daz got ihtes welle denne guot; und sunderlîchen
alike is that God anything will but good and specially
in dem und von dem, daz ez got wil, sô wirt ez unt ist
in that and from that that it God wills so becomes it and is
von nôt guot unt ouch daz beste, unt dar umbe lêrte unser
of necessity good and also the best and there for taught our
herre die apostelen unt uns in in unt wir biten alle tage,
lord the apostles and us in them and we pray all days

daz geschehe gotes wille, unt doch, wenne gotes wille kumet
that happen God's will and yet when God's will comes
unt gewirdet, sô clagen wir unde sîn trûrig unt betrüebet.
and becomes so lament we and are sad and troubled
Senecâ ein heidenscher meister frâget: waz ist der beste trôst in
Seneca a heathen master asks what is the best comfort in
lîdenne unt in ungemach, unt sprichet: daz ist, daz der mensche
suffering and in discomfort and says that is that the man
alliu dinc neme, als ob er des gewünschet unde gebeten habe,
all things take as if he it wished and prayed have
ob dû hêtist gewünschet unt ouch bêtist, daz alliu dinc von
if thou hadst wished and also prayedst that all things by
gotes willen beschehen, unt ob ez beschiht, daz enzürne niht. Ez
God's will happen and if it happens that rage not It
sprichet ein heidenscher meister: herzoge unt obrôster vater unt
says a heathen master leader and highest father and
ein einiger herre des hôhen himeles, allez, daz dû wilt, des
a single lord of-the high heaven all that thou wilt of-that
bin ich bereit: gip mir willen unt den willen nâch dîme willen.'
am I ready give me will and the will after thy will
Ein guoter mensche sol des gote wol getrûwen, gelouben unt
A good man shall of-it God well trust believe and
ouch gewis sîn unt got sô guoten wizzen, daz ez unmüglîchen
also sure be and God so good know that it impossible
gote sî und sîner güeti unt minne, daz er möhti lîden, daz
to-God be and to-his goodness and love that he could suffer that
dem menschen kein lîden oder leit zuo kome, eintweders
to-the man any suffering or sorrow to come either
er wölte dem menschen vil grœzer leit dâ mite benemen
he would from-the man much greater sorrow there with take
oder ouch ûf ertrîche grœzlîcher trœsten oder etwaz vil
or also on earth more-greatly comfort or something much

bezzers dâ von unt dar ûz machen unt dâ gotes êre
better there from and there out make and there God's honor
mêr unt grœzlîcher an lige. Unt doch, wie daz sî in dem
more and more-greatly on lay And yet however that be in that
alleine, daz ez gotes wille ist, daz ez beschehe, sô sol des
alone that it God's will is that it happen so shall the
guoten menschen wille alsô in gotes unt mit gotes willen ein
good man's will so in God's and with God's will one
unt geeiniget sîn, daz der mensche daz selbe mit gote welle,
and united be that the man the same with God will
nochdenne ez sîn schade unt ouch sîn verdüemnüsse wêre.
though it his harm and also his damnation were
Dar umbe wünschet sant Paulus, daz er von gote gesunderet
There for wishes saint Paul that he from God separated
wêre dur got unt dur gotes willen unt dur gotes êre.
were for God and for God's will and for God's honor
Ein reht volkomen mensche sol sich selben sô tôt gewenet
A right perfect man shall him self so dead accustomed
sîn unt sich selben entbildet in gote unt in gotes willen
be and him self unformed in God and into God's will
sô überbildet, daz doch alle sîn sêlikeit ist, sich selben unt
so over-formed that yet all his blessedness is him self and
allez umbe niht wizze unt got alleine wizze, niht wellen
all for nothing know and God alone know not will
noch ouch willen wizze denne gotes wellen unt willen wizze,
nor also will know but God's willing and will know
alsô got bekennen, als got niht bekennen. Als sant Paulus
so God to-know as God not to-know As saint Paul
sprichet 'got bekennet allez daz er bekennet unde wil minnen
says God knows all that he knows and will love

allez daz er minnet unde wil in sich selben sîn selbes willen.
all that he loves and will in him self his self's will
Unser herre sprichet, daz êwic leben ist bekennen alleine.
Our lord says that eternal life is knowing alone
Dar umbe sprechent die meister, daz die sêligen in himelrîche
There for say the masters that the blessed in heaven
die crêatûren bekennent blôz aller bilde der crêatûre, die sie
the creatures know bare of-all images of-the creature which they
bekennent in dem einigen bilde, daz got ist unt dâ sich
know in the single image that God is and where him
selben unt alliu dinc got weiz unt minnet unde wil unt dâ
self and all things God knows and loves and wills and there
lêret uns beten unde begeren got selben. Dâ wir sprechen:
teaches us to-pray and desire God self Where we say
vater unser, der dâ ist in den himelen, geheiliget werde
father our who there art in the heavens hallowed become
dîn name, daz ist dich bekennen blôz alleine. Zuo kome dîn
thy name that is thee to-know bare alone To come thy
rîche: daz ich nihtes niht habe, daz ich rîche ahte unt wizze
kingdom that I nothing at-all have that I rich esteem and know
denne dich rîche. Dâ von sprichet daz êwangelium 'sêlic
but thee rich There from says the gospel blessed
sint die armen des geistes', daz ist des willen arm. Unde
are the poor of-the spirit that is of-the will poor And
wir biten got, daz sîn wille werde in der erde, daz ist in
we pray God that his will become in the earth that is in
uns, als in dem himele, daz ist in gote selbe. Ein sôgetâner
us as in the heaven that is in God self A such
mensche ist sô ein unt einwillic mit gote, daz er allez daz
man is so one and one-willed with God that he all that
wil, daz got wil, unt in der wîse, sô ez got wil. Unt dar
wills which God wills and in the manner as it God wills And there

umbe, wan got denne etlîche wîse wil, daz ich ouch sünde
for since God then in-some manner wills that I also sin
hân getân, sô wölti ich niht, daz ich sie niht hêti getân;
have done so would I not that I them not had done
wan sô wirt gotes wille in der erden, daz ist in missetât,
for so becomes God's will in the earth that is in misdeed
als in dem himele, daz ist in woltuonne. Sô wil der mensche
as in the heaven that is in well-doing So will the man
gotes dur got enbern unt von got dur got gesunderet sîn,
of-God for God lack and from God for God separated be
unt daz ist alleine rehtiu riuwe mîner sünde, sô ist mir
and that is alone right contrition of-my sin so is to-me
sünde leit sunder leit. Alsô hât got leit aller bôsheit
sin sorrow without sorrow So has God sorrow of-all wickedness
sunder leit. Leit unt mîn meistez leit hân ich umbe
without sorrow Sorrow and my greatest sorrow have I for
sünde, wan ich niht sünde tête umb allez, daz geschaffen
sin for I not sin would-do for all that created
ist, ob joch tûsent welte êweclîchen soltin sîn; doch sunder
is if even thousand worlds eternally should be yet without
leit, unt ich nême unde schüefe diu leit in gotes willen
sorrow and I take and create the sorrow in God's will
unt ûz gotes willen. Ein sôgetân leit ist alleine volkomen
and out-of God's will A such sorrow is alone perfect
leit, wan ez kumet unt urspringet von lûterr minne, der
sorrow for it comes and springs from pure love of-the
lûtersten güeti unt fröude gotes. Sô wirt wâr unt wirt
purest goodness and joy of-God So becomes true and becomes
man gewar, daz ich in disem büechlî gesprochen hân, daz
one aware what I in this little-book spoken have that

der guot mensche, als verre er guot ist, tritet in alle die
the good man as far he good is steps into all the
eigenschaft der güeti selbe, daz got in im selber ist.
property of-the goodness self which God in him self is
Nû merke, waz wunders unde waz lebennes hât der mensche
Now mark what wonder and what life has the man
ûf der erden als in dem himele in gote selben! ime dienet
on the earth as in the heaven in God self to-him serves
ungemach in gemach, unt leit gelîch als liep. Unt dâ bî
discomfort in comfort and sorrow alike as joy And there by
merke doch in dem selben sunderlîchen trôst. Wanne hân ich
mark yet in the same special comfort When have I
die genâde unt die güeti, von der ich nû geseit hân, sô bin
the grace and the goodness of which I now said have so am
ich alle zît unt an allen dingen gelîche unt ouch genzeclîchen
I all time and in all things alike and also wholly
getrœstet unde frô, unde hân ich des niht, sô sol ich sîn
comforted and glad and (if)-have I it not so shall I of-it
onberen dur got unt dur gotes willen. Wil got geben des
forgo for God and for God's will (If)-will God give what
ich enbere dar an, sô hân ich ez in gotes namen unt bin ouch
I forgo there in so have I it in God's name and am also
in wunne. Wil got niht geben, sô nime unt enbir in dem
in bliss (If)-will God not give so take and forgo in the
selben willen gotes, als er enwil niht, unt alsô nime ich enbern
same will of-God as he will not and so take I forgoing
unde niht nemen. Wes gebristet mir denne? Sicherlîchen,
and not taking Of-what lacks to-me then Surely
eigenlîcher nimet man got enberende denne nemende; wan
more-properly takes one God forgoing than taking for
sô der mensche nimet, sô hât diu gâbe in ir selben, war
when the man takes so has the gift in her self where

umbe der mensche frô sî unde getrœstet. Sô man aber
fore the man glad be and comforted When one however
niht nimet, sô hât man niht, sô vindet noch weiz man niht,
not takes so has one nothing so finds nor knows one nothing
des man sich fröuwe, denne got unt gotes willen alleine.
of-which one oneself rejoice but God and God's will alone
Ouch ist daz aber ein ander trôst, unt hât der mensche
Also is that however an other comfort and (if)-has the man
verloren ûzerlîchez guot, sîne friunde, sîne mâgen oder sîn
lost outward good his friends his kinsmen or his
ouge oder waz daz ist, sô sol er des gewis sîn, ob er daz
eye or whatever that is so shall he of-it sure be if he that
lîdet dur got unde gotes willen güetlîche, sô hât er allez daz
suffers for God and God's will kindly so has he all that
vor gote zuo dem minsten, dar umbe er daz niht lîden wölte.
before God at the least where for he that not suffer would
Ein mensche verliuret ein ouge: wölte er nû des ougen niht
A man loses an eye would he now the eye not
enbern umbe tûsent marc oder mê, sô hât er vor gote unt
forgo for thousand marks or more so has he before God and
in gote sich behalten sicherlîchen allez daz, dar umbe er den
in God himself kept surely all that where for he the
schaden oder daz leit niht lîden wölte; unt daz meinet vil
harm or the sorrow not suffer would and that means very
lîhte, daz unser herre sprichet 'ez ist bezzer, daz dû komest in
likely what our lord says it is better that thou comest into
daz êwig lebenne mit einem ougen, denne mit zweien ougen
the eternal life with one eye than with two eyes
verloren werden.' Unt daz meinet ouch vil lîhte, daz got sprach
lost become And that means also very likely what God spoke

‘wer lâzet vater unt muoter, swester oder bruoder oder waz
who leaves father and mother sister or brother or whatever
daz ist, der sol wider nemen hundertvalt und êwic leben.’
that is he shall back take hundredfold and eternal life
Noch sol man wizzen, daz tugende haben unt lîden wellen
Still shall one know that virtues to-have and suffer to-will
gerne unt gedulteclîchen hât ein wîti, als wir ouch sehen
gladly and patiently has a breadth as we also see
in der nâtûre, daz ein mensche schœner unt künsterîcher
in the nature that a man fairer and more-skilled
ist denne der ander. Alsô sprich ich ouch, daz ein guot
is than the other So say I also that a good
mensche wol mac ein guot mensche sîn unt doch berüeret
man well may a good man be and yet touched
werden unde wanken von nâtiurlîcher liebi zuo vater unt
become and waver from natural love to father and
muoter, minre ald mê, unt doch niht vellic werden von gote
mother less or more and yet not fallen become from God
noch von güeti, unt doch nâch dem ist er guot unt bezzer,
nor from goodness and yet after that is he good and better
dar nâch er minre unt mê getrœstet unt berüeret wirt
there after he less and more comforted and touched becomes
unt gewar wirt nâtiurlîcher minne unde neigunge zuo vater
and aware becomes of-natural love and inclination to father
unt muoter, zuo swester unt bruoder unt zuo ime selben.
and mother to sister and brother and to him self
Nochdenne, als ich dâ vor geseit hân, könde ein mensche
Nonetheless as I there before said have could a man
daz selbe nemen in gotes willen als verre als gotes wille ist,
the same take in God's will as far as God's will is
daz menschlich nâtûre den gebresten habe, sunderlîchen von
that human nature the failing have especially from

gotes gerehtikeit von des êrsten menschen sünde, unt ouch,
God's justice from the first man's sin and also
ob daz niht enwêre, er wölte des gerne enberen in gotes
if that not were he would of-it gladly forgo in God's
willen, sô wêre im gar sêre rehte unt würde sicherlîche
will so were to-him very greatly right and would-become surely
getrœstet in leide. Daz meinet, daz sant Johannes sprichet,
comforted in sorrow That means what saint John says
daz daz gewâre lieht liuhtet in vinsternüsse, unt sant Paulus
that the true light shines in darkness and saint Paul
sprichet, daz die tugende werdent volbrâht in krankeit.
says that the virtues become accomplished in weakness
Unt möhte der diep wêrlîchen, genzlîchen unt lûterlîchen,
And could the thief truly wholly and purely
willeclîchen unt frœlîchen den tôt lîden von minne der
willingly and joyfully the death suffer from love of-the
götlîchen gerehtikeit, in der unt nâch dem daz got wil unt
divine justice in which and after that that God wills and
sîn gerehtikeit, daz der übeltêtic getœtet werde, sicherlîchen,
his justice that the evildoer killed become surely
er würde behalten unt belibe sêlic, wan gotes wille ist
he would-become saved and remained blessed for God's will is
unser heil unde sêlikeit. Aber ein ander trôst ist: man
our salvation and blessedness But an other comfort is one
vindet vil lîhte nieman, der iht ieman sô liep habe lebende,
finds very likely no-one who at-all anyone so dear has living
daz er niht gerne wölte enbern eines ougen unt blint sîn
that he not gladly would forgo an eye and blind be
ein jâr, ob er dar nâch sîn ouge denne wider hêti unt sînen
a year if he there after his eye then back had and his
friunt alsô möhte von dem tôde erlœsen. Wölte denne ein
friend so might from the death redeem Would then a

mensche ein jâr enberen sînes ougen dur einen menschen
man a year forgo of-his eye for one man
und in alsô erlœsen von dem tôde, der doch in kurzen jâren
and him so redeem from the death who yet in short years
sterben muoz, sô sol er gar billîchen gerne enberen zweinzic
die must so shall he very rightly gladly forgo twenty
oder drîzic jâr, diu er vil lîhte leben möhte. Der mensche
or thirty years which he very likely live might The man
enbere sînes ougen, umbe daz er sich selben êweclîchen
forgo of-his eye for that he him self eternally
sêlic mache unt êweclîchen got sehende werde in sînem
blessed make and eternally God seeing become in his
götlîchen liehte, unt in gote sich selben und alle crêatûren.
divine light and in God him self and all creatures
Unt aber sô ist ein ander trôst. Ein guot mensche als verre
And however so is an other comfort A good man as far
sô er guot ist unt ûz güeti alleine geborn unt ein bilde
as he good is and out-of goodness alone born and an image
der güeti, sô ist ime allez daz unmêre unt ein bitterkeit unt
of-the goodness so is to-him all that displeasing and a bitterness and
schade allez daz geschaffen ist. Unt daz ist ouch dar umbe: daz
harm all that created is And that is also there for that
verlieren ist lôs werden unt verlieren leit und ungemach unt
losing is free become and losing sorrow and discomfort and
schaden wêrlîchen bekant. In der wârheit, leit verlieren ist ein
harm truly known In the truth sorrow losing is a
wârer trôst; wan allez ungemach, leit unt untrôst ist ûzerlîchez
true comfort for all discomfort sorrow and uncomfort is outward
guot, unt dar umbe sol der mensche niht schaden clagen, er
good and there for shall the man not harm lament he
sol vil mê clagen, daz ime trôst unde gemach unbekant
shall much more lament that to-him comfort and comfort unknown

ist, unt daz trôst niht getrœsten mac. Er sol vil mê clagen,
is and that comfort not comfort may He shall much more lament
daz er niht genzeclîcher entbildet ist der crêatûren unt niht
that he not more-wholly unformed is of-the creatures and not
în gebildet unt gepflanzet ist unt aller ein bilde ist der güeti.
in formed and planted is and all an image is of-the goodness
Ouch sol ein mensche gedenken in sînem leide, daz got
Also shall a man think in his sorrow that God
diu wârheit sprichet unt gelopt bî im selben der wârheit.
the truth speaks and vows by him self the truth
Entvieli got sînem worte, sîner wârheit, er entvieli sîner
Should-fail God from-his word from-his truth he failed his
gotheit unt wêri niht got; wan sîn wort ist sîn wârheit. Sîn
godhead and were not God for his word is his truth His
wort ist, daz unser leit sol verwandelet werden in fröude.
word is that our sorrow shall changed become into joy
Unt sicherlîchen, unt wisti ich daz für wâr, daz alle
And surely and should-know I that for true that all
mîn steine verwandelet soltin werden in lûter golt, ie mê
my stones changed should become into pure gold ever more
ich denne steine hêti unt grœzer, ie lieber sie mir wêrin.
I then stones had and greater ever dearer they to-me were
Und alsô, spriche ich sicherlîchen, würde der mensche
And so say I surely would-become the man
krefteclîche getrœstet in allem sînem leide unt ungemache.
strongly comforted in all his sorrow and discomfort
Noch ist ein anderz dem gelîche. Kein vaz mac niht
Still is an other to-that like No vessel may at-all
zweierleie tranc in ime selben haben: sol ez wîn hân, man
twofold drink in it self have (if)-shall it wine have one
muoz von nôt daz wazzer ûz giezen, daz muoz blôz unt
must of necessity the water out pour that must bare and

îtel werden. Dar umbe, solt dû götlîche fröude enpfâhen,
empty become There for (if)-shalt thou divine joy receive
sô muostû von nôt die crêatûre ûz giezen unt ûz werfen.
so must-thou of necessity the creature out pour and out cast
Her umbe sprichet sant Augustînus: giuz ûz, daz dû erfüllet
Here for says saint Augustine pour out that thou filled
werdest; lerne niht minnen, umbe daz dû gelernest minnen;
become learn not to-love for that thou learn to-love
kêre dich abe, umbe daz dû zuo gekêret werdest. Eigenlîchen
turn thee off for that thou to turned become Properly
geseit, allez daz nemen unt enpfenclîch sol sîn, daz sol unt
said all that take and receptive shall be that shall and
muoz blôz sîn. Die meister sagent uns, hêti daz ouge keine
must bare be The masters tell us had the eye any
varwe in im selben, dâ ez bekennet, ez enbekanti noch die
color in it self there it knows it knew neither the
varwe die ez hêt noch die ez niht hêt; wan ez aber blôz
color which it has nor which it not has for it however bare
ist aller varwe, dâ von bekennet ez alle varwe. Diu want hêt
is of-all color there from knows it all color The wall has
varwe an ir, unt dar umbe enbekennet si niht ir selbes varwe
color on her and there for knows she not her self's color
noch keine varwe unde hât keine lust von der varwe, niht
nor any color and has no delight from the color not
mê von golde denne von kolvarwe. Daz ouge hât ir niht unt
more from gold than from coal-color The eye has it not and
hêt sî wêrlich, wan ez bekennet sî mit lust unt mit wunne.
has it truly for it knows it with delight and with bliss
Unt her umbe, daz die krefte der sêle durnehtiger unt mê
And here for that the powers of-the soul more-thorough and more
blôz sint, dar umbe nimet si mê durnehtiger unt wîter waz
bare are there for takes she more more-thoroughly and wider what

si denne nimet und enpfâhet unt hât grœzer wunne unt wirt
she then takes and receives and has greater bliss and becomes
mê ein mit dem, daz si nimet, alsô verre, daz diu obrôste
more one with that which she takes so far that the highest
kraft der sêle, diu aller dinge blôz ist unt mit nihte niht
power of-the soul which of-all things bare is and with anything nothing
mêr gemeine hât, nimet niht minre denne got selben in sînem
more in-common has takes nothing less than God self in his
eigen wesenne. Unde sprechent die meister, daz der vereinunge
own being And say the masters that to-the union
unt durbrüche unde der wunne sich niht mac gelîchen. Dar
and breakthrough and to-the bliss itself nothing may equal There
umbe sprichet unser herre gar merklîchen in dem êwangeliô
for says our lord very notably in the gospel
'sêlic sint die armen in dem geiste.' Arm ist der, der niht
blessed are the poor in the spirit Poor is he who nothing
enhât unt arm ist des geistes, unt meinet alsô vil, als daz ouge
has and poor is of-the spirit and means as much as the eye
arm unt blôz ist aller varwe unt enpfenclich aller varwe, alsô
poor and bare is of-all color and receptive of-all color so
der arm ist des geistes, der ist ouch enpfenclich aller geiste
he-who poor is of-the spirit he is also receptive of-all spirits
unt alles geistes. Got ist ein geist, unt fruht des geistes ist
and of-all spirit God is a spirit and fruit of-the spirit is
minne, fride unt frönde. Blôz arm, niht hân, îtel sîn wandelt
love peace and joy Bare poor nothing have empty be changes
die nâtûre; îtel sîn machet wazzer ze berc ûf climmen
the nature empty being makes water to mountain up climb
unt vil anders wunders, dâ von man nû niht sprechen sol.
and many other wonder there of one now not speak shall

Dar umbe, wilt dû ganzen trôst unde fröude vinden in
There for (if)-wilt thou whole comfort and joy find in
got, sô sich, daz dû blôz sîest aller crêatûren, alles trôstes
God so see that thou bare be of-all creatures of-all comfort
von den crêatûren. Sicherlîchen, alle die wîle daz dich trœstet
from the creatures Surely all the while that thee comforts
unt trœsten mügent die crêatûren, sô vindest dû niemer
and comfort may the creatures so findest thou never
rehten trôst. Sô dich aber niut mêr getrœsten mac denne
right comfort When thee however nothing more comfort may than
got, wêrlîchen, sô trœstet dich got unt mit ime unt in ime
God truly so comforts thee God and with him and in him
allez daz wunne ist. Trœstet dich daz got niht ist, dû hâst
all that bliss is (If)-comforts thee what God not is thou hast
noch hie noch dâ. Unt trœstet dich aber crêatûre niht
neither here nor there And (if)-comforts thee however creature not
unde smacket dir niht, sô vindest dû beidiu hie unt dâ.
and tastes to-thee not so findest thou both here and there
Möhti der mensche unde kündi einen becher zemâle îtel
Could the man and knew-how a cup wholly empty
gemachen unt îtel behalten von allem dem, daz füllen
make and empty keep of all that that fill
mac, ouch luftes, sunder zwîvel der becher verzige unde
may also of-air without doubt the cup would-renounce and
vergêze aller sîner nâtûre und îtelkeit trüege in ûf biz
would-forget all its nature and emptiness would-bear it up until
an den himel. Alsô treit blôz arm und îtel aller crêatûren
to the heaven So bears bare poor and empty of-all creatures
die sêle ûf zuo got in got; ouch ziuhet ûf in die hœhi
the soul up to God into God also draws up into the height
gelîchnüsse unt hitze. Gelîchnüsse gît man dem sune in der
likeness and heat Likeness gives one to-the son in the

gotheit, hitze unt minne dem heiligen geiste. Gelîchnüsse in
godhead heat and love to-the holy spirit Likeness in
allen dingen unt sunderlîchen mêr unde zuo dem êrsten in
all things and especially more and at the first in
götlîcher nâtûre ist geburt des einen, unde gelîchnüsse von
divine nature is birth of-the one and likeness from
einem in ein unt mit eime ist ein begin unt ursprunc der
one in one and with one is a beginning and origin of-the
ûzblüegenden hitzigen minne. Ein ist begin sunder allen
out-blossoming hot love One is beginning without all
begin. Gelîchnüsse ist begin von dem einen alleine unde
beginning Likeness is beginning from the one alone and
nimet daz ez ist unt daz ez begin ist von dem einen in
takes that it is and that it beginning is from the one in
dem einen. Minne hât daz von nâtûre, daz si fliuzet und
the one Love has that by nature that she flows and
urspringet von zweien als ein ein, als ein, niht minne zwei,
springs from two as one one as one not love two
als zwei ist minne niht; zwei als ein gît von nôt nâtiurlîche
as two is love not two as one gives of necessity natural
minne willeclîchen unde hitzeclîchen oder begirlîchen.
love willingly and hotly or desirously
Nû sprichet Salomôn, daz alliu wazzer unt alle crêatûre îlent
Now says Solomon that all waters and all creatures hasten
unt fliezent unt widerloufent in iren ursprunc. Unt dar umbe
and flow and run-back into their origin And there for
sô ist von nôt daz wâr sô ich gesprochen hân: gelîchnüs
so is of necessity that true which I spoken have likeness
unt minne îlet unt hitziget ûf ze leitenne unt ze bringenne
and love hastens and heats up to lead and to bring
die sêle in den êrsten ursprunc des einen, daz unser vater
the soul into the first origin of-the one which our father

ist aller in himele unt in erden. Sô spriche ich denne: daz
is of-all in heaven and in earth So say I then that
gelîchnüs geboren von einem ziuhet die sêle in got, als er
likeness born from one draws the soul into God as he
ist ein in sîner ungebornen einunge, unt des hân wir ein
is one in his unborn union and of-that have we an
offen urkünde. Sô daz lîplîche fiur enzündet unt enbrennet
open testimony When the bodily fire kindles and burns
daz holz als ein funke, sô enpfâhet ez fiures nâtûre unt
the wood as a spark so receives it fire's nature and
wirt gelîche dem lûtern fiure, daz sunder allez mitel haftet
becomes like to-the pure fire that without all means clings
undenen an dem himele. Alzehant vergizzet unde verzîhet ez
below at the heaven At-once forgets and renounces it
vater unt muoter, bruoder unt swester ûf erde unt îlet unt
father and mother brother and sister on earth and hastens and
jaget ûf an den himelschen vater. Sîn vater hie nidenen des
hunts up to the heavenly father Its father here below of-the
funken ist daz fiur unt muoter sîniu ist daz holz; bruoder
spark is the fire and mother its is the wood brother
unt swestern sint die andern funken, unt er beitet der
and sisters are the other sparks and it waits for-the
êrsten funken niht: er îlet unt jaget ûf snelleclîchen zuo
first sparks not it hastens and hunts up swiftly to
sînem rehten vater, daz der himel ist. Wan wer bekennet
its right father which the heaven is For who knows
rehte wârheit, der weiz wol, daz daz fiur niht ist reht
right truth he knows well that the fire not is right
vater des funken als ez fiur ist: der reht wâr vater alles
father of-the spark as it fire is the right true father of-all
fiures unt hitze ist der himel. Unt noch ist daz gar sêre
fire and heat is the heaven And still is that very greatly

ze merkenne, daz diz fünkelî niht alleine lâzet unt vergizzet
to mark that this little-spark not alone leaves and forgets
vater unde muoter ûf ertrîche, mêr: ez lâzet unt verzîhet sich
father and mother on earth but it leaves and renounces itself
sîn selbes, unt von nâtiurlîcher minne kumet ez zuo sînem
of-its self and from natural love comes it to its
rehten vater, dem himel; wan ez muoz von nôt erleschen
right father the heaven for it must of necessity go-out
in der kelti der lüfte; doch wil ez bewîsen nâtiurlîche
in the cold of-the air yet will it show natural
minne, die ez zuo sînem wâren himelschen vater hât.
love which it to its true heavenly father has
Unt als vor geseit ist von îtelkeit, daz ist von blôzheit, daz
And as before said is of emptiness that is of bareness that
nâch dem, daz diu sêle durnehtiger blôz unt ermer ist unt
after that that the soul more-thoroughly bare and poorer is and
minre hât der crêatûren unt îtel ist aller dinge, diu got
less has of-the creatures and empty is of-all things which God
niht sint, dar nâch sô nimet si got lûterlîcher unt mê in
not are there after so takes she God more-purely and more into
got und ein mit gote und sich in gote unde siht got von
God and one with God and herself in God and sees God from
antlüte ze antlüte als in eim bilde oder gebildet, als sant
face to face as in an image or imaged as saint
Paulus sprichet. Alsô spriche ich nû von gelîchnüsse unt von
Paul says So say I now of likeness and of
der minne hitze; wan nâch dem, daz ez dem andern gelîcher
the love's heat for after that that it to-the other more-like
ist, dar zuo unt dar nâch jaget ez mê unt ist sneller unt ist
is there to and there after hunts it more and is swifter and is
ime sîn louf süezer unt wunneclîcher, unt ie mê ez verrer
to-it its course sweeter and more-blissful and ever more it farther

kumet von ime selber unde von allem dem, daz jenez niht
comes from it self and from all that which that not
enist, dar zuo ez jaget, ungelîcher sich selben unt allem dem,
is there to it hunts more-unlike it self and all that
daz jenez niht ist, dar nâch wirt ez gelîcher dem, daz ez
which that not is there after becomes it more-like to-that which it
jaget, dar zuo ez îlet. Unt wan gelîchnüsse fliuzet von dem
hunts there to it hastens And since likeness flows from the
einen unt ziuhet unt locket von der kraft unt in der kraft
one and draws and lures from the power and in the power
des einen, dar umbe gestillet noch benüeget niht noch dem,
of-the one there for stilled nor satisfied not nor to-that
daz dâ ziuhet, noch dem, daz gezogen wirt, unz daz sie in
which there draws nor to-that which drawn becomes until that they into
ein vereinet werdent. Unt dar umbe sô sprichet unser herre in
one united become And there for so says our lord in
dem prophêten Isaias unt meinet, daz kein hœhi, enkein nidri
the prophet Isaiah and means that no height no lowness
noch gelîchnüsse, kein fride der minne genüeget mir niht,
nor likeness no peace of-the love suffices to-me at-all
unz daz ich selbe in mînem sune erschîne und ich selbe in
until that I self in my son appear and I self in
der minne des heiligen geistes enbrant und entzündet wirde.
the love of-the holy spirit burned and kindled become
Unser herre Jêsus Kristus der bat sînen vater, daz wir mit
Our lord Jesus Christ he asked his father that we with
ime unt in ime ein würden, unt niht alleine vereinet, mêr:
him and in him one became and not alone united but
ein einic ein. Der rede unt dirre wârheit hân wir ein
a single one Of-the discourse and this truth have we an
offen urkünde unde bewîsunge in der nâtûre, ouch ûzerlîchen
open testimony and proof in the nature also outwardly

in dem fiure. Wenne daz fiur würket unt an gezündet unt
in the fire When the fire works and on kindles and
enbrennet daz holz, sô machet daz fiur alze cleine daz holz
burns the wood so makes the fire all-too small the wood
unt sich selben ungelîche, benimet ime gropheit, keltin unde
and it self unlike takes-away from-it coarseness coldness and
swârheit unt fiuhti des wazzeres unt machet daz holz sich
heaviness and moisture of-the water and makes the wood it
selben, dem fiure, gelîche ie mê unt ie mê; doch gestillet
self to-the fire like ever more and ever more yet stilled
noch benüeget noch geswîget niemer niht weder holz noch
nor satisfied nor silenced ever at-all either wood or
fiur an keiner wermi noch hitze noch gelîchnüsse, unz daz
fire in any warmth or heat or likeness until that
daz fiur gebirt sich selber in daz holz unt gît ime sîn eigen
the fire bears it self into the wood and gives to-it its own
nâtûre unt ouch ein wesen sîn selbes, alsô da allez ein fiur
nature and also one being of-its self so that all one fire
gelîch eigen ist ungescheiden weder minre noch mê. Unt dar
alike own is undivided neither less nor more And there
umbe, ê daz diz her zuo kome, sô ist dâ iemer ein rouch,
for before that this here to come so is there ever a smoke
ein widerkriec, ein krastplen und ein strît zwischent fiure
a counter-strife a crackling and a strife between fire
unt holze. Sô aber dâ alliu ungelîcheit wirt benomen
and wood When however there all unlikeness becomes taken
unt hine getân, sô gestillet daz fiur unt geswîget daz holz.
and away done so stills the fire and is-silent the wood
Und ich spriche mêr in der wârheit, daz diu verborgen kraft
And I say more in the truth that the hidden power
der nâtûre hazzet verborgenlîchen gelîchnüs als ouch verri,
of-the nature hates secretly likeness as also far

alsô vil ez in ime treit den underscheit unt zweiunge, unt
as much it in itself bears the distinction and twoness and
suochet in ime daz ein, daz ez in ime unt durch ez alleine
seeks in it the one which it in it and through it alone
minnet, als der munt in dem unt an dem wîne minnet unt
loves as the mouth in the and on the wine loves and
suochet den smak unt die süezikeit; unt hêti denne daz
seeks the taste and the sweetness and should-have then the
wazzer den smak der güeti, den der wîn hât, sô minnôti
water the taste of-the goodness which the wine has so loved
der munt den wîn niht mê denne daz wazzer.
the mouth the wine not more than the water
Unt dar umbe hân ich gesprochen, daz diu sêle in gelîchnüsse
And there for have I spoken that the soul in likeness
hazzet unt niht minnet gelîchnüs als in ir unt durch sî,
hates and not loves likeness as in her and through her
sunder si minnet sî dur daz ein, daz in ir verborgen
but she loves her for the one which in her hidden
ist und ein wâr vater ist, ein begin sunder allen begin
is and a true father is a beginning without all beginning
aller dinge in himele und in erde. Unt dar umbe sô sprich
of-all things in heaven and in earth And there for so say
ich, alle die wîle, daz noch gelîchnüsse wirt funden und
I all the while that still likeness becomes found and
erschînet zwischent fiure unt holze, sô enist dâ ouch niemer
appears between fire and wood so is there also never
wârer lust noch swîgen, weder ruowe noch genüegede. Unt
true delight nor silence either rest or satisfaction And
dar umbe sprechent die meister: gewerden des fiures ist mit
there for say the masters becoming of-the fire is with
widerstrîte, mit andunge unt ouch mit unruowe in der zît.
strife with emotion and also with unrest in the time

Aber geburt des fiures unt lust ist sunder zît unt sunder
But birth of-the fire and delight is without time and without
verre. Lust unt fröude dunket nieman lang noch verre.
distance Delight and joy seems to-no-one long nor far
Allez, daz ich nû gesprochen hân, daz meinet, daz unser
All that I now spoken have that means what our
herre sprichet 'sô diu frouwe gebirt daz kint, sô hât si
lord says when the woman bears the child so has she
leit unt pîne, sô aber daz kint geboren ist, sô vergizzet
sorrow and pain when however the child born is so forgets
si leides unt pîne.' Dar umbe sprach ouch got unt manete
she sorrow and pain There for spoke also God and admonished
uns in dem êwangeliô, daz wir biten den himelschen vater,
us in the gospel that we pray the heavenly father
daz unser fröude volkomen werde. Unde dâ seit ouch
that our joy perfect become And there said also
Philippus 'herre, zeige unt wîse uns den vater, sô benüeget
Philip lord show and point us the father so suffices
uns.' Wan vater daz meinet ein unt in dem geswîget
to-us For father that means one and in that is-silent
gelîchnüs unt gestillet allez, daz begirde unt wesen hât.
likeness and stills all that desire and being has
Nû mac der mensche offenlîcher bekennen, war umbe unt
Now may the man more-openly know where fore and
wâ von er ungetrôst ist in allem sînem leide, ungemach unt
where from he uncomforted is in all his sorrow discomfort and
schaden. Daz kumet allez unt alleine dâ von, daz er ûzwendic
harm That comes all and alone there from that he outward
unt verre von gote ist unt niht îtel noch blôz der crêatûre,
and far from God is and not empty nor bare of-the creature
gote ungelîche unt kalt an götlîcher minne. Noch ist aber ein
to-God unlike and cold in divine love Still is however an

andriu sache, wer die merken unt bekennen wil, sô würde er
other cause who that mark and know will so would-become he
billîchen getrôst an ûzerlîchem schaden, leit unt ungemache.
rightly comforted in outward harm sorrow and discomfort
Ein mensche der vert einen weg, er tuot ein werk oder lât
A man who fares a way he does a work or leaves
ein ander werk, sô beschiht ime ein schade, oder brichet ein
an other work so happens to-him a harm or breaks a
bein oder einen arm oder er verliurt ein ouge ald wirt siech;
leg or an arm or he loses an eye or becomes sick
und wil er denne allez gedenken: hêtist dû einen andern
and (if)-will he then all think shouldst-have thou an other
weg gevaren oder ein ander werc getân, sô wêre dir diz niht
way fared or an other work done so were to-thee this not
beschehen, sô belîpt er ungetrœstet unt wirt ouch von nôt
happened so remains he uncomforted and becomes also of necessity
leidic. Unt dar umbe sol er gedenken: unde wêrist dû nû einen
sorrowful And there for shall he think and wert thou now an
andern weg gevaren oder hêtist ein ander werc getân oder
other way fared or shouldst-have an other work done or
gelâzen, dir wêre ein vil grœzer schade unt leit beschehen,
left to-thee were a much greater harm and sorrow happened
unt sô würde er billîchen getrœstet unt frô von herzen.
and so would-become he rightly comforted and glad from heart
Aber setze ich einez. Dû hâst verloren tûsent marc, sô ensolt
But set I one Thou hast lost thousand marks so shalt
dû niht clagen die tûsent marc, die verloren sint: dû solt
thou not lament the thousand marks which lost are thou shalt
gote danken, der dir hâte gegeben tûsent marc, die dû
God thank who to-thee had given thousand marks which thou
verlieren mohtest unt ouch lâzen vor der tugende unt gedult
lose mightest and also let before the virtue and patience

üeben und êwic leben verdienen, daz manic tûsent mensche
exercise and eternal life earn which many thousand men
niht enhât. Unt noch ein anderz setze ich aber, daz den
not have And still an other set I however that the
menschen trœsten mac. Ein mensche, hêt er guot gemach
man comfort may A man (if)-has he good ease
besezzen manic jâr unt verliuret daz nû von verhengen,
possessed many years and loses that now by allowing
sô sol der mensche wîslîche gedenken unt gote danken,
so shall the man wisely think and God thank
sô er des schaden gewar wirt unt des ungemaches, daz
when he of-the harm aware becomes and of-the discomfort which
er hêt, und denne alrest weiz er, waz nutzes unt gemaches
he has and then first knows he what profit and ease
er vor hâte, unt sol gote danken des gemaches, des er
he before had and shall God thank for-the ease which he
sô manic jâr sich hêt genietet, unt enzürni niht.
so many years himself has enjoyed and rage not
Er sol gedenken, daz der mensche nâch nâtiurlîcher wârheit
He shall think that the man after natural truth
niut von ime selben hêt denne bôsheit unt gebresten. Allez
nothing from him self has but wickedness and failing All
daz guot ist daz hât got ime gelihen, unt niht gegeben.
that good is that has God to-him lent and not given
Und wer bekennet wârheit, der weiz, daz got der himelsche
And who knows truth he knows that God the heavenly
vater dem sune unt dem heiligen geiste gît allez daz daz
father to-the son and to-the holy spirit gives all that which
guot ist. Aber der crêatûre gît er kein guot, sunder er
good is But to-the creature gives he no good but he
verlîhe ez ir ze borgenne. Diu sunne gît dem lufte hitze,
lends it to-her to borrow The sun gives to-the air heat

aber daz lieht gît si ime ze borge, unt dar umbe, alzehant
but the light gives she to-it on loan and there for at-once
sô diu sunne under gât, sô verliuret der luft daz lieht, aber
when the sun under goes so loses the air the light but
diu hitze belîbet; wan diu ist dem lufte gegeben ze eigenne,
the heat remains for that is to-the air given to own
unt dar umbe sprechent die meister, daz der himelsche vater
and there for say the masters that the heavenly father
got ist des sunes vater unt niht herre, noch des heiligen
God is the son's father and not lord nor of-the holy
geistes herre. Aber got vater, sun unt heilig geist sint herre
spirit lord But God father son and holy spirit are lord
unt ein herre der crêatûren. Unt wir sprechen, daz got was
and one lord of-the creatures And we say that God was
unt ist êweclîchen vater; aber mit dem, dô er geschuof die
and is eternally father but with that when he created the
crêatûren, sô ist er herre. Nû sprich ich: sît dem mâle daz
creatures so is he lord Now say I since the time that
dem menschen allez, daz guot oder trœstlich ist, ime ze
to-the man all that good or comforting is to-him on
borge gelihen ist, waz hât er denne ze clagenne, sô er ez
loan lent is what has he then to lament when he it
wider nimet unde nemen wil? Er sol gote danken, daz er ez
back takes and take will He shall God thank that he it
ime verlihen hêt sô lange. Ouch sol er ime danken, daz er
to-him lent has so long Also shall he him thank that he
ime ez alzemâle niht wider nimet daz er ime hêt verlihen,
from-him it wholly not back takes what he to-him has lent
unt wêre ouch billîchen, allez daz got dem menschen verlihen
and were also right all that God to-the man lent
hât, der zornic wirt, daz er des einen teil wider nême, daz
has who angry becomes that he of-it a part back took which

sîn nie wart unt des er ouch nie herre wart. Unt her
his never was and of-which he also never lord was And here
umbe sprichet gar wol Jeremias der prophête, dô er was in
for says very well Jeremiah the prophet when he was in
grôzem lîdenne unt clagenne 'ô wie grôz unt manicvaltic sint
great suffering and lamenting o how great and manifold are
gotes erbarmherzikeit, daz wir niht alzemâle ze nihte werden.'
God's mercies that we not wholly to nothing become
Wer mir hât verlihen sînen roc, kurset oder mantel, nême
Who to-me has lent his coat kirtle or mantle should-take
der sînen mantel unde liezi mir den roc unt den kurset
he his mantle and left to-me the coat and the kirtle
in dem vroste, ich solte ime vil billîchen danken unt vrô
in the frost I should to-him very rightly thank and glad
sîn. Unt sol man daz ouch sunderbâr merken, wie daz sô
be And shall one that also especially mark how that so
grœzlîchen unrehte ich unt der mensche hân, sô wir iht
greatly wrong I and the man have when we anything
zürnin unt clagen, sô wir iht verlieren; wan sô ich wil,
rage and lament when we anything lose for when I will
daz guot daz ich hân sî mir gegeben unde niht gelihen,
that good which I have be to-me given and not lent
sô wil ich herre sîn unt wil gotes sun nâtûrlîchen sîn unt
so will I lord be and will God's son naturally be and
volkomen, unt bin doch noch niht gotes sun von gnâden;
perfect and am yet still not God's son by grace
wanne eigenschaft des sunes unt des heiligen geistes ist,
for property of-the son and of-the holy spirit is
sich gelîchlich halten in allen dingen und in allen sachen.
himself alike hold in all things and in all matters

Ouch sol man wizzen daz sunder zwîvel, daz ouch nâtiurlîche
Also shall one know that without doubt that also natural
menschlîche tugende sô edele und sô kreftic sint, daz ir
human virtues so noble and so strong are that to-them
kein ûzerlîchez werk ze swêre enist noch grôz genüege, daz
no outward work too heavy is nor great enough that
si sich dar an unt dar inne bewîsen müge unt sich dar în
she herself there on and there in show may and herself there into
erbilden. Und dar umbe ist ein inrez werc, daz niht zît
image And there for is an inner work which not time
noch stat besliezen mac noch begrîfen, und in dem selben
nor place enclose may nor grasp and in the same
ist, waz got unt götlich unt gote gelîch ist, den noch zît
is what God and divine and to-God like is whom neither time
noch stat besliuzet; er ist allenthalben unt alle zît gelîch
nor place encloses he is everywhere and all time equally
gegenwürtic unt ouch dar an gote gelîcher, denne kein
present and also there in to-God more-like than any
crêatûre volkomenlîchen enpfâhen müge noch gotes güeti
creature perfectly receive may nor God's goodness
in sich bilden. Unt dâ von sô muoz etwaz innigers unde
into itself image And there from so must something more-inward and
hœhers sîn unt ungeschaffen âne mâze und âne wîse,
higher be and uncreated without measure and without manner
dâ sich der himelsche vater ganz în bilden und ergiezen
where himself the heavenly father wholly in image and pour
möhte und ouch bewîsen; daz sint der sun unt der heilig
might and also show those are the son and the holy
geist. Unt ouch mac daz inre werc der tugende alsô wênic
spirit And also may the inner work of-the virtue as little
ieman gehindern, als man got niht hinderen mac. Daz werc
anyone hinder as one God not hinder may The work

schînet unt liuhtet tag unde naht; daz werc lobet unt singet
shines and gleams day and night the work praises and sings
gotes lop unt einen niuwen gesanc. Dâvît sprichet 'singent
God's praise and a new song David says sing
gote einen niuwen gesanc, wan des lop ist von der erden
to-God a new song for his praise is from the earth's
ende.' Daz werc minnet got niht, daz ûzer, daz zît unt stat
end The work loves God not the outer which time and place
besliuzet, daz enge ist, daz man hindern mac unt betwingen,
enclose which narrow is which one hinder may and compel
daz müede unt alt wirt von zît unt von üebunge. Daz werc
which weary and old becomes from time and from exercise The work
ist got minnen, guot unde güeti wellen, dâz allez daz, daz
is God loving good and goodness willing that all that which
der mensche wil unt ouch wölti tuon, mit lûterm ganzem
the man will and also would do with pure whole
willen in allen guoten werken hât ietzent getân, dar an
will in all good works has now done there in
er ouch gelîch ist gote. Von dem schrîbet Dâvît, daz allez,
he also like is to-God Of him writes David that all
daz er wolte haben ietzent getân unde geworht, ist volbrâht.
that he would have now done and worked is accomplished
Diser lêre hân wir ein offenbâre bewîsunge an dem steine.
Of-this teaching have we an open proof in the stone
Des ûzer werc ist, daz er nider valle unt lige ûf der erden.
Its outer work is that it down fall and lie on the earth
Daz wer mac gehindern sîn werc unde vallet er niht alle zît
That who may hinder its work and falls it not all time
noch âne underlâz. Aber ein ander werc ist noch inniger
nor without ceasing But an other work is still more-inward
dem steine unt daz ist neigunge alle zît niderwert, unt
to-the stone and that is inclination all time downward and

daz ist ime angeboren, daz enkan ime got noch crêatûre
that is to-it inborn that can from-it God nor creature
benemen noch nieman. Daz werc würket der stein âne
take nor anyone That work works the stone without
underlâz naht unt tag. Daz er tûsent jâr dâ obnân lêge,
ceasing night and day Though it thousand years there above lay
er neiget weder minre noch mê denne in dem êrsten tage.
it inclines neither less nor more than in the first day
Reht alsô sprich ich von der tugent, daz si hât ein innic
Just so say I of the virtue that she has an inward
werc: wellen unt neigen zuo aller güeti und îlen unt
work willing and inclining to all goodness and hastening and
wider kriegen von allem dem, daz bœse unt übel ist, gote
back striving from all that which bad and evil is to-God
unt güeti ungelîch. Unde ie daz werc bœser ist unt gote
and goodness unlike And ever the work worse is and to-God
ungelîcher, ie der widerkêr grœzer ist; unt ie grœzer daz
more-unlike ever the turning-back greater is and ever greater the
werc ist unt gote gelîcher, ie ir daz werc lîhter, lustiger
work is and to-God more-like ever to-her the work lighter more-delightful
unt williger ist, unt alle ir clage unt leit ist daz, ob
and more-willing is and all her lament and sorrow is that if
leit in sî vallen mac, daz diz lîden dur got ze clein ist
sorrow in her fall may that this suffering for God too small is
und alliu ûzeriu werc in zît ze cleine sint, daz si sich niht
and all outer works in time too small are that she herself not
ganz noch ze vollen bewîsen noch dar în erbilden mac. Unt
wholly nor to full show nor there into image may And
üebende sich wirt si kreftiger unt von milti wirt si rîcher.
exercising herself becomes she stronger and from bounty becomes she richer
Si wölte niht geliten noch überliten hân leit unt lîden: si
She would not suffered nor over-suffered have sorrow and suffering she

wil unt wölte alle zît âne underlâz lîden dur got unt güeti.
will and would all time without ceasing suffer for God and goodness
Alliu ir sêlikeit ist lîden dur got, niht geliten hân. Dar
All her blessedness is suffering for God not suffered have There
umbe ouch unser herre sprichet ‘sêlic sint die dâ lîdent
for also our lord says blessed are those-who there suffer
dur die gerehtikeit.’ Er sprichet niht: die geliten hânt. Ein
for the justice He says not those-who suffered have A
solich mensche hazzet geliten hân, wan geliten hân ist niht
such man hates suffered have for suffered have is not
lîden, daz er minnet, ez ist ein fürganc unt verlust lîdennes
suffering which he loves it is a passing and loss of-suffering
dur got, daz er alleine minnet. Unt dar umbe spriche ich,
for God which he alone loves And there for say I
daz ein solich mensche ouch hazzet noch lîden süllen, wan
that a such man also hates still suffer shall for
daz ouch niht lîden ist. Doch hazzet er minre lîden süllen
that also not suffering is Yet hates he less suffer shall
denne geliten hân, wan geliten hân ist verre unt ungelîche
than suffered have for suffered have is far and unlike
lîdenne, wan ez zemâle vergangen ist. Daz man aber lîden
to-suffering for it wholly passed is That one however suffer
sol, daz benimet niht alzemâle lîdenne, daz er minnet.
shall that takes-away not wholly suffering which he loves
Sant Paulus sprichet, daz er gotes dur got enbern wölte umbe
Saint Paul says that he of-God for God forgo would for
daz gotes êre unt lop gemêret unt gebreideret würde. Unt man
that God's honor and praise increased and spread were And one
sprichet, daz sant Paulus daz sprêche in der zît, dô er noch
says that saint Paul that spoke in the time when he still
niht volkomen was. Ich wêne aber des, daz diz wort kême von
not perfect was I suppose however of-that that this word came from

einem volkomenem herzen. Man sprichet ouch, daz er meinte,
a perfect heart One says also that he meant
daz er eine wîle von gote wölte gesunderôt unt gescheiden sîn,
that he a while from God would separated and parted be
und ich spriche, daz ein volkomen mensche als ungerne von
and I say that a perfect man as unwillingly from
gote sich scheiden oder sunderôn wölte unt ime als unmêre
God himself part or separate would and to-him as indifferent
wêre ein stunde als tûsent jâr. Doch und wêri daz, daz ez
were an hour as thousand years Yet if were that that it
gotes wille wêre unt sîn êre, daz er gotes enbêre, sô wêre ime
God's will were and his honor that he of-God forwent so were to-him
alsô lîhte tûsent jâr oder êweclîchen als ein tac, ein stunde.
as easy thousand years or eternally as a day an hour
Ouch ist daz inre werc dar nâch götlich unt gotvar unt ist
Also is the inner work there after divine and God-colored and is
geminnet götlîcher eigenschaft, daz ze glîcher wîse als alle
loved of-divine property that in like manner as all
crêatûre, ob tûsent welte wêrin, ein hâres breite niht bezzer ist
creatures if thousand worlds were a hair's breadth not better is
denne got alleine. Alsô spriche ich unt hân ez dâ vor geseit,
than God alone So say I and have it there before said
daz diz ûzer werc, sîn lengi noch sîn wîti, sîn vili noch
that this outer work its length nor its breadth its muchness nor
sîn grœzi niht alzemâle mêret die güeti des inren werkes: ez
its greatness not at-all increases the goodness of-the inner work it
hât sîn güeti in sich selben, dar umbe enkan daz ûzer werc
has its goodness in it self there for can the outer work
niemer cleine gesîn, ob daz inre grôz ist, unde daz ûzer enmac
never small be if the inner great is and the outer may
niemer grôz noch guot sîn, ob daz inre clein oder niht
never great nor good be if the inner small or nothing

enist. Wer daz inre werc hât in ime alle zît beslozzen, alle
is Who the inner work has in him all time enclosed all
grœzi, wîti unt lengi des inren werkes nimet unt schöpfet
greatness breadth and length of-the inner work takes and draws
allez sîn wesen niergen denne von gote unt in gotes herzen.
all its being nowhere but from God and in God's heart
Got minnet den sun unt wirt sun geboren in des himelschen
God loves the son and becomes son born in the heavenly
vater schôze. Umbe daz ûzer werc enist ez niht alsô:
father's lap About the outer work is it not so
sunder ez nimet sîn götlîche güeti enmiten des innigen
but it takes its divine goodness from-the-midst of-the inward
werkes ûz getragen unt ûz gegozzen in einen niderval der
work out carried and out poured into a down-fall of-the
gecleideten gotheit mit underscheit, mit mengi, mit teile, daz
clothed godhead with distinction with multitude with part that
allez unt dem gelîche unt ouch gelîchnüs selben gote verre
all and to-that like and also likeness self to-God far
unt frömde sint. Sie haftent unt behaftent unt gestillent in
and alien are They cling and cling-to and still in
dem, daz guot ist, daz crêatûre ist, blint alzemâle güeti
that which good is which creature is blind wholly to-goodness
unt liehtes in sich selben unt des einen, in dem got gebirt
and light in them self and to-the one in which God bears
sînen eingebornen sun unt in im alliu diu gotes kinder sun
his only-begotten son and in him all the God's children son
unt geborne süne. Dâ ist ûzfluz unt ursprunc des heiligen
and born sons There is outflow and origin of-the holy
geistes, von dem alleine, als er gotes geist ist unt ein geist
spirit from whom alone as he God's spirit is and a spirit
got selber ist, enpfangen wirt der sun in uns unt ist ûzfluz
God self is received becomes the son in us and is outflow

von allen den, die gotes süne sint, nâch dem, daz sie minre
from all those who God's sons are after that that they less
oder mê lûterlîchen von gote alleine geboren sint nâch
or more purely from God alone born are after
gote unt in gote überbildet und entriuwet aller mengi, der
God and into God over-formed and freed of-all multitude which
man doch noch vindet in den obrôsten engelen nâtiurlich.
one yet still finds in the highest angels naturally
Noch der ez rehte erkennen wil entriuwet der güeti, der
Still he-who it rightly know will renounces the goodness the
wârheit und allem dem, daz ouch in dem gedanke unt in dem
truth and all that which also in the thought and in the
namen alleine einen wân oder schatwen keines underscheides
name alone a fancy or shadow of-any distinction
lîdet, unt getriuwet dem einen blôz allerlei mengi unt
suffers and trusts the one bare all-kinds multitude and
underscheit, in dem ouch verliuret unt wirt entblœzet aller
distinction in which also loses and becomes bared of-all
underscheit unt eigenschaft unt ist ein unt sint ein ouch vater,
distinction and property and is one and are one also father
sun und heiliggeist. Unt daz eine daz machet uns sêlic, unt ie
son and holy-spirit And that one that makes us blessed and ever
verrer wir dem einen sîn, ie minre wir sun oder süne sîn unt
farther we from-the one are ever less we son or sons are and
ouch der heilig geist minre volkomenlîche in uns entspringet
also the holy spirit less perfectly in us springs
unt von uns fliuzet. Unt dar nâch wir nêher sîn den. einen,
and from us flows And there after we nearer are than one
dar nâch sîn wir wêrlîchen gotes sun unt süne unt ouch
there after are we truly God's son and sons and also
fliuzet von uns got der heilig geist. Unt daz meinet, daz unser
flows from us God the holy spirit And that means what our

gotes sun in der gotheit sprichet ‘wer trinket von dem wazzer,
God's son in the godhead says who drinks of the water
daz ich gibe, in dem entspringet ein brunne, ein ursprunc
which I give in him springs a well an origin
des wazzers, daz dâ springet in daz êwic leben.’ Unt sant
of-the water which there springs into the eternal life And saint
Johannes sprichet, daz er daz sprêche von dem heiligen geiste.
John says that he that spoke of the holy spirit
Der sun in der gotheit nâch sîner eigenschaft engît niht
The son in the godhead after his property gives not
anders denne sun wesen, denne got geboren wesen, brunne
other than son being than God born being well
unt ursprunc unt ûzfluz des heiligen geistes der minne gotes
and origin and outflow of-the holy spirit of-the love of-God
unt vollen rehten ganzen smak des einen, des himelschen
and full right whole taste of-the one of-the heavenly
vaters. Dar umbe sprichet des himelschen vater stimme von
father There for speaks the heavenly father's voice from
dem himele zuo dem sune ‘dû bist mîn geminnôter sun, in
the heaven to the son thou art my beloved son in
dem ich geminnet unt beheglich bin, in ime ist mir ein
whom I loved and pleasing am in him is to-me a
wolgevallen.’ Sunder zwîvel, got minnet nieman mit genüegede
well-pleasing Without doubt God loves no-one with satisfaction
unt lûterlîchen, der niht gotes sun ist; wan minne, der heilig
and purely who not God's son is for love the holy
geist, urspringet unt fliuzet von dem sune unt der sun minnet
spirit springs and flows from the son and the son loves
den vater durch sich selben unde sich selben in dem vater.
the father for him self and him self in the father
Dar umbe sprichet vil wol unser herre, daz sie sêlic sint
There for says very well our lord that they blessed are

die armen in dem geiste, daz ist, die niht habent eigens
the poor in the spirit that is those-who not have own
menschlîches geistes unde blôz koment zuo gote. Unt sant
human spirit and bare come to God And saint
Paulus sprichet 'got hât ez uns geoffenbâret in sînem geiste.
Paul says God has it to-us revealed in his spirit
Sant Augustînus sprichet, daz der aller beste die geschrift
Saint Augustine says that he all best the scripture
verstât unt vernimet, der blôz alles geistes suochet unt
understands and perceives who bare of-all spirit seeks and
wârheit der geschrift in ir selben, daz ist in gotes geiste.
truth of-the scripture in her self that is in God's spirit
Sant Pêter sprichet, daz alle die heiligen liute habent
Saint Peter says that all the holy people have
gesprochen in dem geiste gotes. Sant Paulus sprichet 'nieman
spoken in the spirit of-God Saint Paul says no-one
mac bekennen unt wizzen, waz sî in dem menschen, denne
may know and understand what be in the man but
der geist, der in dem menschen ist, unt nieman mac
the spirit which in the man is and no-one may
wizzen, waz in gote ist, denne der geist gotes unt got.' Dar
know what in God is but the spirit of-God and God There
umbe sprichet gar wol ein geschrift einer glôse, daz nieman
for says very well a scripture of-a gloss that no-one
mac vernemen noch lêren kan sant Paulî schrift, er habe
may perceive nor teach can saint Paul's scripture unless-he have
denne den geist, in dem sant Paulus sprach unt schreip. Unt
then the spirit in which saint Paul spoke and wrote And
daz ist alliu mîn clage, daz grobe liute, die gotes geistes
that is all my lament that coarse people who of-God's spirit
îtel sint unt niht hânt noch iren groben menschlîchen sin
empty are and not have nor their coarse human sense

hine geleit, wellent urteilen daz sie hœrent oder lesent in
away laid will judge what they hear or read in
der schrift, diu gesprochen unt geschriben ist von dem unt
the scripture which spoken and written is from the and
in dem heiligen geiste, unde gedenkent niht, daz geschriben
in the holy spirit and think not that written
ist: daz unmüglich ist bî den liuten, daz ist müglich bî
is what impossible is with the people that is possible with
gote unt ouch gemeinlich unt nâtiurlich. Daz unmüglich ist
God and also common and natural What impossible is
der undern nâtûre, daz ist gewonlich unt nâtiurlich der
to-the lower nature that is customary and natural to-the
obren nâtûre. Dâ von nû minnent doch noch, daz ich nû
upper nature There from now love yet still what I now
gesprochen hân, daz ein guot mensche, gotes sun in got
spoken have that a good man God's son in God
geboren, minnet got durch sich selben in ime selben, unt
born loves God for him self in him self and
vil ander wort, diu ich vor gesprochen hân, unt als ich
many other words which I before spoken have and as I
ouch mê gesprochen hân, daz ein guot mensche von güeti
also more spoken have that a good man from goodness
unt in gote geboren tritet in alle die eigenschaft götlîcher
and in God born steps into all the property of-divine
nâtûre. Nû ist daz gotes eigenschaft nâch Salomônes worten,
nature Now is that God's property after Solomon's words
daz alliu dinc got würke durch sich selben, daz ist, daz
that all things God work for him self that is that
er niht ûz ime selben ane siht, niht wan dur sich selben,
he not out-of him self on looks not but for him self
er minnet unt würket alliu dinc dur sich selben.
he loves and works all things for him self

Dar umbe sô der mensche minnet sich selben unt alliu sîniu
There for when the man loves him self and all his
werc, niht umbe lôn, umb êre oder umbe gemach, denne dur
works not for reward for honor or for ease but for
got unt gotes êre alleine, daz ist ein zeichen, daz er gotes sun
God and God's honor alone that is a sign that he God's son
ist. Noch mê: got der minnet dur sich selben unde würket alliu
is Still more God he loves for him self and works all
dinc dur sich selben, daz ist, er minnet dur minne unt er würket
things for him self that is he loves for love and he works
dur würken; wan sunder zwîvel, got hêti sînen eingebornen
for working for without doubt God had his only-begotten
sun in der êwikeit nie geboren, wêri geboren nie geboren. Unt
son in the eternity never borne were born never born And
dar umbe sprechent die heiligen, daz der sun alsô êweclich
there for say the saints that the son so eternally
geboren ist, daz er doch âne underlâz noch wirt geborn.
born is that he yet without ceasing still becomes born
Ouch hêti got die welt nie geschaffen, ob geschaffen wesen
Also had God the world never created if created being
nie wêri geschaffen, dar umbe got alsô die welt hât geschaffen,
never were created there for God so the world has created
daz er sî doch sunder underlâz schöpfet. Allez daz vergangen
that he it yet without ceasing creates All that past
ist unt waz zuokünftic ist, daz ist gote frömde unde verre.
is and what future is that is to-God alien and far
Unt dar umbe wer von got geboren ist gotes sun, der minnet
And there for who from God born is God's son he loves
got durch sich selben, daz ist, er minnet got dur minnen
God for him self that is he loves God for loving
got unt würket alliu sîniu werc dur werc, dur got unt der
God and works all his works for work for God and he

wirt minnens unt würkens niemer müede, unt ouch ime ist
becomes of-loving and of-working never weary and also to-him is
allez ein minne daz er minnet. Und her umbe ist wâr, daz
all one love what he loves And here for is true that
got ist diu minne, unt als ich ouch sprach dâ obnân, daz
God is the love and as I also spoke there above that
der guot mensche wil und wolte alle zît lîden dur got, niht
the good man will and would all time suffer for God not
geliten hân. Lîden hât er, daz er minnet lîden durch got
suffered have Suffering has he what he loves suffering for God
unt lîdet got, unt dar umbe unt ouch dar an sô ist er gotes
and suffers God and there for and also there in so is he God's
sun nâch gote und in gote gebildet. Der minnet durch sich
son after God and in God formed He loves for him
selben, daz ist, er minnet durch minne unt würket dur werc,
self that is he loves for love and works for work
unt dar umbe minnet got unde würket âne underlâz, unt
and there for loves God and works without ceasing and
gotes würken ist sîn nâtûre, sîn wesen, sîn leben, sîn sêlikeit.
God's working is his nature his being his life his blessedness
Alsô wêrlîche der gotes sun, ein guot mensche, sô vil
So truly the God's son a good man as much
unt er gotes sun ist, wil durch got lîden, dur got würken
as he God's son is will for God suffer for God work
unt daz ist sîn wesen, sîn leben, sîn würken, sîn sêlikeit.
and that is his being his life his working his blessedness
Unt alsô sprichet unser herre 'sêlic sint, die dâ lîdent
And so says our lord blessed are those-who there suffer
durch die gerehtikeit.' Für baz zuo dem dritten mâle sprich
for the justice On further at the third time say
ich, daz ein guot mensche als verre er guot ist hât gotes
I that a good man as far he good is has God's

eigenschaft, niht alleine dar an, daz er minnet unt würket
property not alone there in that he loves and works
allez daz er minnet unde würket dur got, den er dâ minnet
all that he loves and works for God whom he there loves
unt dur den er würket, sunder er minnet unt würket ouch
and for whom he works but he loves and works also
dur sich selben der dâ minnet; wan daz er minnet daz ist
for him self who there loves for what he loves that is
got vater ungeboren; der dâ minnet ist got sun geboren. Nû
God father unborn who there loves is God son born Now
ist der vater in dem sune unt der sun in dem vater, vater
is the father in the son and the son in the father father
unt sun sint ein in dem heiligen geiste. Von dem nim, wie
and son are one in the holy spirit Of that take how
daz innigôst unt daz obrôste der sêle schöpfet unde nimet
the innermost and the highest of-the soul creates and takes
gotes sun, und ouch gotes sun werden in des himelschen
God's son and also God's son becoming in the heavenly
vater schôze unde herzen, unt daz suoche nâch dem ende
father's lap and heart and that seek after the end
diser vorgesprochenen worte von dem edelen menschen.
of-these aforesaid words of the noble man
Ouch sol man wizzen, daz in der nâtûre îndruc unt
Also shall one know that in the nature impression and
fluz der obren nâtûre ist einem ieclîchen lustlîcher unt
flow of-the upper nature is to-an every-one more-delightful and
wunneclîcher denne sîn selbes eigeniu nâtûre unde wesen.
more-blissful than its self's own nature and being
Daz wazzer fliuzet von eigener nâtûre niderwert ze tale und
The water flows from own nature downward to dale and
ouch lît sîn wesen dar ane. Doch von îndruke unt înfluzze
also lies its being there on Yet from impression and inflow

des mânen obnân in dem himele sô verzîhet unde vergizzet
of-the moon above in the heaven so renounces and forgets
ez sîner eigenen nâtûre unt fliuzet ze berge in die hœhi
it its own nature and flows to mountain into the height
unt ist der ûffluz vil lîhter denne der fluz niderwert.
and is the upflow much lighter than the flow downward
Unt dâ bî sol der mensche wizzen, ob ime reht wêre,
And there by shall the man know whether to-him right were
daz ime wizzentlîche unt frœlîchen wêre, sînen nâtiurlîchen
that to-him knowingly and joyfully were his natural
willen ze lâzenne unt sich sîn selbes verzîhen unt alzemâle
will to leave and himself of-his self renounce and wholly
ûz gân in allem dem, daz got den menschen lîden wil.
out go in all that which God the man suffer will
Unt daz meinet nâch einem guoten sinne, daz unser herre
And that means after a good sense what our lord
sprichet 'wer welle komen zuo mir, der sol sîn selbes ûz
says who will come to me he shall of-his self out
gân unt verzîhen unde sol sîn kriuze ûf heben', daz ist, er
go and renounce and shall his cross up lift that is he
sol abe legen unt abe tuon allez, daz kriuze unt leit ist;
shall off lay and off do all that cross and sorrow is
wan sicher, wer sîn selbes sich verzigen hête unt wêre ganz
for surely who of-his self himself renounced had and were wholly
sîn selbes ûz gegangen, dem möhte niht kriuze wesen noch
of-his self out gone to-him might no cross be nor
leit noch lîden, mêr: ez wêri im allez ein wunne, ein
sorrow nor suffering but it were to-him all a bliss a
fröude und ein herzenliep, unt der kême unt volgti wêrlîchen
joy and a heart's-delight and he came and followed truly
got; wan als got niht mac betrüeben noch leidic gemachen,
God for as God nothing may sadden nor sorrowful make

alsô wênic möhte den menschen iht riuwic oder leidic
so little might the man anything rueful or sorrowful
gemachen. Unt dar umbe, daz unser herre sprichet ‘wer wil
make And there for what our lord says who will
zuo mir komen, der verzîhe sich sîn selbes unt hebe ûf sîn
to me come he renounce himself of-his self and lift up his
kriuze unt volge mir’, daz ist niht alleine ein gebot, als man
cross and follow me that is not alone a command as one
wênet oder gemeinlîchen sprichet: ez ist ein geloube unt ein
supposes or commonly says it is a faith and a
götlîchiu lêre, wie daz dem menschen allez sîn lîden, alliu
divine teaching how that to-the man all his suffering all
sîniu werc unt sîn leben wunneclîchen unde frœlîchen wirt,
his works and his life blissfully and joyfully becomes
unt ist ein lôn mê denne ein gebot. Wan der mensche,
and is a reward more than a command For the man
der sô getân ist, hât allez, daz er wil, unt enwil niht
who so made is has all that he will and wills nothing
übeles, unt daz ist ouch sêlikeit, dar umbe wol unser herre
evil and that is also blessedness there for well our lord
sprichet ‘sêlic sint, die dâ lîdent durch die gerehtikeit.’
says blessed are those-who there suffer for the justice
Unt ouch daz unser herre sprichet ‘der sun verzîhe sich sîn
And also what our lord says the son renounce himself of-his
selbes unt habe ûf sîn kriuze unt kome zuo mir’, daz meinet,
self and lift up his cross and come to me that means
daz er werde sun als ich sun bin geboren. Got ist daz selbe
that he become son as I son am born God is the same
ein, daz ich bin, daz ich schöpfe in wesenne inne blîbende in
one which I am which I create in being within remaining in
des vaters schôze unt herzen. Ouch sprichet der sun ‘vater, ich
the father’s lap and heart Also says the son father I

wil, daz der mir volget, der zuo mir kumet, daz der sîe dâ
will that who me follows who to me comes that he be where
ich bin.' Nieman kumet eigenlîchen zuo dem sune als der sun
I am No-one comes properly to the son as the son
ist denne der sun wirt, unt nieman ist der dâ sun ist, der in
is but the son becomes and no-one is who there son is who in
des vaters schôze unt herzen ist, ein in einem, dâ der sun ist.
the father's lap and heart is one in one where the son is
'Ich' sprichet der vater 'sol sie füeren in ein einœdi unt
I says the father shall her lead into a wilderness and
dâ sprechen zuo ir herzen.' Herze zuo herzen, ein in
there speak to her heart Heart to heart one in
einem minnet got, alle frömdi unt verri hazzet got, zuo
one loves God all alienness and farness hates God to
ein locket unt ziuhet got, ein suochent alle crêatûre, ouch
one lures and draws God one seek all creatures also
die niderôsten crêatûre suochent ein. Daz daz bevinden die
the lowest creatures seek one That that perceive the
obrôsten unt gezogen werden über nâtûre unt überbildet
highest and drawn become above nature and over-formed
suochen ein, ein in sich selben, dar umbe vil lîhte sprichet
seek one one in it self there for very likely says
der sun Jêsus Kristus in der gotheit 'vater, dâ ich bin, dâ
the son Jesus Christ in the godhead father where I am there
sol sîn der mir dienet, der mir volget, der zuo mir kumet.'
shall be who me serves who me follows who to me comes
Noch ist aber ein ander trôst, daz man sol wizzen, daz aller
Still is however an other comfort that one shall know that to-all
nâtûre unmüglich ist, daz si zerbreche oder verderbe unt ouch
nature impossible is that she break or destroy and also
enrüere, in dem si niht meine ein bezzerz guot in dem selben,
touch in that she not intend a better good in the same

daz si rüeret. Ir benüeget niht, daz si ein gelîch mache,
that she touches To-her suffices not that she a like make
si wil allez ein bezzerz. Ein wîser arzât der berüeret niemer
she will always a better A wise physician he touches never
den siechen vinger des menschen umbe daz er dem menschen
the sick finger of-the man for that he to-the man
niht wê tuo, ob er niht den vinger selben unde den menschen
not woe do if he not the finger self and the man
alzemâle bezzer machen unt im lieber tuon möhte. Mag er
wholly better make and to-him dearer do might (If)-may he
denne den menschen unt ouch den vinger gebezzeren, daz tuot
then the man and also the finger better that does
er gerne, unt ist des niht, er snîdet den vinger abe, daz er den
he gladly and (if)-is of-it not he cuts the finger off that he the
menschen bezzeri. Unt daz ist vil bezzer, den vinger verlieren
man better And that is much better the finger lose
alleine unt den menschen behalten, denne beidiu der vinger
alone and the man keep than both the finger
unde der mensche verderbe. Wêger ist ein schade denne zwêne,
and the man perish Better is one harm than two
unt sunderbâr dâ der eine vil mêr wêre denne der ander.
and especially where the one much more were than the other
Unt ouch sol man wizzen, daz der vinger unt diu hant unt
And also shall one know that the finger and the hand and
ein ieclich nâtiurlîchez gelit den menschen, des ez ein gelit
an every natural limb the man whose it a limb
ist, vil lieber hât denne ez sich selben unt sich gerne und
is much dearer has than it it self and itself gladly and
unbedâht frœlîchen gibet in die nôt unt in den schaden für
unthinking joyfully gives into the need and into the harm for
den menschen. Ich spriche sicherlîchen daz in der wârheit, daz
the man I say surely that in the truth that

diz gelit sich selben alzemâle nihtes niht minnet denne dur
this limb it self wholly nothing at-all loves but for
daz unt in dem ez ein gelit ist. Dar umbe wêri vil billîchen
that and in which it a limb is There for were much rightly
unt nâtiurlîchen, wêri uns reht, daz wir uns selben nihtes niht
and naturally were to-us right that we us self nothing at-all
minnôtin denne dur got und in gote; unt wêri daz alsô, sô
loved but for God and in God and were that so so
wêre uns allez daz lîhte unt ein wunne, daz got von uns unt
were to-us all that light and a bliss which God from us and
in uns wölte; sunderlîchen sô wir wizzen unt gewis wêrin,
in us would especially when we know and sure were
daz got ungelîche minre mac gelîden enheinen gebresten
that God incomparably less may suffer any failing
noch schaden, ob er niht ein vil grœzer gemach dar inne
nor harm if he not a much greater ease there in
wisti unt meinti. Wêrlîchen, der des gote niht getrûweti,
knew and intended Truly who of-that God not trusted
daz ist alze billîchen, daz er leit unt ungemach habe.
that is all-too right that he sorrow and discomfort have
Noch ist ein ander trôst. Sant Paulus sprichet, daz got alle
Still is an other comfort Saint Paul says that God all
die kestiget, die er ze süne minnet unt enpfâhet. Ez behœret
those chastises whom he as sons loves and receives It belongs
dar zuo, der sun sî, daz der ouch lîde. Wan gotes sun in der
there to who son be that he also suffer For God's son in the
êwikeit in der gotheit niht lîden mohte, dar umbe sante in
eternity in the godhead not suffer might there for sent him
der himelsche vater in die zît, daz er mensche würde unt
the heavenly father into the time that he man became and
lîden möhte. Wilt dû denne gotes sun wesen unt wilt doch
suffer might (If)-wilt thou then God's son be and wilt yet

niht lîden, sô hâst dû gar unreht. An der wîsheit buoche
not suffer so hast thou wholly wrong In the wisdom's book
stêt beschriben, daz got brüevet unde versuochet, wer gereht
stands written that God proves and tests who just
sî, als man golt brüevet unde brennet in einem eitoven. Ez
be as one gold proves and burns in a furnace It
ist ein zeichen, daz der künic oder ein fürste einem ritter wol
is a sign that the king or a prince a knight well
getriuwet, sô er in sendet an den vorstrît. Ich hân gesehen
trusts when he him sends into the vanguard I have seen
einen herren, der etwenne, sô er hâte einen ze hûsgesinde
a lord who sometimes when he had one into household
enpfangen, daz er den sante ûz bî naht unt reit in denne
received that he him sent out by night and rode him then
selber an unt vaht mit im; unt ez beschach einest, daz er
self on and fought with him and it happened once that he
bî nâch getœdet wart von einem, den er alsô versuochen
by near killed was by one whom he so test
wolte, unt den kneht hâte er dar nâch liep unt wert.
would and the servant had he there after dear and worthy
Man liset, daz sant Antonius in der wüesti sunderlîchen einest
One reads that saint Anthony in the desert especially once
grœzlîchen in lîden was von den bœsen geisten, unde dô er
greatly in suffering was from the evil spirits and when he
überwunden hête sîn leit, dô erschein ime ouch unser herre
overcome had his sorrow then appeared to-him also our lord
ûzerlîchen unt frœlîchen. Dô sprach der heilig man 'ach,
outwardly and joyfully Then spoke the holy man ah
herre, wâ wêre dû ietzent, dô ich in sô grôzer nôt was?'
lord where wert thou just-now when I in so great need was
Dô sprach unser herre 'ich was alhie, als ich nû bin, aber
Then spoke our lord I was here as I now am but

ich wolte unt mich luste ze schouwenne, wie frum daz dû
I would and me lusted to behold how valiant that thou
wêrist.' Silber unt golt ist wol reine, doch sô man dar ûz
wert Silver and gold is well pure yet when one there out
wil machen ein vaz, dar ûz der künic trinken sol, sô brennet
will make a vessel there out the king drink shall so burns
man daz für baz mêr denne ein anderz. Dar umbe ist
one that on further more than an other There for is
von den aposteln geschriben, daz sie sich fröuten, daz sie
of the apostles written that they themselves rejoiced that they
wirdic wâren versmêhede unt ungemach ze lîdenne dur got.
worthy were contempt and discomfort to suffer for God
Aber gotes sun von nâtûre wolte von gnâden mensche werden,
But God's son by nature would by grace man become
daz er dur dich lîden möhte, unt dû wilt gotes sun werden
that he for thee suffer might and thou wilt God's son become
unt niht mensche, daz dû niht mügest noch dürfest lîden
and not man that thou not mayest nor needest suffer
dur got noch durch dich selben. Ouch wölte der mensche
for God nor for thee self Also would the man
wizzen unt gedenken, wie sô grôze fröude in der wârheit
know and think how so great joy in the truth
got selbe nâch sîner wîse und alle engele unt alle, die got
God self after his manner and all angels and all who God
wizzent unt minnent, haben in gedult des menschen. Sô
know and love have in patience of-the man When
er dur got lîdet leit und ungemach unt schaden, wêrlîchen,
he for God suffers sorrow and discomfort and harm truly
er solte sich dur daz alleine billich trœsten. Ein mensche
he should himself for that alone rightly comfort A man
gît doch sîn guot oder lîdet ungemach umbe daz er sînen
gives yet his goods or suffers discomfort for that he his

friunt erfröuwen müge unt ime ein liebi bewîsen: noch mê
friend gladden may and to-him a love show still more
sol man gedenken unt hêti ein mensche einen friunt, der
shall one think and had a man a friend who
dur sînen willen in lîden wêre, in leit unt in ungemache,
for his will in suffering were in sorrow and in discomfort
sicherlîchen ez wêri gar billîchen, daz er bî ime wêre unt in
surely it were wholly right that he by him were and him
trôste mit sîn selbes gegenwürtikeit unt mit trôste, den er
comforted with his self's presence and with comfort which he
im tuon möhte. Dâ von sprichet unser herre in dem salter
to-him do might There from says our lord in the psalter
von eim guoten menschen, daz er mit im ist in dem lîdenne.
of a good man that he with him is in the suffering
Bî dem worte mac man nemen siben lêre unt trœste.
By the word may one take seven teachings and comforts
Zuo dem êrsten, daz sant Augustînus sprichet, daz diu gedult
At the first what saint Augustine says that the patience
in lîdenne dur got ist bezzer, hœher unt edeler denne allez
in suffering for God is better higher and nobler than all
daz, daz man dem menschen wider sînen willen benemen mac;
that which one to-the man against his will take-away may
daz ist allez ûzerlîchez guot. Weiz got, man vindet nieman
that is all outward good Knows God one finds no-one
sô rîchen, der dise welt minnet, der niht willeclîchen unt
so rich who this world loves who not willingly and
gerne wölte lîden grôzen smerzen unde leit, ouch vil lange,
gladly would suffer great pain and sorrow also very long
daz er dar nâch möhte gewaltiger herre sîn aller dirre welte.
that he there after might mighty lord be of-all this world

Zuo dem andern mâle nime ich niht alleine bî dem worte,
At the second time take I not alone by the word
daz got sprichet, daz er ist mit dem menschen in lîdenne,
that God says that he is with the man in suffering
sunder ich nime ez in dem worte unt spriche alsô: ist
but I take it in the word and say thus (if)-is
got mit mir in lîdenne, waz wil ich denne mê und anderz?
God with me in suffering what will I then more and other
ich wil doch niht anders, ich enwil niht mê denne got,
I will yet nothing else I will not more than God
ob mir reht ist. Ez sprichet sant Augustînus: der ist gar
if to-me right is It says saint Augustine he is very
gîtic unt unwîse, den niht benüeget an got. Wie mac
greedy and unwise whom not suffices in God How may
den menschen benüegen an gotes gâben ûzerlîchen oder
the man suffice in God's gifts outward or
innerlîchen, sô in niht benüeget an got selben? Dar umbe
inward when him not suffices in God self There for
sprichet er anderswâ: herre, wîsest dû uns von dir, sô
says he elsewhere lord (if)-directest thou us from thee so
gip uns einen andern dich, wan wir wellen niht wan dich.
give us an other thee for we will nothing but thee
Dar umbe stêt geschriben in der wîsheit buoche 'mit gote
There for stands written in the wisdom's book with God
der êwigen wîsheit sint mir komen zemâle mit einander allez
the eternal wisdom are to-me come wholly with each-other all
guot.' Daz meinet nâch einem sinne, daz niht guot ist noch
good That means after one sense that nothing good is nor
mac guot gesîn waz kumet âne got, und allez, daz kumet
may good be what comes without God and all that comes
mit gote, daz ist guot unt dâ von alleine guot, wan ez mit
with God that is good and there from alone good for it with

gote kumet. Ich wil gotes geswîgen, unt benême man allen
God comes I will of-God be-silent and should-take one from-all
crêatûren unt aller der welte daz wesen, daz got gît, sô
creatures and from-all the world the being which God gives so
beliben sie blôz niht, ungenême, unwert unt hezzelich. Unde
remained they bare nothing unpleasant worthless and hateful And
vil anders edeles sinnes hêt daz wort inne, wie allez guot
much other noble sense has the word within how all good
kumet mit gote, daz nû ze lange würde ze sprechenne. Ez
comes with God which now too long would-become to speak It
sprichet unser herre 'ich bin mit dem menschen in lîdenne.'
says our lord I am with the man in suffering
Dar umbe sprichet sant Bernhart: herre, bist dû mit uns in
There for says saint Bernard lord (if)-art thou with us in
lîdenne, sô gip mir ze lîdenne alle zît umbe daz dû alle zît
suffering so give me to suffer all time for that thou all time
bî mir unt mit mir sîest, daz ich alle zît dich haben müge.
by me and with me be that I all time thee have may
Zuo dem dritten mâle sprich ich, daz got mit uns ist in
At the third time say I that God with us is in
lîdenne, daz ist, daz er mit uns lîdet selbe. Wêrlich, der
suffering that is that he with us suffers self Truly who
wârheit bekennet, der weiz, daz ich wâr spriche. Got der
truth knows he knows that I truth speak God he
lîdet mit dem menschen, jâ unglîch mê nâch sîner wîse,
suffers with the man yea incomparably more after his manner
denne der dâ lîdet. der dur in lîdet. Nû sprich ich: wil
than he there suffers who for him suffers Now say I (if)-will
denne got selbe lîden, sô sol ich gar billîchen lîden; wan
then God self suffer so shall I very rightly suffer for
ist mir reht, sô wil ich, daz got wil. Ich bite alle tage, unt
(if)-is to-me right so will I what God wills I pray all days and

got heizet mich biten ‘herre, dîn wille werde’, unt doch sô
God bids me pray lord thy will become and yet when
got wil lîden, sô wil ich von lîden clagen, unt dem ist gar
God will suffering so will I of suffering lament and that is very
unreht. Ouch sprich ich sicherlîchen, daz got sô gerne mit
wrong Also say I surely that God so gladly with
uns unt dur uns lîdet, sô wir alleine dur got lîden, daz er
us and for us suffers when we alone for God suffer that he
lîdet sunder lîdenne. Lîden ist im sô wunneclich, daz lîden
suffers without suffering Suffering is to-him so blissful that suffering
ist im niht lîden. Unt dar umbe, wêre uns reht, sô wêre
is to-him not suffering And there for were to-us right so were
ouch uns lîden niht lîden, ez wêre uns ein wunne unt trôst.
also to-us suffering not suffering it were to-us a bliss and comfort
Aber zuo dem vierden mâle sprich ich, daz friundes
But at the fourth time say I that a-friend's
mitlîden minret nâtiurlîche diz lîden. Mac mich denne
fellow-suffering lessens naturally this suffering (If)-may me then
getrœsten eines menschen lîden, daz ez mit mir hêt, sô
comfort a man's suffering that he with me has so
sol mich vil mê trœsten gotes mitlîden.
shall me much more comfort God's fellow-suffering
Zuo dem fünften mâle sprich ich: unt wölte ich denne lîden
At the fifth time say I and would I then suffer
mit einem menschen, den ich minne unt der mich minnet,
with a man whom I love and who me loves
sô sol ouch ich gerne unt gar billîchen mit gote lîden, der
so shall also I gladly and very rightly with God suffer who
dâ lîdet unt dur mich lîdet von minne, die er zuo mir hât.
there suffers and for me suffers from love which he to me has

Noch sprich ich zuo dem sehsten mâle: ist, daz got vor
Still say I at the sixth time (if)-is that God before
lîdet ê denne ich lîde, unt lîde ich dur got, gewêrlîchen,
suffers before than I suffer and (if)-suffer I for God truly
sô wirt mir lîhte ein trôst unt ein fröude allez mîn lîden,
so becomes to-me easily a comfort and a joy all my suffering
wie grôz unt manicvaltic daz ist. Ez ist wâr nâtiurlîche, sô
however great and manifold that is It is true naturally when
der mensche tuot ein werc dur ein andern, sô ist der, dur
the man does a work for an other so is he for
den er daz tuot, nêher sînem herzen, unt daz er tuot, ist
whom he that does nearer to-his heart and what he does is
verrer von sînem herzen unt rüeret daz herze niemer denne
farther from his heart and touches the heart never but
durch den, dar umbe und dur daz er ez tuot. Der dâ
through that there for and for which he it does Who there
bûwet unt houwet daz holz unde den stein, dar umbe unt
builds and hews the wood and the stone there for and
dur daz er ein hûs mache für die hitze des sumers unt
for that he a house make against the heat of-the summer and
wider frost des winters, des herze ist zuo dem êrsten unt
against frost of-the winter his heart is to the first and
alzemâle datz hûs unt gehouwete niemer den stein noch têti
wholly at-the house and hewed never the stone nor did
die arbeit denne dur daz hûs. Nû sehen wir wol, sô der
the toil but for the house Now see we well when the
sieche mensche trinket den süezen wîn, sô dunket in unt
sick man drinks the sweet wine so seems to-him and
sprichet, daz er bitter sî, unt ist wâr, wan der wîn verliuret
says that it bitter be and is true for the wine loses
alle sîne süezikeit in der bitterkeit der zungen ûzzerlîche
all its sweetness in the bitterness of-the tongue outwardly

ê denne der wîn kome inwendic, dâ diu sêle bekennet
before than the wine come inward where the soul knows
unde brüevet den smak. Alsô ist ungelîch mê unde wêrlîche,
and judges the taste So is incomparably more and truly
sô der mensche würket alliu sîniu werc dur got, sô ist dâ
when the man works all his works for God so is there
got daz mitele unt daz nêhste der sêle unt mac niht die
God the means and the nearest to-the soul and may nothing the
sêle unt daz herze des menschen rüeren, daz niht verliere
soul and the heart of-the man touch what not lose
durch got unt dur gotes süezikeit, unt muoz von nôt
through God and through God's sweetness and must of necessity
verlieren sîn bitterkeit unt lûter süez werden, ê denne
lose its bitterness and pure sweet become before than
ez des menschen herze iemer müge bewegen noch berüeren.
it the man's heart ever may move or touch
Die meister sprechent, daz under dem himele sî fiur vil al
The masters say that under the heaven be fire much all
umbe unt umbe, unt dar umbe mac kein regen noch wint
around and around and there for may no rain nor wind
noch allerlei sturm noch ungewitter von unden dem himele
nor any-kind storm nor tempest from below the heaven
sô nâhe komen, daz in ouch niht rüeren müge: ez wirt
so near come that it also at-all touch may it becomes
allez verbrant unde verderbet von hitze des fiurs, ê denne
all burned and destroyed by heat of-the fire before than
ez an den himel kome. Alsô sprich ich, allez daz man lîdet
it to the heaven come So say I all that one suffers
unt würket durch got daz wirt allez süez in gotes süezikeit,
and works for God that becomes all sweet in God's sweetness
ê denne ez zuo des menschen herzen kome, der durch got
before than it to the man's heart come who for God

alleine würket unde lîdet. Wan daz meinet daz wort, daz
alone works and suffers For that means the word which
man sprichet dur got, wan ez kumet an daz herze niemer
one says for God for it comes to the heart never
denne dur gotes süezikeit, wan ez ouch wirt verbrant von
but through God's sweetness for it also becomes burned by
dem hitzigen fiure der götlîchen minne, diu des guoten
the hot fire of-the divine love which the good
menschen herze al umbe in sich beslozzen hêt. Nû mac man
man's heart all around in itself enclosed has Now may one
offenlîche bekennen, wie billîchen unt in vil wîse ein guoter
openly know how rightly and in many manners a good
mensche allenthalben getrœstet wirt in lîdenne, an leit unde
man everywhere comforted becomes in suffering in sorrow and
würkende. Ein wîse ist, ob er lîdet unde würket durch got,
working One manner is if he suffers and works for God
ein ander wîse, ob er ist in götlîcher minne. Ouch sol der
an other manner if he is in divine love Also shall the
mensche bekennen unde wizzen, ob er alliu sîniu werc dur
man know and understand whether he all his works for
got würket; wan sicherlich, wâ der mensche leidic sunder
God works for surely wherever the man sorrowful without
trôst sich vindet, alsô verre was sîn werc niht dur got
comfort himself finds so far was his work not for God
alleine. Sich, unt alsô verre ist er niht in gotlîcher minne. Ez
alone See and so far is he not in divine love It
sprichet künic Dâvît 'ein fiur kumet mit gote unt von gote,
says king David a fire comes with God and from God
daz brennet al umb unt umbe allez, daz got wider ime vindet
which burns all around and around all that God against him finds
unt ime ungelîch ist.' Daz ist leit, untrôst unt bitterkeit.
and to-him unlike is That is sorrow discomfort and bitterness

Noch ist daz sibende in dem worte: daz got mit uns ist in
Still is the seventh in the word that God with us is in
lîdenne unde mitelîdet mit uns, daz uns ouch krefteclîchen
suffering and fellow-suffers with us that us also strongly
sol trœsten gotes eigenschaft dâ von, daz er daz lûter ein
shall comfort God's property there from that he the pure one
ist sunder alle zuovallende mengi underscheides, ouch in
is without all chancing multitude of-distinction also in
gedenken, daz allez, daz in im ist, got selbe ist. Unt wan daz
thought that all that in him is God self is And since that
wâr ist, sô spriche ich, allez, daz der guot mensche lîdet dur
true is so say I all that the good man suffers for
got, daz lîdet er in gote unde got ist mit lîden in lîdenne
God that suffers he in God and God is with suffering in suffering
mîn lîden in got, mîn lîden got. Wie mac mir denne lîden
my suffering in God my suffering God How may to-me then suffering
leit gesîn, sô lîden unt leit leit verliuret? Leit mîn in
sorrow be when suffering and sorrow sorrow loses Sorrow mine in
gote ist: got ist mîn leit. Wêrlîchen, als got wârheit ist, wâ
God is God is my sorrow Truly as God truth is where
ich vinde wârheit, dâ vinde ich mînen got die wârheit. Alsô
I find truth there find I my God the truth So
ouch minre noch mê, sô ich vinde lûter lîden dur got und
also less nor more when I find pure suffering for God and
in gote, dâ vinde ich got mîn lîden. Wer daz niht bekennet,
in God there find I God my suffering Who that not knows
der clage sîne blintheit, niht mich noch die götlîchen wârheit.
he lament his blindness not me nor the divine truth
Minneclîche unt milteclîche sô lîdent dur got, sît daz ez
Lovingly and generously so suffer for God since that it
sô grœzlîchen nütze ist unt sêleclîchen, als ouch unser herre
so greatly useful is and blessedly as also our lord

sprichet ‘sêlic sint, die dâ lîdent dur die gerehtikeit.’
says blessed are those-who there suffer for the justice
Wie mac der guot minnende got daz lîden, daz sîn friunde,
How may the good loving God that suffer that his friends
guot liute, niht alle zît âne underlâz in lîden sint? Hêti
good people not all time without ceasing in suffering are Had
ein mensche einen friunt, der kurze tage lîden möhte zuo
a man a friend who short days suffer might to
grôzem nutze unt êre unt gemach verdienen unde lange
great use and honor and ease earn and long
besitzen, wölte er daz hindern oder wêre daz sîn wille, daz
possess would he that hinder or were that his will that
ez von ieman gehindert würde, man sprêche niht, daz er
it by anyone hindered were one would-say not that he
sîn friunt wêre unt daz er in ouch liep hêti. Dar umbe vil
his friend were and that he him also dear had There for very
lîhte got möhte in keine wîse lîden, daz sîn friunde, guot
likely God might in no manner suffer that his friends good
liute, iemer sunder lîden wêren, ob sie niht lîden möhtin
people ever without suffering were if they not suffer might
unt lîdende lîden. Alliu güeti des ûzerlîchen lîdennes kumet
and suffering suffer All goodness of-the outward suffering comes
unt fliuzet von güeti des willen, als ich vor geschriben hân.
and flows from goodness of-the will as I before written have
Unt dar umbe, allez daz der guot mensche lîden wölte unt
And there for all that the good man suffer would and
bereit ist unt begeret ze lîdenne dur got, daz lîdet er vor
ready is and desires to suffer for God that suffers he before
gotes angesihte durch got unt in gote. Künic Dâvît sprichet
God's sight for God and in God King David says
in dem salter ‘ich bin bereit in allem ungemache unt mîn
in the psalter I am ready in all discomfort and my

smerze ist mir alle zît gegenwürtic in angesihte mînes
pain is to-me all time present in sight of-my
herzen.' Sant Jeronimus sprichet, daz ein reine vaz, daz wol
heart Saint Jerome says that a pure vessel which well
gewürket ist unt guot ist, dar ûz unt dâ von ze machenne
worked is and good is there out and there from to make
waz man sol unt wil, hât in sich beslozzen alleine allez, daz
what one shall and will has in itself enclosed alone all that
man dâ von gewürken mac, ouch ûzerlîchen ie nieman dâ
one there from work may also outwardly ever no-one there
von iht würke. Ouch hân ich dâ vor geschriben, daz
from anything work Also have I there before written that
der stein niht minre swêre ist, sô er nider lît ûzerlîche
the stone not less heavy is when it down lies outwardly
ûf der erden, alliu sîn swêre diu ist volkomen ûf dem,
on the earth all his heaviness that is perfect upon that
daz er nider neiget unt bereit ist in sich selben nider ze
that he down inclines and ready is in it self down to
vallenne. Und alsô hân ich ouch dâ obnân gesprochen, daz
fall And so have I also there above spoken that
der guot mensche hât ietzent getân in himelrîche unt in
the good man has now done in heaven and in
ertrîche allez, daz er tuon wolte, ouch gelîche dar an gote.
earth all that he do would also alike there in to-God
Nû mac man ouch bekennen unt wizzen gropheit der
Now may one also know and understand coarseness of-the
liuten, die gemeinlîchen wunder hât, sô sie sehent guot
people who commonly wonder have when they see good
liute smerzen lîden unt ungemach, unde vallent inen vil
people pains suffer and discomfort and fall to-them very
dike gedenke în unt ein wân, daz ez sî dur ir heimlîchen
often thoughts in and a fancy that it be for their secret

sünde, unde sprechent ouch underwîlent ‘ach, ich wânde, daz
sins and say also sometimes ah I supposed that
der mensche gar guot wêre! wie kumet daz, daz er sô grôz
the man very good were how comes that that he so great
leit unt ungemach lîdet, unt ich wânde, ime gebreste niut!’
sorrow and discomfort suffers and I supposed to-him lacked nothing
Unt sicherlîchen, wêre ez leit unt ungemach unt wêre ez
And surely were it sorrow and discomfort and were it
in denne leit und ungelücke, daz sie lîdent, sô enwêren
to-them then sorrow and misfortune that they suffer so were
sie niht guot noch âne sünde. Sint sie aber guot, sô ist
they not good nor without sin (If)-are they however good so is
in daz lîden niht leit noch ungelücke unt ungemach:
to-them the suffering not sorrow nor misfortune and discomfort
ez ist in ein grôz gelücke unde sêlikeit. Got sprichet
it is to-them a great fortune and blessedness God says
‘sêlic sint alle, die dâ lîdent dur got die gerehtikeit.’
blessed are all those-who there suffer for God the justice
Dar umbe sprichet daz buoch der wîsheit, daz der gerehten
There for says the book of-the wisdom that of-the just
sêlen sint gote in sîner hant. Aber tumme liute dunket unt
souls are to-God in his hand But foolish people seems and
wênent, daz sie sterbent; doch sint sie in friden, in wunne
suppose that they die yet are they in peace in bliss
unt sêlikeit. Sant Paulus sprichet, dâ er schrîbet, wie
and blessedness Saint Paul says where he writes how
vil der heiligen habent geliten manicvaltic grôze pîne, unt
many of-the saints have suffered manifold great pain and
sprichet denne, daz diu welt des unwirdic was. Unde daz wort
says then that the world of-it unworthy was And the word
hât inne, der ime rehte tuon wil, drîerhant sinne. Einer ist,
has within who it rightly do will threefold sense One is

daz disiu welt ist unwirdic vil guoter liuten gegenwürtikeit.
that this world is unworthy of-many good people's presence
Ein ander sin ist bezzer unt sprichet, daz güeti ist diser
An other sense is better and says that goodness is to-this
welt unmêre unt unwert; got ist alleine wert, dar umbe
world displeasing and worthless God is alone worthy there for
sint sie gote wert unt gotes wert. Der dritte sin ist, den
are they to-God worthy and of-God worthy The third sense is which
ich nû meine, unt wil sprechen, daz disiu welt, daz sint die
I now mean and will speak that this world that are the
liute, die dise weltlicheit minnent, sint des unwert, daz sie
people who this worldliness love are of-it unworthy that they
leit unt ungemach lîdent durch got. Dâ von ist geschriben,
sorrow and discomfort suffer for God There from is written
daz die heiligen apostel sich des fröuten, daz sie wirdic
that the holy apostles themselves of-it rejoiced that they worthy
wâren, daz sie durch gotes namen pîne unt ungemach littin.
were that they for God's name pain and discomfort suffered
Nû sî der rede genuoge, wan ich in dem dritten teile
Now be of-the discourse enough for I in the third part
des buoches sprechen wil mangerleie trôst, wie daz sich
of-the book speak will manifold comfort how that himself
ouch trœsten sol und mac ein guoter mensche an sînem
also comfort shall and may a good man in his
leide, wan man daz ouch vindet an den werken, niht
sorrow for one that also finds in the works not
alleine an den worten guoter unt wîser menschen.
alone in the words of-good and wise men

3

PART THREE

Examples of the wise in suffering: David forbids a friend to kill the man who cursed him, since God may mean his good by it; a sufferer declines a holy father's offer to pray his trouble away and asks for grace to bear it wisely; a sick man will not pray for health, since God sends nothing but for his best, and to ask so little is like walking two hundred miles to beg the pope for a bean. To be moved by passing things marks a sick heart; Socrates and the Maccabean mother show virtue bearing all, and merchants and knights risk all for little. Eckhart answers critics with Augustine and a staff that looks bent in water, and defends teaching the unlearned.

Man vindet in der künige buoche, daz einer dem künige Dâvîde
One finds in the kings' book that one the king David
fluohte unt ime grôz versmêhte bôt. Dô seite einer Dâvîdes
cursed and to-him great contempt offered Then said one of-David's
friunde, daz er den bœsen hunt ze tôt slahen wölte. Dô sprach
friends that he the evil dog to death slay would Then spoke
der künic 'mit nihten, niht tuo man ime kein leit, wan vil
the king by no-means not do one to-him any harm for very
lîhte got wil unt sol mir durch dis versmêhte mîn bestez tuon.'
likely God will and shall to-me through this contempt my best do
Unt man liset ouch an der altvater buoche, daz ein mensche
And one reads also in the fathers' book that a man
clagte eime heiligen vater, daz er was in lîdenne. Dô seite
lamented to-a holy father that he was in suffering Then said
der vater 'wilt dû, sun, daz ich got bite, daz er dir daz
the father wilt thou son that I God pray that he from-thee that
beneme?' Dô sprach der ander 'nein, vater, wan ez ist mir
take Then spoke the other no father for it is to-me

nütze, daz bekenne ich wol, sunder bite got, daz er mir sîne
useful that know I well but pray God that he to-me his
genâde verlîhe, daz ich ez wîslîchen lîde unt gedulteclîchen.'
grace grant that I it wisely suffer and patiently
Man frâgte einen siechen menschen, war umbe er got niht
One asked a sick man where fore he God not
bête umbe daz er in gesunt machôti? Dô seite der mensche,
prayed for that he him healthy should-make Then said the man
daz wölte er ungerne tuon, durch drîe sachen. Diu ein was,
that would he unwillingly do for three causes The one was
wan er wolte daz wizzen unt gewis sîn, daz der minneclîche
for he would that know and sure be that the loving
got niemer vermöhte daz gelîden, daz er siech wêre, denne dur
God never could that suffer that he sick were unless for
sîn aller bestez. Ein ander sache was, wan ist der mensche
his all best An other cause was for (if)-is the man
guot, sô wil er allez daz got wil unt niht, daz got welle daz
good so will he all that God wills and not that God will what
der mensche wil, wan dem wêre gar unrehte. Unt dar umbe
the man wills for that were wholly wrong And there for
sô wil er, daz ich siech sî, wan wölte er sîn niht, sô enwêre
so will he that I sick be for would he it not so were
ez ouch niht, sô sol ich ouch niht wünschen gesunt sîn.
it also not so shall I also not wish healthy to-be
Sunder zwîvel, möhte daz gesîn, daz mich got gesunt machôti
Without doubt might that be that me God healthy made
sunder sînen willen, mir wêre unwert und unmêre, daz er
without his will to-me were worthless and displeasing that he
mich gesunt macheti. Lîden wellen kumet von minne, niht
me healthy made Suffering to-will comes from love not
wellen kumet von unminne. Vil lieber, bezzer unt nützer
to-will comes from unlove Much dearer better and more-useful

ist mir, daz mich got minne unt ich ouch siech sî, denne
is to-me that me God love and I also sick be than
ob ich gesunt an dem lîbe wêre unt mich got niht minnôti.
if I healthy in the body were and me God not loved
Daz got minnet daz ist iht, waz got niht minnet daz ist
What God loves that is something what God not loves that is
niht. Ez sprichet in dem buoche der wîsheit ‘ouch hât daz
nothing It says in the book of-the wisdom also has that
diu wârheit inne, daz allez daz got wil, in dem selben unt
the truth within that all that God wills in the same and
von dem selben daz ez got wil, sô ist ez guot.’ Wêrlîchen,
from the same that it God wills so is it good Truly
menschlîchen ze sprechenne, mir wêre lieber, daz mich ein
humanly to speak to-me were dearer that me a
rîcher unt gewaltiger mensche, ein künic, minnôti unt mich
rich and mighty man a king loved and me
doch ein wîle lieze âne gâbe, denne ob er mir alzehant hieze
yet a while left without gift than if he to-me at-once bade
etwaz geben unde mich niht minnôti: sô er von minne mir
something give and me not loved when he from love to-me
nû zemâle niht gêbe unt mir aber dar umb nû niht gêbe,
now wholly nothing gave and to-me however there for now nothing gave
daz er mich dar nâch grœzlîcher unde rîlîcher begâben wölte.
that he me there after more-greatly and more-richly endow would
Noch setze ich, daz der mensche, der mich dâ minnet unt
Still set I that the man who me there loves and
mir nû niht engît, sich niht bedenket mir noch ze gebenne,
to-me now not gives himself not bethinks to-me yet to give
unt lîhte bedenket er sich her nâch baz unde gît mir; ich
and likely bethinks he himself here after better and gives to-me I
sol gedulteclîchen beiten, sunderlîchen als alle sîne gâben von
shall patiently wait especially as all his gifts from

genâden sint unverdienet. Ouch sicherlich, wes minne ich
grace are unearned Also surely whose love I
niht enahte unt mîn wille sînem willen wider ist, alleine daz
not heed and my will to-his will against is only that
ich sîne gâbe hêti, sô ist daz gar billîchen, daz mir der niht
I his gift had so is that very right that to-me he not
engebe unde mich ouch hazze unt lâze mich in unsêlden.
give and me also hate and leave me in misfortune
Diu dritte sache, war umbe mir unwert und unmêre wêre,
The third cause where fore to-me worthless and displeasing were
daz ich got welle biten umbe daz er mich gesunt mache,
that I God would pray for that he me healthy make
wan ich enwil noch ensol den rîchen minneclîchen milten got
for I will nor shall the rich loving generous God
umbe sô cleine biten. Wêre, daz ich zuo dem bâpste kême
for so small pray Were that I to the pope came
hundert oder zwô hundert mîle, unt sô ich denne kême für
hundred or two hundred miles and when I then came before
in unt sprêche ‘ô herre, heiliger vater, ich bin komen wol
him and spoke o lord holy father I am come well
zwei hundert mîle swêres weges mit grôzer koste unt bite
two hundred miles of-heavy way with great cost and ask
iuch, dar umb ich ouch her zuo iu komen bin, daz ir mir
you there for I also here to you come am that you to-me
gebent eine bônen’, wêrlîchen, er selber unt ouch wer daz
give a bean truly he self and also whoever that
vernême, sprêchi ouch von reht, daz ich ein grôzer tôre wêre.
heard would-say also by right that I a great fool were
Nû ist daz ein gewis wârheit, daz ich spriche, daz allez guot,
Now is that a sure truth that I say that all good
ouch alle crêatûre, gegen gote ist minre denne ein bône. Dar
also all creatures against God is less than a bean There

umbe versmâhti mir billîchen, ob ich ein wîser unde guoter
for would-displease to-me rightly if I a wise and good
mensche wêre, daz ich wölte biten umbe daz ich gesunt würde.
man were that I would pray for that I healthy became
Bî diser rede spriche ich ouch, daz ist eines kranken
By this discourse say I also that is of-a sick
herzen zeichen, sô ein mensche frô oder leidic wirt
heart sign when a man glad or sorrowful becomes
umbe zerganclîchiu dinc diser welte. Man solte sich des
about transitory things of-this world One should himself of-that
sêre schamen von herzen vor gote unde sînen engelen
greatly shame from heart before God and his angels
unt vor den liuten, daz man des iemer gewar würde.
and before the people that one of-that ever aware became
Man schamet sich sô vaste eines gebresten an dem antlüte,
One shames himself so firmly of-a failing in the face
daz die liute sehent ûzerlîchen. Waz wil ich langer reden?
which the people see outwardly What will I longer speak
diu buoch der alten ê unde der niuwen und ouch der
the books of-the old law and of-the new and also of-the
heiligen unt ouch der heidenen sint des vol, wie frume
saints and also of-the heathens are of-it full how valiant
liute dur got unt ouch dur nâtiurlîche tugende ir leben
people for God and also for natural virtues their life
hânt gegeben unt ir selbes willeclîchen verzigen.
have given and their self willingly renounced
Ein heiden Socrates sprichet, daz tugende machent
A heathen Socrates says that virtues make
unmüglîchiu dinc müglich unt ouch lîht unt süeze. Und
impossible things possible and also easy and sweet And
ouch enwil ich des niht vergezzen, daz diu sêlic frouwe, von
also will I of-it not forget that the blessed lady of

der sprichet daz buoch Machabeorum, diu ûf einen tac vor
whom speaks the book of-the-Maccabees who on one day before
iren ougen sach wunderlîchiu dinc und ouch unmenschlîchiu
her eyes saw wondrous things and also inhuman
ze hœren von grôzer pîne, die man iren siben sünen an
to hear of great pain which one to-her seven sons on
tet, unde daz frœlîchen an sach unt enthielt sie unt mante
did and that joyfully on saw and held them and exhorted
sie sunderlîchen alle dar zuo, daz sie niht erschrêken unde
them especially all there to that they not took-fright and
willeclîchen sêle unt lîp ûf gêben dur gotes gerehtikeit.
willingly soul and body up gave for God's justice
Noch wil ich mê sprechen zwei wort, unde sî denne genuoc.
Still will I more speak two words and be then enough
Einez ist daz. Wêrlîchen, ein guot götlîcher mensche solte
One is this Truly a good divine man should
sich gar übele unt ouch grœzlîchen schamen, daz in iemer
himself very badly and also greatly shame that him ever
leit bewegti, sô wir daz sehen, daz der koufman dur gewin
sorrow moved when we that see that the merchant for gain
eins kleinen geltes unt ouch ûf ein ungewis sô verre landes,
of-a small money and also on an uncertainty so far of-land
sô pînlîche wege, berc unt tal, wiltnüsse unt mer, rouber,
so painful ways mountain and valley wildernesses and sea robbers
morder lîbes unt guotes dicke vert unde lîdet grôzen gebresten
murderers of-body and of-goods often fares and suffers great lack
an der spîse unt trankes, slâfes unt anders gemaches, unde
in the food and drink of-sleep and other comfort and
doch alles des gerne vergizzet dur sô cleinen unt ungewissen
yet of-all that gladly forgets for so small and uncertain
nutz. Ein ritter in einem strîte der wâget guot, lîp unt sêle
profit A knight in a battle he risks goods body and soul

dur zerganclîche unt ein kurze êre, unt uns dunket sô grôz,
for transitory and a short honor and to-us seems so great
daz wir ein cleine lîden dur got, dur die êwigen sêlikeit.
that we a little suffer for God for the eternal blessedness
Daz ander wort, daz ich meine, daz maniger grop mensche
The other word that I mean that many-a coarse man
sol sprechen, daz vil wort, diu ich an disem buoche unt
shall say that many words which I in this book and
ouch anderswâ hân beschriben, niht wâr sîen, den antwürte
also elsewhere have written not true are to-him answer
ich alsô, daz sant Augustînus sprichet in dem êrsten buoche
I thus what saint Augustine says in the first book
sîner bîhte. Er sprichet, daz got allez, daz noch künftic
of-his confession He says that God all that yet future
ist ouch über tûsent unt tûsent jâr (ob diu welt sô lange
is also over thousand and thousand years if the world so long
sol weren), hât ietze gemachet und allez, daz vergangen ist
shall last has now made and all that past is
mangez tûsent jâr, sol er noch hiute machen. Waz mac ich,
many-a thousand years shall he still today make What can I
ob ieman daz niht verstât? Unt sprichet aber anderswâ, daz
if anyone that not understands And says however elsewhere that
sich der mensche alze blôzlîchen minnet, der dâ ander liute
himself the man all-too barely loves who there other people
blenden wil dar umbe, daz sîn blintheit verborgen wese. Mir
blind will there for that his blindness hidden be To-me
benüeget, daz in mir unt in gote wâr sî daz ich spriche unt
suffices that in me and in God true be what I speak and
schribe. Der einen stapschaft siht gestôzenen in ein wazzer,
write Who a staff sees thrust into a water
den dunket der stap krum sîn. alleine er gar reht sîe, unt
to-him seems the staff crooked to-be though he wholly straight be and

daz kumet dâ von, daz daz wazzer gröber ist denne der luft
that comes there from that the water coarser is than the air
sî; doch ist der stap in sich selben reht unt niht krumb unt
be yet is the staff in it self straight and not crooked and
ouch in des ougen, der in siht in lûterkeit des luftes alleine.
also in his eyes who it sees in purity of-the air alone
Sant Augustînus sprichet: wer ân allerlei gedenke allerlei
Saint Augustine says who without all-kinds thoughts all-kinds
lîphaftikeit unt bilden inne bekennet, daz kein ûzer sehen in
bodiliness and images within knows what no outer seeing in
getragen hât, der weiz, daz ez wâr ist. Der aber des niht
carried has he knows that it true is Who however of-it not
enweiz, der lachet unt spottet mîn unt ich erbarme mich über
knows he laughs and mocks me and I pity myself over
in. Aber soliche liute wellent schouwen unde bevinden êwigiu
him But such people will behold and perceive eternal
dinc unt götlîchiu werc unt in dem liehte stân der êwikeit unt
things and divine works and in the light stand of-the eternity and
ir herze fliuget noch in gestern unt in hiute, in zît und in
their heart flies still in yesterday and in today in time and in
stat. Senecâ ein heidenscher meister sprichet: von grôzen unt
place Seneca a heathen master says of great and
von hôhen dingen sol man mit grôzen unt mit hôhen sinnen
of high things shall one with great and with high senses
sprechen unt mit erhabener sêlen. Ouch sol man sprechen, daz
speak and with raised soul Also shall one say that
man soliche lêre niht sol sprechen noch schrîben ungelêrten.
one such teaching not shall speak nor write to-unlearned
Dar zuo spriche ich: sol man niht lêren ungelêrte liute, sô
There to say I (if)-shall one not teach unlearned people so
wirt niemer nieman gelêrt, sô mac nieman lêren noch leben
becomes never anyone learned so may no-one teach nor live

noch sterben; wan dar umbe lêret man die ungelêrten, daz
nor die for there for teaches one the unlearned that
sie werden von ungelêrten gelêret. Wêre niht niuwes, sô
they become from unlearned learned Should-be nothing new so
würde niht altes. Unser herre sprichet 'die gesunt sint
would-become nothing old Our lord says those-who healthy are
die bedürfent der arzenîe niht.' Dar umbe ist der arzât, daz
they need the medicine not There for is the physician that
er die siechen gesunt mache. Ist aber denne ieman, der diz
he the sick healthy make (If)-is however then anyone who this
wort unrehte nimet, waz mac des der mensche, der diz wort,
word wrongly takes what can of-it the man who this word
daz reht ist, rehsprichet? Sant Johannes sprichet daz heilige
which right is rightly-speaks Saint John speaks the holy
êwangelium allen geloubigen unt ouch ungeloubigen, umbe
gospel to-all believers and also to-unbelievers for
daz sie geloubic werden, unt doch beginnet er daz êwangelium
that they believing become and yet begins he the gospel
von dem hœhsten, daz kein mensche von gote hie gesprechen
from the highest that any man of God here speak
mac, unt ouch sint sîniu wort und ouch unsers herren wort
may and also are his words and also our lord's words
dicke unrehte vernomen. Der minneclîche milte got, der
often wrongly perceived The loving generous God who
diu wârheit selber ist, der gebe mir unt allen den, die diz
the truth self is he give to-me and to-all those who this
buoch süllent lesen, daz wir wârheit in uns gewar werden.
book shall read that we truth in us aware become

MEISTER ECKHART

Predigten

Sermons

I. Dum medium silentium

On the Wisdom text "while all things were in midmost silence, a hidden word was spoken to me," Eckhart preaches the eternal birth, which helps me only if it happens in me. It happens in the soul's purest ground and being, the midmost silence, where no creature or image ever came and the powers neither work nor know. Should a man work with images of God, or keep still and let God work? He must keep still and unknowing, withdrawn from all things, as Dionysius taught Timothy, and hunt the hidden word within as Paul did. There he too is born the Father's child, and can never be parted from God or fall into mortal sin.

Dum medium silentium tenerent omnia et nox in suo cursu
While middle silence held all-things and night in its course
medium iter haberet etc. (Sap. XVIII, 14.). Wir begên hie
middle way had etc. Wisd. XVIII 14 We celebrate here
in der zît von der êwigen gebürte, die got der vater hât
in the time of the eternal birth which God the father has
geborn unde gebirt âne underlâz in êwikeit, daz diu selbe
borne and bears without ceasing in eternity that the same
geburt nû ist geborn in der zît in menschlîcher nâtûre.
birth now is born in the time in human nature
Ez sprichet sanctus Augustînus, daz disiu geburt iemer
It says saint Augustine that this birth ever
geschehe. Sô si aber in mir niht geschihet, waz hilfet
happen If it however in me not happens what helps
mich daz? Aber daz si in mir geschehe, dâ lît ez allez an.
me that But that it in me happen there lies it all on
Nû süllen wir reden von dirre gebürte, wie diu in uns
Now shall we speak of this birth how it in us
geschehe oder vollebrâht werde in der guoten sêle, wâ got
happen or accomplished be in the good soul where God
der vater sîn êwic wort sprechende sî in der vollekomenen
the father his eternal word speaking be in the perfect

sêle. Wan daz ich alhie spriche, daz sol man verstân
soul For what I here say that shall one understand
von eime vollekomenen menschen, der in den wegen gotes
of a perfect man who in the ways of-God
gewandelt hât unde noch wandelt, unde niht von eime
walked has and still walks and not of a
nâtûrlîchen ungeüebeten menschen, wan der ist zemâle verre
natural unpracticed man for he is wholly far
und unwizzende von dirre gebürte. Ein wort sprichet der wîse
and unknowing of this birth A word speaks the wise
man 'dô alliu dinc wâren miten in eime swîgen, dô kam
man when all things were in-the-midst in a silence then came
von oben her nider von dem küneclîchen stuole in mich
from above hither down from the royal throne into me
ein verborgen wort.' Von disem worte sol sîn disiu bredie.
a hidden word Of this word shall be this sermon
Driu dinc sint hie ze merken. Daz êrste ist: wâ got der vater
Three things are here to note The first is where God the father
spreche sîn wort in der sêle unde wâ dirre gebürte stat sî
speak his word in the soul and where this birth's place be
unde wâ si des werkes enpfenclich sî. wan daz muoz sîn in
and where it of-the work receptive be for that must be in
dem aller lûtersten und edelsten und subtilsten, daz diu sêle
the all purest and noblest and subtlest that the soul
geleisten mac. In der wârheit, möhte got der vater mit aller sîner
achieve may In the truth could God the father with all his
almehtikeit iht edelers der sêle gegeben haben in ir nâtûre
almightiness anything nobler to-the soul given have in her nature
unde möhte diu sêle iht edelers genomen haben von ime,
and could the soul anything nobler taken have from him
des selben adels müeste got der vater beiten mit der gebürte.
for-that same nobility must God the father wait with the birth

Dâ von muoz sich diu sêle, in der diu geburt sol geschehen,
There from must herself the soul in which the birth shall happen
gar lûter haben unde gar adellîche leben unde gar einic unde
wholly pure keep and wholly nobly live and wholly one and
gar inne, niht ûz loufen durch die fünf sinne in manicvaltekeit
wholly within not out run through the five senses into multiplicity
der crêatûren, mêr: allez inne sîn und einic sîn und in dem
of-the creatures but all within be and one be and in the
lûtersten, daz ist sîn stat, im versmâhet iht minders.
purest that is his place to-him displeases anything lesser
Daz ander teil dirre bredic ist, wie sich der mensche zuo
The second part of-this sermon is how himself the man to
disem werke halden sol oder zuo disem însprechen unde
this work hold shall or to this in-speaking and
gebern: ob ime nützer sî, daz er ein mitwirken hie mite
bearing whether to-him more-useful be that he a co-working here with
habe, dâ mit er erwerbe unde verdiene, daz disiu geburt in
have there with he gain and merit that this birth in
ime geschehe unde geborn werde, alsô daz der mensche in
him happen and born be so that the man in
ime schöpfe ein bilde in sîner vernunft und in sînen gedanken
himself create an image in his reason and in his thoughts
unde sich dar an üebe, alsô gedenkende: got ist wîse, almehtic
and himself there on exercise thus thinking God is wise almighty
und êwic, unde swaz er alsô erdenken mac von gote, ob
and eternal and whatever he so think-out may of God whether
daz mêr diene unde fürder dise veterlîche geburt, oder daz
that more serve and further this fatherly birth or that
man sich enziehe unde ledic mache von allen gedanken,
one himself withdraw and free make from all thoughts
worten unde werken unde von allen bilden des verstentnisses
words and works and from all images of-the understanding

und daz man sich zemâle halde in eime gotlîden unde
and that one himself wholly hold in a God-suffering and
habe sich müezic unde lâze got wirken, und in welhem der
keep himself idle and let God work and in which the
mensche zuo dirre gebürte aller meist diene. — Daz dritte
man to this birth all most serve The third
ist der nutz, wie grôz der sî, der an dirre gebürte lît.
is the profit how great that be which in this birth lies
Nû merket zem êrsten mâle. Ich wil iu dise rede bewêren
Now mark at-the first time I will to-you this discourse prove
mit nâtûrlîcher rede, daz ir ez selber grîfen mügent, daz
with natural reasoning that you it yourselves grasp may that
ez alsô ist, swie ich doch der geschrift mêr gloube dan mir
it so is though I yet the scripture more believe than me
selber: aber ez gêt iu mêr în unde baz von bewêrter rede.
self but it goes to-you more in and better from proven reasoning
Nû nemen wir des êrsten daz wort, daz dâ sprichet
Now take we at-the first the word which there says
'enmiten in daz swîgen wart mir în gesprochen ein verborgen
in-the-midst in the silence was to-me in spoken a hidden
wort.' Ach, herre, wâ ist daz swîgen unde wâ ist diu stat,
word Ah lord where is the silence and where is the place
dâ diz wort în gesprochen wirt? Wir sagen, als ich vor
where this word in spoken is We say as I before
sprach: ez ist in dem lûtersten, daz diu sêle geleisten mac,
spoke it is in the purest that the soul achieve may
in dem edelsten, in dem grunde, jâ in dem wesenne der
in the noblest in the ground yea in the being of-the
sêle. Daz ist daz mitel swîgen, wan dar în enkam nie kein
soul That is the middle silence for there in came never any
crêatûre noch bilde noch diu sêle enhât dâ weder wirken
creature nor image nor the soul has there neither working

noch verstân noch enweiz dar umbe kein bilde, weder
nor understanding nor knows there about any image neither
von ir selber noch von keiner crêatûre. Alliu werc, diu
of her self nor of any creature All works which
diu sêle wirket, diu wirket si mit den kreften. Swaz si
the soul works those works she with the powers Whatever she
verstêt, daz verstêt si mit der vernunft. Sô si gedenket,
understands that understands she with the reason When she thinks
daz tuot si mit dem gedêhtnisse. Sol si minnen, daz
that does she with the memory (If)-shall she love that
tuot si mit dem willen, und alsô wirket si mit den kreften
does she with the will and so works she with the powers
unde niht mit dem wesenne. Allez ir ûzwirken haftet iemer
and not with the being All her out-working clings ever
an etwaz mitels. Die kraft des sehens enwirket si niht
to something of-means The power of-the seeing works she not
dan durch diu ougen, anders enmac si kein gesehen wirken
but through the eyes otherwise may she no seeing work
noch geben. und alsô ist ez mit allen den andern sinnen.
nor give and so is it with all the other senses
Allez ir ûzwirken wirket si durch etwaz mitels. Aber in
All her out-working works she through something of-means But in
dem wesenne enist kein werc. dâ von hât diu sêle in dem
the being is no work there from has the soul in the
wesenne kein werc, wan die krefte, dâ mite si wirket, die
being no work for the powers there with she works they
fliezent ûz dem grunde des wesens, mêr: in dem grunde
flow out-of the ground of-the being but in the ground
dâ ist daz mitel swîgen, hie ist alleine ruowe und ein
there is the middle silence here is alone rest and a
wonunge zuo dirre gebürte unde zuo disem werke, daz got
dwelling for this birth and for this work that God

der vater aldâ sprichet sîn wort, wan diz ist von nâtûre
the father there speaks his word for this is by nature
nihtes enpfenclich denne alleine des götlîchen wesens ân
of-nothing receptive but alone the divine being without
allez mitel. Got gêt hie in die sêle mit dem sînem allem,
all means God goes here into the soul with the his all
niht mit dem sînem teile. Got gêt hie în in die sêle in
not with the his part God goes here in into the soul in
dem grunde. Nieman tuot den grunt rüeren in der sêle
the ground No-one does the ground touch in the soul
denne got alleine. Diu crêatûre enmac niht in den grunt
but God alone The creature may not into the ground
der sêle, si muoz hie ûzen blîben in den kreften. Dâ
of-the soul she must here outside remain in the powers There
siht si wol ir bilde an, dâ mite si în gezogen ist und
sees she well her image on there with she in drawn is and
herberge hât enpfangen. Wan swenne die krefte der sêle
lodging has received For whenever the powers of-the soul
rüeren die crêatûre, sô nement sie unde schöpfent bilde unde
touch the creature so take they and create image and
gelîchnisse von der crêatûre unde ziehent daz in sich.
likeness of the creature and draw that into themselves
Von dem sô kennent sie die crêatûre. Niht nêher mac diu
From that so know they the creature Not nearer may the
crêatûre komen in die sêle noch niemer genâhet diu sêle
creature come into the soul nor ever approaches the soul
keiner crêatûre, si hete denne des êrsten willeclîchen
any creature unless-she had then at-the first willingly
enpfangen in sich ein bilde. Unde von dem gegenwertigen
received into herself an image And from the present
bilde sô nâhent sie sich den crêatûren. wan bilde ist ein
image so approach they themselves to-the creatures for image is a

dinc, daz diu sêle schöpfet mit den kreften. Ez sî ein stein,
thing that the soul creates with the powers It be a stone
ein ros, ein mensche oder swaz ez sî daz si bekennen
a horse a man or whatever it be that she know
wil, sô nimet si daz bilde her für, daz si vor în gezogen
will so takes she the image hither forth that she before in drawn
hât, und alsô mac si sich mit im vereinen. Swenne aber
has and so may she herself with it unite When however
ein mensche alsô ein bilde enpfêhet, daz muoz von nôt
a man so an image receives that must of necessity
komen von ûzen în durch die sinne. Dar umbe ist der sêle
come from outside in through the senses There for is to-the soul
enkein dinc als unbekant als si ir selber. Alsô sprichet
no thing as unknown as she to-her self So speaks
ein meister, daz diu sêle von ir kein bilde geschöpfen mac
a master that the soul of her no image create may
noch geziehen. Dar umbe sô mac si sich selber mit nihte
nor draw There for so may she her self with nothing
bekennen. wan bilde koment allez în durch die sinne: des
know for images come all in through the senses therefore
enmac si kein bilde von ir selber gehaben. Dâ von weiz
may she no image of her self have There from knows
si al ander dinc unde sich selber niht. Dekeines dinges weiz
she all other things and her self not Of-no thing knows
si als wênic alsô sich selber, durch des mitels willen. Unde
she as little as her self because of-the means' sake And
daz wizzest ouch, daz si innen ist frî unde ledic von allen
that know-thou also that she within is free and void of all
miteln unde von allen bilden unde daz ist ouch diu sache,
means and of all images and that is also the cause
daz sich got lediclich mac mit ir vereinen âne bilde oder
that himself God freely may with her unite without image or

gelîchnisse. Dû enmaht des niht gelâzen, waz müglicheit dû
likeness Thou canst of-it not leave-off what possibility thou
enkeinem meister gibest, dû muost die selben müglicheit
to-any master givest thou must the same possibility
gote geben âne alle mâze. Als nû ie ein meister wîser
to-God give without all measure As now ever a master wiser
unde mehtiger ist, alsô ouch sîn werc unmitelîcher geschiht
and mightier is so also his work more-immediately happens
und einveldiger ist. Der mensche hât vil mitels in sînen
and simpler is The man has much of-means in his
ûzwendigen werken; ê er diu für bringet als er sie in
outward works before he them forth brings as he them in
ime gebildet hât, dâ gehœret vil bereitschaft zuo. Der
himself imaged has there belongs much preparation to The
mâne unde diu sunne in ir meisterschaft und in irm werke
moon and the sun in their mastery and in their work
daz ist erliuhten; daz tuont sie gar snellecliche. Alse schiere
that is illumining that do they wholly swiftly As soon-as
sie irn schîn ûz giezent, in dem selben ougenblicke sô ist
they their shine out pour in the same eye-blink so is
diu welt vol liehtes an allen enden. Aber dar über ist der
the world full of-light at all ends But there above is the
engel, der bedarf noch minr mitels an sînen werken unde
angel he needs yet less of-means in his works and
hât ouch minr bilde. Der aller oberst Seraphîn der enhât
has also fewer images The all highest Seraph he has
niht mê dan ein bilde. Alle die under im sint, swaz sie
not more than one image All who under him are whatever they
nement in manicvaldekeit, daz nimet er allez in eime. Aber
take in multiplicity that takes he all in one But
got bedarf keins bildes noch er hât kein bilde: got wirket in
God needs no image nor he has any image God works in

der sêle âne allez mitel, bilde oder gelîchnisse, jâ in dem
the soul without all means image or likeness yea in the
grunde, dâ nie bilde în kam denne er selber mit sînem
ground where never image in came but he self with his
eigem wesenne. Daz enmac dekein crêatûre getuon. Wie
own being That may no creature do How
gebirt got der nâtûre sînen sun in der sêle? als die crêatûre
bears God the nature his son in the soul as the creatures
tuont in bilden und in gelîchnisse? Triuwen, nein! mêr: in
do in images and in likeness Truly no but in
aller der wîse als er in der êwikeit gebirt, weder minr
all the manner as he in the eternity bears neither less
noch mê. Eyâ, wie gebirt er da? Daz merket. Sehet, got
nor more Eya how bears he there That mark See God
der vater hât ein vollekomen însehen in sich selber und ein
the father has a perfect in-seeing into him self and a
abegründigez durchkennen sich selben mit ime selber, niht
fathomless through-knowing him self with him self not
mit dekeinem bilde. Und alsô gebirt got der vater sînen sun
with any image And so bears God the father his son
in wârer einunge götlîcher nâtûre. Sehet, in der selben wîse
in true union of-divine nature See in the same manner
und in keiner andern gebirt got der vater sînen sun in der
and in no other bears God the father his son in the
sêle grunde und in irm wesenne unde vereinet sich alsô
soul's ground and in her being and unites himself so
mit ir. Wan wêre dâ iht bilde, sô enwêre dâ niht wâriu
with her For were there any image so were there not true
einunge, und an der wâren einunge lît alliu ir sêlikeit.
union and on the true union lies all her blessedness

Nû möhtet ir sprechen, in der sêle sîn niht dan bilde von
Now might you speak in the soul be not but images by
nâtûre. Nein, niht! wan wêre daz wâr, sô enwürde diu sêle
nature No not for should-be that true so would-become the soul
niemer sêlic, wan got enmöhte keine crêatûre machen, in der
never blessed for God could no creature make in which
dû vollekomene sêlikeit nêmest, anders wêre got niht diu
thou perfect blessedness wouldst-take otherwise were God not the
hœhste sêlikeit unt daz beste ende, daz doch sîn nâtûre ist,
highest blessedness and the best end which yet his nature is
unde wil, daz er sî ein begin und ein ende aller dinge. Ez
and wills that he be a beginning and an end of-all things It
enmac dekein crêatûre diu sêlikeit sîn. sô enmac si ouch hie
may no creature the blessedness be so may she also here
niht diu vollekomenheit sîn, wan der vollekomenheit (daz ist
not the perfection be for the perfection that is
aller tugent) der volget nâch vollekomenheit des lebens, unt
of-all virtue that follows after perfection of-the life and
dâ von sô muost dû von nôt sîn unde wonen in dem wesen
there from so must thou of necessity be and dwell in the being
und in dem grunde, dâ muoz dich got rüeren mit sînem
and in the ground there must thee God touch with his
einveldigen wesenne âne mitel dekeines bildes. Ein ieclich
simple being without means of-any image An every
bilde daz enmeinet noch enwîset sich selber niht, ez ziuhet
image that means nor shows it self not it draws
unde wîset allez dâ hin, des bilde ez ist. Unde sît man kein
and shows all there thither whose image it is And since one no
bilde hât denne von dem, daz ûzwendic dir ist unde durch
image has but of that which outward to-thee is and through
die sinne în gezogen wirt von den crêatûren und ez ouch
the senses in drawn is from the creatures and it also

allez wîset dâ hin, des bilde ez ist, sô wêre ez unmügelich,
all shows there thither whose image it is so were it impossible
daz dû iemer möhtest sêlic werden von dekeinem bilde.
that thou ever mightest blessed become from any image
Daz ander ist, waz dem menschen zuo gehœre sînes werkes
The second is what to-the man to belongs of-his work
hie ze wirken, dâ mit er erwürbe unde verdiente, daz disiu
here to work there with he might-gain and might-merit that this
geburt in ime geschehe unde vollebrâht werde, obe daz
birth in him happen and accomplished be whether that
niht bezzer sî, daz der mensche hier zuo sîn werc tuo als
not better be that the man here to his work do as
ein înbilden und îngedenken an got, oder daz der mensche
an in-imaging and in-thinking on God or that the man
sich halde in eime swîgen oder in einer stille und in einer
himself hold in a silence or in a stillness and in a
ruowe und alsô got in im spreche unde wirke unde warte
rest and so God in him speak and work and wait
er alleine gotes werkes in ime? Ich spriche aber, als ich
he alone for-God's work in him I say however as I
vor sprach, disiu rede unde disiu werc gehœrent alleine
before spoke this discourse and these works belong alone
guoten unde vollekomenen menschen zuo, die dâ an sich
to-good and perfect men to who there on themselves
und in sich gezogen hânt aller tugende wesen, alsô daz
and into themselves drawn have of-all virtue the-being so that
die tugende wesenlîche ûz in fliezent âne ir zuotuon,
the virtues essentially out-of them flow without their doing
unde vor allen dingen, daz daz wirdig leben unde diu edele
and before all things that the worthy life and the noble
lêre unsers herren Jêsû Kristî in in lebe. Die sullent daz
teaching of-our lord Jesus Christ in them live They shall that

wizzen, daz daz allerbeste ist und aller edelst ist, dâ man
know that the all-best is and all noblest is that one
zuo komen mac in disem leben, daz dû solt swîgen unde lâz
to come may in this life that thou shalt be-silent and let
got dâ wirken unde sprechen aldâ. Dâ alle krefte sint abe
God there work and speak there Where all powers are off
gezogen von allen irn werken unde bilden, dâ wirt diz wort
drawn from all their works and images there is this word
gesprochen. Dar umbe sprach er ‘miten in dem swîgenne
spoken There for spoke he in-the-midst in the silence
wart mir daz heimlîche wort zuo gesprochen.’ Unt dar
was to-me the secret word to spoken And there
umbe, sô dû alle krefte allermeist maht geziehen enein und
for so thou all powers most-of-all canst draw together and
in ein vergezzen aller dinge und ir bilde, diu dû in dich
into one forgetting of-all things and their images which thou into thee
ie gezugest, unde ie mêr dû der crêatûre vergizzest, ie
ever drewest and ever more thou the creature forgettest ever
nêher dû disem bist unde ie enpfenclîcher. Möhtestû aller
nearer thou to-this art and ever more-receptive Mightest-thou of-all
dinge zemâle unwizzende werden, jâ möhtestû komen in ein
things wholly unknowing become yea mightest-thou come into an
unwizzen dînes eigen lebennes, alsô sant Paulô geschach, dô
unknowing of-thine own life as saint Paul happened when
er sprach ‘ob ich wêre in dem lîbe oder niht, des enweiz
he spoke whether I were in the body or not that know
ich niht, got der weiz ez wol.’ dâ hâte der geist alle
I not God he knows it well there had the spirit all
krefte sô gar in sich gezogen, daz ime des lîchames was
powers so wholly into itself drawn that to-him the body was
vergezzen, dâ worhte weder gedêhtnisse noch verstentnisse
forgotten there worked neither memory nor understanding

noch die sinne noch die krefte, die irn înfluz in disem
nor the senses nor the powers which their influence in this
solden haben, daz sie den lîcham füeren unde zieren solden,
should have that they the body lead and adorn should
der brant unt die hitze was ûf enthalten: dar umbe nam
the fire and the heat was up held there for waned
der lîcham niht abe, die wîle er in den drin tagen niht az
the body not away the while he in the three days not ate
noch tranc. Alsô geschach Moysî, dô er vaste die vierzic
nor drank So happened to-Moses when he fasted the forty
tage ûf dem berge, und er wart nie deste krenker: er was
days on the mountain and he became never the weaker he was
des lesten tages alsô starc alse des êrsten. Und alsô solde
of-the last day as strong as of-the first And so should
der mensche entwîchen allen sinnen und înkêren alle sîne
the man escape all senses and in-turn all his
krefte unde komen in ein vergezzen aller dinge unde sîn
powers and come into a forgetting of-all things and of-his
selbes. Hie von sprach ein meister zuo der sêle: ziuch dich
self Here of spoke a master to the soul draw thee
von unruowe ûzwendiger werke, dar nâch fliuch unde verbirg
from unrest of-outward works there after flee and hide
dich vor dem gestürme ûzwendiger werke und inwendiger
thee from the storm of-outward works and of-inward
gedanken, wan sie unfride machent. Dar umbe, sol got
thoughts for they discord make There for (if)-shall God
sîn wort sprechen in der sêle, sô muoz si in fride und
his word speak in the soul so must she in peace and
in ruowe sîn, unt denne sprichet er sîn wort unde sich
in rest be and then speaks he his word and him
selber in der sêle, unt niht ein bilde, sunder sich selber.
self in the soul and not an image but him self

Dionysius sprichet: got enhât kein bilde oder gelîchnisse sîn
Dionysius speaks God has no image or likeness of-his
selbes, wan er ist wesenlich allez guot, wârheit unde wesen.
self for he is essentially all good truth and being
Got würket elliu sîniu werc in ime selber und ûz ime
God works all his works in him self and out-of him
selber in eime blicke. Niht enwêne, dô got himel und erde
self in one glance Not suppose-thou when God heaven and earth
mahte und alliu dinc, daz er hiute einz mahte unde morne
made and all things that he today one made and tomorrow
daz ander. Doch schrîbet Moyses alsô. Er wiste doch wol
the other Yet writes Moses so He knew yet well
vil baz: er tet ez aber durch der liute willen, die ez niht
much better he did it however for the people's sake who it not
anders kunden verstên noch vernemen. Got der entete niht
otherwise could understand nor perceive God he did not
mê dar zuo denne alleine: er wolte unde sie wurden. Got
more there to than alone he willed and they became God
wirket âne mitel und âne bilde. Ie mê dû âne bilde
works without means and without image Ever more thou without image
bist, ie mê dû sînes înwirkennes enpfenclîcher bist, unde ie
art ever more thou of-his in-working more-receptive art and ever
mê dû îngekêret unde vergezzener, ie dû disem nâher bist.
more thou in-turned and more-forgetful ever thou to-this nearer art
Her zuo mante Dionysius sînen jungern Timotheum unde
Here to admonished Dionysius his disciple Timothy and
sprach: lieber sun Timotheê, dû solt mit umbekümberten
spoke dear son Timothy thou shalt with unencumbered
sinnen dich erswingen über dich selber und über alle dîne
senses thee swing-up over thee self and over all thy
krefte und über wîse und über wesen in die verborgene
powers and over manner and over being into the hidden

stille dunsternisse, ûf daz dû komest in ein bekentnisse
still darkness up that thou come into a knowing
des unbekanten übergotten gotes. Ez muoz ein enziehen sîn
of-the unknown over-godded God It must a withdrawing be
von allen dingen. Got den versmâhet ze wirkenne in bilden.
from all things God him displeases to work in images
Nû möhtestû sprechen: waz wirket got âne bilde in dem
Now mightest-thou speak what works God without images in the
grunde und in dem wesen? Des enmag ich niht wizzen,
ground and in the being That may I not know
wan die krefte niht künnent genemen dan in bilden, wan
for the powers not can take but in images for
sie elliu dinc müezent nemen unde bekennen in ir eigem
they all things must take and know in their own
bilde. Sie enmügent einen vogel niht erkennen in eins
image They may a bird not know in a
menschen bilde, unt dar umbe, wan alliu bilde koment von
man's image and there for since all images come from
ûzen her în, dar umbe ist ez ir verborgen unt daz ist
outside hither in there for is it to-them hidden and that is
ir aller nützeste. Daz unwizzen ziuhet sî in ein wunder
to-them all most-useful The unknowing draws her into a wonder
unde tuot sî disem nâch jagen, wan si bevindet wol, daz
and makes her to-this after hunt for she perceives well that
ez ist, und enweiz aber niht, wie unde waz ez ist. Swenne
it is and knows however not how and what it is When
der mensche weiz der dinge sache, alzehant sô ist er der
the man knows of-the things the-cause at-once so is he of-the
dinge müede unde suochet aber ein anderz ze ervarnde unde
things weary and seeks again an other to discover and
hêt doch iemer ein jâmer, disiu dinc ze wizzenne, und enhêt
has yet ever a longing these things to know and has

doch dekein bîbelîben, dar umbe: daz unbekant bekentnisse
yet no staying-by there for the unknown knowing
daz heldet sî bî disem belîben unde tuot sî doch nâch
that holds her by this remaining and makes her yet after
jagen. Hie von sprach der wîse man ‘inmiten der naht, dô
hunt Here of spoke the wise man in-the-midst the night when
elliu dinc wâren in einer stille swîgende, dô wart mir zuo
all things were in a stillness silent then was to-me to
gesprochen ein verborgen wort. daz kam in einer dieplîchen
spoken a hidden word that came in a thievish
wîse verstolnlîche.’ Wie meinet er ez: ein wort, dô ez
manner stealthily How means he it a word when it
verborgen was? Des wortes nâtûre ist, daz ez offenbâret daz
hidden was Of-the word's nature is that it reveals what
verborgen ist. ‘Ez offente sich unde glenzete mir vor, daz ez
hidden is It opened itself and shone to-me before that it
etwaz wîre offenbârende, und ez was mir got kunt tuonde,
something were revealing and it was to-me God known making
dâ von heizet ez ein wort. Mêr: ez was mir verborgen,
there from is-called it a word But it was to-me hidden
waz ez wêre. Daz was sîn verstolnlîch komen in eime
what it were That was its stealthy coming in a
geriune und in einer stille, umbe daz ez sich offenbâret.’
whispering and in a stillness so that it itself reveals
Seht, dar umbe muoz man unde sol ime nâch loufen, die
See there for must one and shall it after run the
wîle ez verborgen ist. Ez schein unde was verborgen: daz
while it hidden is It shone and was hidden that
meinet, daz wir ime nâch jâmern unde siufzen.
means that we it after yearn and sigh

Sanctus Paulus sprichet, daz wir diseme nâch sullen jagen, biz
Saint Paul says that we this after shall hunt until
wir ez erspürn, unde niemer ûf hœren, biz wir ez begrîfen.
we it track and never up cease until we it grasp
Dô er in den dritten himel was gezucket in die kuntschaft
When he into the third heaven was snatched into the knowledge
gotes unde gesehen hâte alliu dinc, dô er widerkom dô
of-God and seen had all things when he came-back then
enwas ime nihtesniht vergezzen: ez was ime sô verre inne
was to-him nothing-at-all forgotten it was to-him so far within
in dem grunde, dar sîne vernunft niht mohte komen: ez was
in the ground where his reason not could come it was
ime bedecket. Dar umbe muoste er ime nâch loufen und
to-him covered There for must he it after run and
ez ervolgen in ime unde niht ûzer ime. Ez ist zemâle inne,
it attain in him and not outside him It is wholly within
niht ûze, sunder allez inne. Unde wan er des wol weste, dâ
not outside but all within And since he that well knew there
von sprach er 'ich bin des sicher, daz mich der tôt noch
from spoke he I am of-it certain that me the death nor
kein arbeit dâ von gescheiden mac, des ich in mir bevinde.'
any toil there from part may which I in me perceive
Hie von sprach ein heidenischer meister ein schœne wort
Here of spoke a heathen master a fair word
zuo eime andern meister: ich wirde eins in mir gewar,
to an other master I become of-a-thing in me aware
daz glenzet in mîner vernunft; des bevinde ich wol, daz
that shines in my reason that perceive I well that
ez etwaz ist, aber waz ez sî, des enkan ich niht verstân,
it something is but what it be that can I not understand
denne alleine dunket mich, kunde ich ez begrîfen, ich kunde
but alone seems-to me could I it grasp I could

alle wârheit. Dô sprach der ander meister: eyâ, dem volge
all truth Then spoke the other master eya it follow
nâch! wan kundestû ez begrîfen, sô hêtestû eine samenunge
after for couldst-thou it grasp so hadst-thou a gathering
aller güete unde hêtest ein êwic leben. Von disem sinne
of-all goodness and hadst an eternal life Of this sense
sprach ouch sanctus Augustînus: ich wirde eins in mir
spoke also saint Augustine I become of-a-thing in me
gewar, daz vorspilt unde vorblicket mîner sêle: würde daz
aware that plays-before and glances-before my soul should-become that
vollebrâht unde bestêteget in mir, daz müeste êwig leben
accomplished and confirmed in me that must eternal life
sîn. Ez birget sich unde wîset sich doch; ez kumet aber
be It hides itself and shows itself yet it comes however
in einer dieplîchen wîse unde meinet, ez wolte der sêle
in a thievish manner and means it would from-the soul
alliu dinc benemen unde verstelen. Aber daz ez sich etwaz
all things take-away and steal But that it itself somewhat
bewîset und offenbâret, dâ mite wolte ez die sêle reizen
shows and reveals there with would it the soul entice
unde nâch im ziehen unde sî ir selbes berouben unde
and after it draw and her of-her self rob and
benemen. Hie von sprach der prophête 'herre, nim in
strip Here of spoke the prophet lord take from-them
iren geist unde gip in wider dînen geist.' Diz meinde
their spirit and give to-them back thy spirit This meant
ouch diu minnende sêle, dô si sprach 'mîn sêle versmalz
also the loving soul when she spoke my soul melted
unde zerflôz, dô der liebe sîn wort sprach: dô er în gienc,
and dissolved when the beloved his word spoke when he in went
dô muoste ich abe nemen.' Daz meinde ouch Kristus, dô er
then must I away wane That meant also Christ when he

sprach ‘der iht lât durch mich, der sol hundertvalt wider
spoke who anything leaves for me he shall hundredfold back
nemen, unde swer mich wil haben, der muoz sich sîn
take and whoever me will have he must himself of-his
selbes und aller dinge verzîhen, unde swer mir wil dienen,
self and of-all things renounce and whoever me will serve
der muoz mir volgen, er ensol niht dem sînen volgen.’
he must me follow he shall not the his follow
Nû möhtestû sprechen: eyâ, herre, ir wellent der sêlen iren
Now mightest-thou speak eya lord you will of-the soul her
nâtiurlîchen louf umbe kêren! ir nâtûre ist, daz si durch die
natural course about turn her nature is that she through the
sinne neme und in bilden: wellent ir den orden umbe kêren?
senses take and in images will you the order about turn
Nein! waz weistû, waz adels got habe geleit in die nâtûre,
No what knowest-thou what of-nobility God have laid into the nature
diu noch niht alle geschriben sint, mêr: noch verborgen? Wan
which yet not all written are but yet hidden For
die von dem adele der sêlen schriben, die enwâren noch
those-who of the nobility of-the soul wrote they were yet
danne niht nâher komen dan sie ir nâtiurlich vernunft truoc;
then not nearer come than them their natural reason bore
sie enwâren nie in den grunt komen: des muoste in vil
they were never into the ground come therefore must to-them much
verborgen sîn unde bleip in unbekant. Dar umbe sprach der
hidden be and remained to-them unknown There for spoke the
prophête ‘ich wil sitzen unde wil swîgen unde wil hœren, waz
prophet I will sit and will be-silent and will hear what
got in mir spreche.’ Wan ez sô verborgen ist, dar umbe kom
God in me speak For it so hidden is there for came
diz wort in der naht in deme dünsternüsse. Sanctus Jôhannes
this word in the night in the darkness Saint John

sprichet ‘daz lieht lûhte in der vinsternüsse, ez kom in sîn
says the light shone in the darkness it came into its
eigen, und alle, die ez enpfiengen, die wurden gewalteclîche
own and all who it received they became powerfully
gotes süne: in wart gewalt gegeben, gotes süne ze werdenne.’
God's sons to-them was power given God's sons to become
Nû merket hie den nutz unde die fruht diss heimelîchen
Now mark here the profit and the fruit of-this secret
wortes unde diss vinsternüsses. Der sun des himelischen vaters
word and of-this darkness The son of-the heavenly father
enwirt niht alleine geborn in disem dünsternüsse, daz sîn
is not alone born in this darkness which his
eigen ist: dû wirst ouch dâ geborn des selben himelischen
own is thou becomest also there born of-the same heavenly
vaters kint, joch keins andern, und er gît dir den gewalt.
father's child and of-no other and he gives to-thee the power
Nû merkent, wie grôz der nutz ist. Alle die wârheit die alle
Now mark how great the profit is All the truth which all
meister ie gelêrten mit ir eigen vernunft unde verstentnüsse
masters ever taught with their own reason and understanding
oder iemer mê gelêrent biz an den jungesten tac, die
or ever more teach until to the last day they
verstuonden nie daz aller minneste in disem wizzenne und
understood never the all least in this knowing and
in disem grunde. Swie ez doch ein unwizzen heize und ein
in this ground Though it yet an unknowing be-called and an
unbekantheit, sô hêt ez doch mê inne dan allez wizzen unde
unknownness so has it yet more within than all knowing and
bekennen ûzewendic disem: wan diz ûzewendic unwizzen daz
knowing outside this for this outside unknowing that
reizet unde ziuhet dich von allen wizzenden dingen und ouch
entices and draws thee from all known things and also

von dir selben. Daz meinde Kristus dô er sprach ‘swer sich
from thee self That meant Christ when he spoke whoever himself
sîn selbes niht verloukent unde niht vater unde muoter lât
of-his self not denies and not father and mother leaves
und allez daz ûzerlich ist, der enist mîn niht wirdic.’ als ob
and all that outward is he is of-me not worthy as if
er sprêche: swer niht enlât alle ûzewendikeit der crêatûren,
he spoke whoever not leaves all outwardness of-the creatures
der enmag in dise götlîche geburt weder enpfangen noch
he may into this divine birth neither received nor
geborn werden. mêr: daz dû dich dîn selbes beroubest und
born be but that thou thee of-thy self robbest and
alles des, daz ûzerlich ist, daz gît dirz in der wârheit.
of-all that which outward is that gives to-thee-it in the truth
Und in der wârheit geloube ich des unde bin des sicher, daz
And in the truth believe I that and am of-it certain that
dirre mensche, der hie inne rehte stüende, niemer mac von
this man who here within rightly stood never may from
gote gescheiden werden bî niute niht in keine wîse. Ich
God parted become by anything not in any manner I
spriche, er enmag in keine wîse in tôtsünde gevallen. Sie
say he may in no manner into deadly-sin fall They
liten ê den schentlîchesten tôt, ê sie die aller minneste
suffered sooner the most-shameful death before they the all least
tôtsünde têten, als ouch die heiligen tâten. Ich spriche, sie
deadly-sin did as also the saints did I say they
enmügent einer tegelîchen sünde niht getuon noch gestaten
may a daily sin not do nor allow
mit willen an in selben noch an andern liuten, dâ sie ez
with will in them selves nor in other people where they it
erwenden mügent. Sie werdent sô sêre zuo disem gereizet
prevent may They become so sorely to this enticed

unde gezogen unde gewenet, daz sie sich keinen andern
and drawn and accustomed that they themselves to-no other
wec niemer enmügent gekêren, sie kêren alle ir sinne und
way ever may turn they turn all their senses and
ir krefte her nâch. In dise geburt helfe uns der got, der
their powers hither after Into this birth help us the God who
niuwe geborn ist menschlich, daz wir kranken liute in im
newly born is human that we weak people in him
geborn werden götlich, des helfe er uns êweclîche. Âmen.
born become divinely that help he us eternally Amen

VI. Intravit Jesus in templum dei

Jesus went into the temple and cast out those who bought and sold. The temple is the soul, made so like God that He wants it empty but for Himself. The merchants are good people who do good works for God's honor but want something for them: whoever seeks anything in his works is a trader. To the dove-sellers He said gently "take these away," for works done with possessiveness are not evil but hinder the pure truth. The soul freed of possessiveness and ignorance shines so clear that only God is like it. Then Jesus alone speaks there, revealing the Father's power, His wisdom, and sweetness without measure, and the outer man obeys the inner in lasting peace.

Intravit Jesus in templum dei et ejiciebat omnes vendentes
Entered Jesus into temple of-God and cast-out all selling
et ementes etc. (Matth. XXI, 12.). Wir lesen in deme
and buying etc. Matt. XXI 12 We read in the
heiligen êwangeliô, daz unser herre gienc in den tempel
holy gospel that our lord went into the temple
unde was ûz werfende, die dâ kouften unde verkouften,
and was out casting those-who there bought and sold
unde sprach zuo den, die dâ tûben veile heten 'tuont
and spoke to those who there doves for-sale had do

diz hin!' Er enmeinde anders niht, wan daz er den tempel
this away He meant otherwise nothing but that he the temple
wolte lidig haben, rehte als ob er sprêche: ich habe reht zuo
would empty have just as if he spoke I have right to
disem tempel unde wil alleine dâ inne sîn unde hêrschaft
this temple and will alone there within be and lordship
dâ inne haben. Waz ist daz gesprochen? Dirre tempel, dâ
there within have What is that spoken This temple where
got inne hêrschen wil gewalteclîche nâch sînem willen, daz
God within rule will powerfully after his will that
ist des menschen sêle, die er sô rehte gelîch nâch ime selbe
is the man's soul which he so rightly like after him self
gebildet unde geschaffen hât, alse wir lesen, daz unser herre
formed and created has as we read that our lord
sprach 'machen wir den menschen nâch unserm bilde unde
spoke make we the man after our image and
ze unser gelîchnüsse.' Daz hât er ouch getân. Als gelîch
to our likeness That has he also done So like
hât er des menschen sêle gemaht nâch ime selber, daz in
has he the man's soul made after him self that in
himelrîche noch in ertrîche gote niht sô glîch enist sô des
heaven nor in earth to-God nothing so like is as the
menschen sêle alleine. Har umbe wil got disen tempel ledig
man's soul alone Here for will God this temple empty
haben, daz ouch niut mê dâ inne sî denne er alleine. Daz
have that also nothing more there within be than he alone That
ist dar umbe, daz ime dirre tempel sô rehte wol gevellet,
is there for that to-him this temple so rightly well pleases
wan er ime alsô rehte gelîch ist und ime selber alsô wol
for it to-him so rightly like is and to-him self so well
behaget in disem tempele swenne er alleine dinne ist.
pleases in this temple whenever he alone therein is

Nû merkent, wer wâren die liute, die dâ kouften unde
Now mark who were the people who there bought and
verkouften, unde wer sint sie noch? Nû merkent mich vil
sold and who are they still Now mark me very
rehte; ich wil nû zemâle niht sagen denne von guoten
rightly I will now wholly not speak but of good
liuten. Noch denne wil ich ze disem mâle bewîsen, welhez
people Yet then will I at this time show which
die koufliute dâ wâren unde noch sint, die alsô kouften
the merchants there were and still are who so bought
unde verkouften, die unser herre ûz sluoc und ûz treip.
and sold whom our lord out struck and out drove
Unde daz tuot er noch allen den, die dâ koufent unde
And that does he still to-all those who there buy and
verkoufent in diseme tempel: der enwil er einen einigen
sell in this temple of-them will he a single-one
dâ inne niht lâzen. Sehent, diz sint allez koufliute, die
there within not let See these are all merchants who
sich hüetent vor groben sünden unde wêren gerne guote
themselves guard against gross sins and would-be gladly good
liute unde tuont iriu guotiu werc gote ze êren, als vasten,
people and do their good works to-God for honor as fasting
wachen, beten unde swaz des ist, aller hande guotiu werc,
waking praying and whatever of-it is of-all kinds good works
unde tuont sie doch dar umbe, daz in unser herre
and do them yet there for that to-them our lord
etwaz dar umbe gebe, oder daz in got iht dar umbe
something there for give or that to-them God anything there for
tuo, daz in liep sî: diz sint allez koufliute. Daz ist grob
do that to-them dear be these are all merchants That is plain
ze verstânne, wan sie wellent daz eine umbe daz ander
to understand for they will the one for the other

geben unde wellent alsô koufen mit unserm herren unde
give and will so trade with our lord and
werdent an deme koufe betrogen. wan allez daz sie habent
become in the bargain deceived for all that they have
unde vermügent ze würkende, daz gebent sie allez durch got,
and are-able to work that give they all for God
daz sie sich ze mâle ûz würketen durch got. Dar umbe
that they themselves in full out worked for God There for
enwêre in got nihtes niht schuldig ze gebende noch ze
would-be to-them God nothing at-all owing to give nor to
tuonde, er enwelle ez denne gerne vergebene tuon. Wan
do unless-he will it then gladly freely do For
daz sie sint, daz sint sie von gote, unde daz sie habent, daz
what they are that are they from God and what they have that
habent sie von gote unde niht von in selber. Dar umbe
have they from God and not from them selves There for
enist in got umbe iriu werc und umbe ir geben nihtes
is to-them God for their works and for their giving nothing
niht schuldig, er enwellez denne gerne tuon von sîner
at-all owing unless-he will-it then gladly do of his
gnâde unde niht umbe iriu werc noch umbe ire gâben, wan
grace and not for their works nor for their gifts for
sie engebent von dem iren niht, sie enwürkent ouch von
they give of the their-own nothing they work also of
in selber niht, als got selber sprichet ‘âne mich mügent
them selves nothing as God self says without me may
ir guotes niht getuon.’ Diz sint harte tôrehte liute, die
you of-good nothing do These are very foolish people who
alsô koufen wellent mit unserm herren: sie bekennent der
so trade will with our lord they know of-the
wârheite kleine oder niht. Dar umbe sluoc sie got ûz dem
truth little or nothing There for struck them God out-of the

tempel unde treip sie ûz. Ez enmac niht bî einander gestân
temple and drove them out It may not by each-other stand
daz lieht unde diu vinsternüsse. Got der ist diu wârheit und
the light and the darkness God he is the truth and
ein lieht in ime selber. Swenne denne got kumet in disen
a light in him self Whenever then God comes into this
tempel, sô trîbet er ûz unbekantnisse unde vinsternisse und
temple so drives he out unknowing and darkness and
offenbâret sich selbe mit liehte unde mit wârheite. Danne
reveals him self with light and with truth Then
sint die koufliute enweg, als diu wârheit wirt bekant, unde
are the merchants away when the truth becomes known and
diu wârheit begert dekeiner koufmanschaft. Got ensuochet
the truth desires no merchandise God seeks
des sînen niht, in allen sînen werken ist er lidig unde
of-the his not in all his works is he empty and
frî unde würket sie in rehter minne. Alsô tuot ouch dirre
free and works them in right love So does also this
mensche, der mit gote vereinet ist, der stêt ouch lidig
man who with God united is he stands also empty
unde frî in allen sînen werken unde würket sie von minne
and free in all his works and works them from love
und âne warumbe, alleine gote ze êren, und ensuochet
and without why alone to-God for honor and seeks
des sînen niht dar inne unde got der würket ez in ime.
of-the his not there in and God he works it in him
Ich spriche mê: alle die wîle der mensche ihtes iht suochet
I say more all the while the man anything at-all seeks
in allen sînen werken oder iht begert von allem dem,
in all his works or anything desires of all that
daz got gegeben mag oder noch geben wil, sô ist er disen
which God give may or yet give will so is he to-these

koufliuten gelîch. Wiltû koufmanschefte ze mâle ledic sîn,
merchants like (If)-wilt-thou of-merchandise in full free be
sô soltû tuon allez daz dû vermaht mit allen guoten werken,
so shalt-thou do all that thou canst with all good works
daz soltû lûterlîchen tuon gote ze eime lobe unde solt des
that shalt-thou purely do to-God for a praise and shalt of-it
alsô lidig stân, als sô dû niht enwêre. Dû ensolt nihtes niht
so empty stand as if thou not wert Thou shalt nothing at-all
dar umbe begern. wan sô dû alsô würkest, sô sint dîniu werc
there for desire for when thou so workest so are thy works
geistlich unde götlich, und denne sint die koufliute ûz dem
spiritual and divine and then are the merchants out-of the
tempel getriben alzemâle unde got der ist alleine dâ inne,
temple driven wholly and God he is alone there within
wenne der mensche niht wan got meinet. Sehent, alsus ist
when the man nothing but God means See thus is
dirre tempel lidig von allen koufliuten. Sehent, der mensche,
this temple empty of all merchants See the man
der sich noch niht enmeinet denne alleine got unde die êre
who himself yet not means but alone God and the honor
gotes, der ist gewêrlich frî unde lidig aller koufmanschaft
of-God he is truly free and empty of-all merchandise
in allen sînen werken und ensuochet des sînen nihtes niht.
in all his works and seeks of-the his nothing at-all
Ich habe ouch mê gesprochen, daz unser herre sprach zuo
I have also more spoken that our lord spoke to
den liuten, die dâ tûben veile heten ‘tuont diz enwec,
the people who there doves for-sale had do this away
tuont diz hin!’ Die liute entreip er niht ûz noch enstrâfete
do this hence The people drove he not out nor rebuked
sie niht sêre: er sprach aber vil güetlîche ‘tuont dîz hin!’
them not sorely he spoke however very kindly do this hence

rehte als ob er sprechen wolte: diz enist niht bœse, doch
just as if he speak would this is not evil yet
bringet ez ein hindernüsse in der lûtern wârheit. Dise liute
brings it a hindrance in the pure truth These people
daz sint allez guote liute, die iriu werc lûterlîche tuont
they are all good people who their works purely do
durch got und ensuochent des iren niht dar an unde tuont
for God and seek of-the their not there in and do
sie doch mit eigenschaft, mit zît unde mit zal, mit vor
them yet with possessiveness with time and with number with before
unde mit nâch. In disen werken sint sie gehindert der
and with after In these works are they hindered of-the
aller besten wârheit, daz sie solten frî unde lidig sîn, als
all best truth that they should free and empty be as
unser herre Jêsus Kristus frî unde lidig ist und enpfenget
our lord Jesus Christ free and empty is and receives
sich alle zît niuwe âne underlâz und âne zît von sîme
himself all time new without ceasing and without time from his
himelischen vater und ist sich in deme selben nû âne
heavenly father and is himself in the same now without
underlâz wider în geberende vollekomenlîche mit dancbêrem
ceasing back in bearing perfectly with thankful
lobe in die veterlîche hôcheit in einer gelîcher würdekeite.
praise into the fatherly highness in a like worthiness
Alsô solte der mensche stân, der der aller hœhesten
So should the man stand who of-the all highest
wârheite wolte enpfenclich werden unde dar inne lebende,
truth would receptive become and there in living
âne vor und âne nâch und âne hindernisse aller der
without before and without after and without hindrance of-all the
werke und aller der bilde, diu er ie verstuont, lidig unde
works and of-all the images which he ever understood empty and

frî in disem nû niuwe enpfâhende götlîche gâbe unde die
free in this now newly receiving divine gift and it
wider în geberende âne hindernüsse in disem selben liehte
back in bearing without hindrance in this same light
mit dankbêrem lobe in unserm herren Jêsû Kristô. Sô wêren
with thankful praise in our lord Jesus Christ So would-be
die tûben enwec, daz ist hindernüsse und eigenschaft aller
the doves away that is hindrance and possessiveness of-all
der werke, diu nochdenne guot sint, dar inne der mensche
the works which nonetheless good are there in the man
des sînen ihtes iht suochet. Dar umbe sprach unser herre
of-the his anything at-all seeks There for spoke our lord
gar güetlîche ‘tuont diz hin, tuont diz enwec!’ als ob er
very kindly do this hence do this away as if he
sprechen wolte: ez ist guot, doch bringet ez hindernüsse.
speak would it is good yet brings it hindrance
Swenne dirre tempel alsus lidig wirt von allen hindernüssen
When this temple thus empty becomes of all hindrances
(daz ist eigenschaft und unbekantheit), sô blicket er alsô
that is possessiveness and unknownness so gleams it so
schœne unde liuhtet alsô lûter unde klâr über allez, daz
beautifully and shines so purely and clearly over all that
got geschaffen hât, unde durch allez, daz got geschaffen hât,
God created has and through all that God created has
daz ime nieman widerschînen mac denne der ungeschaffene
that to-it no-one shine-back may but the uncreated
got alleine. Unde bî rehter wârheite, diseme tempel ist ouch
God alone And by right truth to-this temple is also
nieman gelîch denne der ungeschaffene got alleine. Allez daz
no-one like but the uncreated God alone All that
under den engeln ist daz gelîchet sich diseme tempel nihtes
under the angels is that likens itself to-this temple nothing

niht. Die hœhsten engele selbe die gelîchent diseme tempele
at-all The highest angels self they liken to-this temple
der edeln sêle etwie vil unde doch niht alzemâle. Daz sie
of-the noble soul somewhat much and yet not wholly That they
der sêle gelîchent etelîcher mâze, daz ist an bekentnüsse und
to-the soul are-like in-some measure that is in knowledge and
an minne. Doch ist in zil gesetzet, dar über enmügent
in love Yet is to-them a-limit set there over may
sie niht. Diu sêle mac wol fürbaz. Stüende ein sêle glîch
they not The soul may well further Should-stand a soul like
dem obersten des menschen, der noch lebet in der zît,
to-the highest of-the man who still lives in the time
der mensche möhte nochdenne in sîme frîen vermügende
the man might nonetheless in his free ability
unzellîche hôhe komen über den engel in eime iegelîchem
innumerably high come over the angel in each every
nû niuwe âne zal, daz ist âne wîse, und über die wîse
now newly without number that is without manner and above the manner
der engele und aller geschaffener vernünfte. Unde got der ist
of-the angels and of-all created reasons And God he is
alleine frî und ungeschaffen unde dar umbe ist er ir alleine
alone free and uncreated and there for is he to-her alone
glîch nâch der frîheite unde niht nâch der ungeschaffenheite,
like after the freedom and not after the uncreatedness
wan diu sêle ist geschaffen. Unde swenne si kumet in daz
for the soul is created And when she comes into the
ungemüschte lieht, sô sleht si in ir nihtes niht sô verre von
unmixed light so strikes she into her nothing at-all so far from
dem geschaffenen ihte in dem nihtes niht, daz si mit nihte
the created something in the nothing at-all that she by nothing
enmac wider komen in ir kraft, in ir geschaffen iht.
may back come into her power into her created something

unde got der understêt mit sîner ungeschaffenheit ir nihtes
and God he underpins with his uncreatedness her nothing
niht und enthaltet die sêle in sîm ihtes iht. Diu sêle hât
at-all and holds the soul in his something at-all The soul has
gewâget ze nihte ze werdenne und enkan ouch von ir selber
dared to nothing to become and can also from her self
zuo ir selber niht gelangen, sô verre ist si in sich vergangen,
to her self not attain so far has she into herself gone
ê daz si got hât verstanden. Daz muoz von nôt sîn.
before that she God has understood That must of necessity be
Und als ich ê sprach, Jêsus was în gegangen in den
And as I before spoke Jesus was in gone into the
tempel unde was ûz werfende, die dâ kouften unde
temple and was out casting those-who there bought and
verkouften, unde begunde ze sprechende ze den andern ‘tuont
sold and began to speak to the others do
diz hin!’ Sehent, nû habe ich daz wörtelîn: Jêsus gienc în
this hence See now have I the little-word Jesus went in
unde begunde ze sprechende ‘tuont diz hin!’ unde sie tâten
and began to speak do this hence and they did
ez hin. Sehent, dô was nieman mê dar inne denne Jêsus
it hence See then was no-one more there within but Jesus
alleine unde begunde ze sprechende in deme tempel der
alone and began to speak in the temple of-the
sêlen. Sehent, daz wizzent für wâr: wil ieman anders reden
soul See that know for true (if)-will anyone else speak
in dem tempele (daz ist in der sêle) denne Jêsus alleine,
in the temple that is in the soul than Jesus alone
sô swîget Jêsus, als er dâheime niht ensî, und er ist ouch
so is-silent Jesus as-if he at-home not be and he is also
dâheime niht in der sêle, wan si hât frömede geste, mit den
at-home not in the soul for she has strange guests with whom

si reden wil. Sol aber Jêsus reden in der sêle, sô muoz si
she speak will (If)-shall however Jesus speak in the soul so must she
alleine sîn unde muoz swîgen, sol si Jêsum hœren reden.
alone be and must be-silent (if)-shall she Jesus hear speak
Eyâ, sô gât er în unde beginnet ze sprechende. Waz sprichet
Eya so goes he in and begins to speak What speaks
her Jêsus? Er sprichet, daz er ist. Waz ist er denne? Er ist
lord Jesus He speaks what he is What is he then He is
ein wort des vaters. In deme selben worte sprichet der vater
a word of-the father In the same word speaks the father
sich selber und alle götlîche nâtûre und allez daz got ist, alsô
him self and all divine nature and all that God is so
als er ez bekennet, und er bekennet ez als ez ist, und er ist
as he it knows and he knows it as it is and he is
vollekomen in sîme bekantnüsse und in sîner vermügenheite.
perfect in his knowing and in his ability
Her umbe sô ist er ouch vollekomen in sîme sprechende.
Here for so is he also perfect in his speaking
Dâ er sprichet daz wort, dâ sprichet er sich und alliu
Where he speaks the word there speaks he himself and all
dinc in einer andern persône unde gît ime die selbe nâtûre,
things in an other person and gives to-him the same nature
die er selber hât, unde sprechent alle vernunftige geiste in
which he self has and speak all rational spirits in
dem worte glîch deme selben worte, nâch dem bilde als er
the word like to-the same word after the image as he
inne blîbende ist, nâch dem sune ez ûz liuhtende ist, als
within remaining is after the son it out shining is as
ein iegelich wort bî ime selber ist, niht gelîch in aller wîse
an every word by it self is not like in all manner
dem selben worte, mê: sie habent mügelicheit enpfangen
to-the same word but they have possibility received

glîcheit ze enpfâhende von gnâden des selben wortes, unde
likeness to receive from grace of-the same word and
daz wort, als ez in ime selber ist, daz hât der vater allez
the word as it in him self is that has the father all
gesprochen mit deme worte und allez, daz in deme worte ist.
spoken with the word and all that in the word is
Sît der vater diz gesprochen hât, waz ist denne Jêsus
Since the father this spoken has what is then Jesus
sprechende in der sêle? Als ich gesprochen habe: der vater
speaking in the soul As I spoken have the father
sprichet daz wort unde sprichet in deme worte und anders niht,
speaks the word and speaks in the word and otherwise not
unde Jêsus sprichet in der sêle. Diu wîse sînes sprechendes
and Jesus speaks in the soul The manner of-his speaking
daz ist, daz er sich selben offenbâret und allez daz der vater in
that is that he him self reveals and all that the father in
ime gesprochen hât, nâch der wîse als der geist enpfenclich
him spoken has after the manner as the spirit receptive
ist. Er offenbâret veterlîche hêrschaft in deme geiste in eime
is He reveals fatherly lordship in the spirit in an
unmêzigen gewalte. Swenne der geist diss gewaltes bevindet
immeasurable power When the spirit of-this power perceives
in deme sune, sô wirt er gewaltic in eime gelîchen fürgange,
in the son so becomes he powerful in a like progress
alsô daz er gelîch unde gewaltic wirt in allen tugenden und
so that he like and powerful becomes in all virtues and
in aller vollekomener lûterkeite, sô daz in denne liep noch
in all perfect purity so that him then joy nor
leit noch allez, daz got in der zît geschaffen hât, daz enmag
sorrow nor all that God in the time created has that may
den menschen niht zerstœren, er enblîbe gewalteclîche dar
the man not destroy but-he remain powerfully there

in stânde als in einer götlîchen kraft, der engegene sint
in standing as in a divine power which against are
alliu dinc ze kleine unde sich niht ze vermügende.
all things too small and themselves not to avail
Ze dem andern mâle offenbâret sich Jêsus in der sêle mit
At the second time reveals himself Jesus in the soul with
einer unmêzigen wîsheite, diu er selber ist, in der wîsheite
an immeasurable wisdom which he self is in the wisdom
sich der vater selbe bekennet mit aller sîner veterlîcher
himself the father self knows with all his fatherly
kraft. Unde daz selbe wort, daz ouch diu wîsheit selber ist,
power And the same word which also the wisdom self is
und allez daz dâ inne ist, daz ist allez daz selbe einig ein.
and all that there within is that is all the same single one
Swenne disiu wîsheit mit der sêle vereinet wirt, sô ist ir
When this wisdom with the soul united becomes so is from-her
aller zwîvel, irrunge und alliu dunsternisse alzemâle abe
all doubt error and all darkness wholly off
genomen und ist gesetzet in ein lûter klârez lieht, daz selber
taken and is set into a pure clear light that self
got ist, als der prophête sprichet 'herre, in dîme liehte sol
God is as the prophet speaks lord in thy light shall
man daz lieht bekennen.' Dâ wirt got mit gote bekennet
one the light know There becomes God with God known
in der sêle, sô bekennet si mit dirre wîsheit sich selbe und
in the soul so knows she with this wisdom her self and
alliu dinc, unde die selbe wîsheit bekennet si mit ir selber
all things and the same wisdom knows she with her self
niht, unde mit der selben wîsheit bekennet si die veterlîche
not and with the same wisdom knows she the fatherly
hêrschaft in fruhtberre berhaftikeit unde die weselîche istekeit
lordship in fruitful fecundity and the essential is-ness

nâch einvaltiger einekeit âne einigen underscheit. Jêsus der
after simple oneness without any distinction Jesus he
offenbâret sich ouch mit einer unmêzigen süezekeite unde
reveals himself also with an immeasurable sweetness and
rîcheite ûz des heiligen geistes kraft ûz quellende und
richness out-of the holy spirit's power out welling and
überquellende und în fliezende mit überflüzziger voller rîcheite
over-welling and in flowing with superabundant full richness
unde süezekeite in alliu enpfenclîchiu herzen. Swenne sich
and sweetness into all receptive hearts When himself
Jêsus mit dirre rîcheite unde mit dirre süezekeite offenbâret
Jesus with this richness and with this sweetness reveals
unde vereinet sich mit der sêle, sô fliuzet diu sêle mit dirre
and unites himself with the soul so flows the soul with this
rîcheite unde mit dirre süezekeite in sich selber und ûz
richness and with this sweetness into her self and out-of
sich selber und über alliu dinc von gnâden mit gewalte âne
her self and over all things by grace with power without
mitel wider in ir êrste begin. Denne ist der ûzer mensche
means back into her first beginning Then is the outer man
gehôrsam sîme innern menschen unz an sînen tôt und ist
obedient to-his inner man until to his death and is
denne in stêtem friden in deme dienste gotes âlle zît.
then in constant peace in the service of-God all time
Daz ouch Jêsus in uns komen müeze ûz werfende unde
That also Jesus into us come may out casting and
hin tuonde alle hindernisse lîbes unde sêle, daz wir mit
hence putting all hindrances of-body and soul that we with
ime einz werden hie ûf der erden unde dort in himelrîche,
him one become here on the earth and there in heaven
des helfe uns got. Âmen.
that help us God Amen

VIII. Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum

Jesus went up into a little castle and was received by a virgin who was a wife. A virgin is free of all alien images, as free as when he was not, though he may know much. But a virgin bears no fruit, and wife is the nobler word. Those bound by possessiveness to prayers, fasts, and vigils are married people who bear little fruit; the free virgin who is a wife bears a thousand times a day from the ground where the Father bears His Word. In one power of the soul God blooms, in another He burns, and suffering borne for God alone is light. Above both is the little castle, so simple that God enters only as He is one, leaving His names and Persons.

Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum et mulier quædam
Entered Jesus into a-certain little-castle and woman a-certain
excepit illum etc. (Luc. X, 38.). Ich hân ein wörtelîn
received him etc. Luke X 38 I have a little-word
gesprochen des êrsten in dem latîne, daz stât geschriben
spoken at-the first in the Latin that stands written
in dem êwangeliô und sprichet alsô ze tiusche ‘unser herre
in the gospel and speaks thus in German our lord
Jêsus Kristus der gienc ûf in ein bürgelîn unde wart
Jesus Christ he went up into a little-castle and was
enpfangen von einer juncfrouwen, diu ein wîp was.’
received by a virgin who a woman was
Eyâ, nû merkent mit flîze diz wort. Ez muoz von nôt sîn,
Eya now mark with diligence this word It must of necessity be
daz si ein juncvrouwe was der mensche, von der Jêsus wart
that she a virgin was the person by whom Jesus was
enpfangen. Juncvrowe ist alsô vil gesprochen, als ein mensche,
received Virgin is as much spoken as a person
der lidic ist aller fremder bilden, alsô lidig als er was dô er
who free is of-all alien images as free as he was when he
niht enwas. Sehent, nû möhte man vrâgen: der mensche, der
not was See now might one ask the man who

geborn ist unde vor gegangen ist in vernünftic leben, wie
born is and before gone is into rational life how
der alsô lidic müge sîn aller bilde, als dô er niht enwas, und
he so free may be of-all images as when he not was and
er weiz doch vil, daz sint allez bilde: wie mac er denne lidic
he knows yet much that are all images how may he then free
sîn? Nû merkent daz underscheit, daz wil ich iu bewisen.
be Now mark the distinction that will I to-you show
Wêre ich alsô vernünftic, daz alliu bilde vernünfteclîche in
Were I so rational that all images rationally in
mir stüenden, diu alle menschen ie enpfangen hânt unde
me stood which all men ever received have and
diu in gote selber sint, wêre ich des âne eigenschaft,
which in God self are were I of-them without possessiveness
daz ich enkeinez mit eigenschaft hête begriffen in tuonne
that I none with possessiveness had grasped in doing
noch in lâzenne, mit vor noch mit nâch, mêr: daz ich in
nor in leaving with before nor with after but that I in
disem gegenwürtigen nû vrî unde ledic stüende nâch deme
this present now free and empty stood after the
liebesten willen gotes unde den ze tuonne âne underlâz,
dearest will of-God and that to do without ceasing
in der wârheit sô wêre ich juncvrowe âne hindernisse
in the truth so were I virgin without hindrance
aller bilde als gewêrlich, als ich was dô ich niht enwas.
of-all images as truly as I was when I not was
Ich spriche aber, daz der mensche ist juncvrowe, daz enbenimet
I say however that the man is virgin that takes-from
ime nihtes niht von allen den werken, diu er ie getet: des
him nothing at-all of all the works which he ever did of-that
stât er megetlich unde vrî âne alle hindernisse in der obersten
stands he maidenly and free without all hindrance in the highest

wârheit als Jêsus ledig und vrî ist unde megetlich in ime
truth as Jesus empty and free is and maidenly in him
selber. Als die meister sprechent, daz gelîch unde gelîch alleine
self As the masters say that like and like alone
ein sache sî der einunge, har umbe sô muoz der mensche
a cause be of-the union here for so must the man
maget sîn, juncfrowe, diu den megetlîchen Jêsum enpfâhen sol.
maid be virgin who the maidenly Jesus receive shall
Nû merkent unde sehent mit vlîze: daz nû der mensche
Now mark and see with diligence that now the man
iemer mê juncvrowe wêre, sô enkême niemer enkeine fruht
ever more virgin were so would-come never any fruit
von ime. Sol er fruhtbêr werden, sô muoz daz von nôt
from him (If)-shall he fruitful become so must that of necessity
sîn, daz er ein wîp sî. Wîp ist daz edelste wort, daz
be that he a woman be Woman is the noblest word that
man der sêle zuo gesprechen mac, und ist edeler denne
one to-the soul to speak may and is nobler than
juncvrowe. Daz der mensche got enpfâhet in ime, daz ist
virgin That the man God receives in him that is
guot, und in der enpfenclicheit ist er maget. Daz aber got
good and in the receptivity is he maid That however God
fruhtbêrlich in ime werde, daz ist bezzer: wan fruhtbêrkeit
fruitful in him become that is better for fruitfulness
der gâbe daz ist alleine dancbêrkeit der gâbe unde dâ
of-the gift that is alone thankfulness for-the gift and there
ist der geist ein wîp in der widergebornen dancbêrkeit,
is the spirit a woman in the reborn thankfulness
dâ er gote wider gebirt Jêsum in daz veterlîche herze.
where he to-God back bears Jesus into the fatherly heart

Vil guoter gâben werdent enpfangen in der juncvröwelicheit
Many good gifts are received in the virginity
und enwerdent niht wider în geborn in der wîplîchen
and are not back in born in the wifely
fruhtbêrkeit mit dancbêrem lobe in got. Die gâbe verderbent
fruitfulness with thankful praise into God The gifts perish
unde werdent alle ze nihte, daz der mensche niemer sêliger
and become all to nothing so-that the man never more-blessed
noch bezzer dar abe wirt. Dâ enist ime sîn juncvröwelicheit
nor better there from becomes There is to-him his virginity
ze nihte nütze, wan er niht ein wîp enist zuo der
to nothing useful for he not a woman is to the
juncvröwelicheit mit ganzer fruhtbêrkeit Dar an lît der
virginity with whole fruitfulness There on lies the
schade. Dar umbe hân ich gesprochen 'Jêsus gienc ûf in ein
harm There for have I spoken Jesus went up into a
bürgelîn unde wart enpfangen von einer juncvrowen, diu ein
little-castle and was received by a virgin who a
wîp was.' Daz muoz von nôt sîn, als ich iu bewîset hân.
woman was That must of necessity be as I to-you shown have
Elîche liute die bringent des jâres lützel mê denne éine fruht.
Married people they bring in-the year little more than one fruit
Aber ander êlîche liute die meine ich nû ze disem mâle: alle
But other married people those mean I now at this time all
die mit eigenschaft gebunden sint an gebete, an vastenne, an
who with possessiveness bound are to prayer to fasting to
wachenne und aller hande ûzerlîcher üebunge unde kestigunge.
waking and of-all kinds outward exercise and chastisement
Ein iegelîchiu eigenschaft eines werkes, daz die vrîheit benimet,
An every possessiveness of-a work that the freedom takes-away
in diseme gegenwürtigen nû gote ze wartenne unde dem
in this present now God to attend and him

alleine ze volgenne in dem liehte, mit dem er dich anwîsende
alone to follow in the light with which he thee directing
wêre ze tuonde unde ze lâzende in eime ieglîchen nû frî unde
were to do and to leave in an every now free and
niuwe, als obe dû anders niht enhabest noch enwellest noch
new as if thou otherwise nothing have nor will nor
enkünnest: ein ieglîchiu eigenschaft oder fürgesetzet werc, daz
can an every possessiveness or purposed work that
dir dise frîheit benimet alle zît niuwe, daz heize ich nû
from-thee this freedom takes-away all time new that call I now
ein jâr, wan dîn sêle bringet dekeine fruht, si enhabe daz
a year for thy soul brings no fruit unless-she have the
werc getân, daz dû mit eigenschaft besezzen hâst, noch dû
work done that thou with possessiveness possessed hast nor thou
engetriuwest gote noch dir selber, dû enhabest dîn werc
trustest God nor thee self unless-thou have thy work
vollebrâht, daz dû mit eigenschaft begriffen hâst, anders sô
accomplished that thou with possessiveness grasped hast otherwise so
enhâst dû dekeinen vriden. Dar umbe sô enbringest dû ouch
hast thou no peace There for so bringest thou also
enkeine fruht, dû enhabest dîn werc getân. Daz setze
no fruit unless-thou have thy work done That set
ich für ein jâr, unde diu fruht ist noch denne kleine, wan
I for a year and the fruit is still then small for
si ûz eigenschaft gegangen ist nâch dem werke, unde niht
it out-of possessiveness gone is after the work and not
von vrîheit. Daz heize ich êlîche liute, wan sie an eigenschaft
from freedom Those call I married people for they to possessiveness
gebunden stânt. Dise bringent lützel frühte unde diu selbe
bound stand These bring few fruits and the same
ist nochdenne kleine vor gote, als ich gesprochen hân.
is nonetheless small before God as I spoken have

Ein juncvrouwe, diu ein wîp ist, vrî und ungebunden âne
A virgin who a woman is free and unbound without
eigenschaft, diu ist gote und ir selber alle zît gelîch nâhe.
possessiveness she is to-God and to-her self all time equally near
Diu bringet vil frühte unde die sint grôz, minre noch mê
She brings many fruits and they are great less nor more
denne got selber ist, Dise fruht unt dise geburt machet
than God self is This fruit and this birth makes
disiu juncvrowe, diu ein wîp ist, geborn unde gebirt alle
this virgin who a woman is born and bears all
tage hundert mâle oder tûsent mâle, joch âne zal ist si
days hundred times or thousand times yea without number is she
geberende unde fruhtbêr werdende ûz dem aller edelsten
bearing and fruitful becoming out-of the all noblest
grunde; noch baz gesprochen, jâ ûz dem selben grunde,
ground still better spoken yea out-of the same ground
dâ der vater ûz gebernde ist sîn êwic wort: dar ûz wirt si
where the father out bearing is his eternal word there out becomes she
fruhtbêr mit geberende. Wan Jêsus, daz lieht unde der schîn
fruitful with bearing For Jesus the light and the shine
des veterlîchen herzen (als sant Paulus sprichet, daz er ist ein
of-the fatherly heart as saint Paul says that he is an
êre und ein schîn des veterlîchen herzen, und er durchliuhtet
honor and a shine of-the fatherly heart and he through-shines
mit gewalt daz veterlîche herze), dirre Jêsus ist mit ir vereinet
with power the fatherly heart this Jesus is with her united
unde si mit im unde si liuhtet unde schînet mit im als ein
and she with him and she shines and gleams with him as a
einig ein und als ein lûter klâr lieht in dem veterlîchen herzen.
single one and as a pure clear light in the fatherly heart

Ich hân ouch mê gesprochen, daz ein kraft in der sêle
I have also more spoken that a power in the soul
ist, diu berüeret niht zît noch fleisch, si fliuzet ûz dem
is which touches not time nor flesh she flows out-of the
geiste unde belîbet in dem geiste und ist zemâle geistlich.
spirit and remains in the spirit and is wholly spiritual
In dirre kraft ist got alzemâle grüenende unde blüende in
In this power is God wholly greening and blooming in
aller der fröide und in aller der êre, daz er in im selber
all the joy and in all the honor that he in him self
ist. Dâ ist alsô herzenlîchiu fröide und alsô unbegrîfenlîchiu
is There is so heartfelt joy and so incomprehensible
grôze fröide, daz dâ nieman volle abe gesprechen kan. wan
great joy that there no-one fully of speak can for
der êwige vater gebirt sînen êwigen sun in dirre kraft âne
the eternal father bears his eternal son in this power without
underlâz, alsô daz disiu kraft mit-gebernde ist den sun des
ceasing so that this power co-bearing is the son of-the
vater unde sich selber den selben sun in der einiger kraft
father and her self the same son in the single power
des vater. Und hête ein mensche ein ganzez künicrîche oder
of-the father And had a man a whole kingdom or
allez daz guot von ertrîche, unde lieze daz lûterlîche durch
all the goods of earth and left that purely for
got und würde der ermesten menschen einz, der ienâ lebt
God and became of-the poorest men one who anywhere lives
ûf ertrîche, und gêbe im denne got alsô vil ze lîdende,
on earth and gave to-him then God as much to suffer
als er ie menschen gegab, und lite er allez diz unz
as he ever to-man gave and should-suffer he all this until
an sînen tôt, und gêbe im denne got einen ougenblic ze
to his death and gave to-him then God one eye-blink to

schouwende, wie er in dirre kraft ist: sîn fröide würde
behold how he in this power is his joy would-become
alsô grôz, daz alles diss lîdens und armüetes wêre nochdenne
so great that all this suffering and poverty were nonetheless
ze kleine. Jâ engêbe im joch got her nâch niemer
too small Yea should-give to-him even God here after never
himelrîches mê, er hête nochdenne alze grôzen lôn
of-heaven more he would-have nonetheless all-too great reward
enpfangen umb allez dez er ie geleit: wan got ist in dirre
received for all that he ever endured for God is in this
kraft als in dem êwigen nû. Wêre der geist allezît gote
power as in the eternal now Were the spirit always to-God
vereinet in dirre kraft, der mensche enmöhte niht alten.
united in this power the man could not age
wan daz nû, dâ got den êrsten menschen inne machete,
for the now where God the first man in made
unde daz nû, dâ der leste mensche inne sol vergân,
and the now where the last man in shall perish
unde daz nû, dâ ich inne spriche, die sint gelîch in gote
and the now where I in speak they are alike in God
und enist niht denne éin nû. Nû sehent, dirre mensche
and is not but one now Now see this man
wonet in éinem liehte mit gote, dar umbe enist in ime
dwells in one light with God there for is in him
noch lîden noch volgen, sunder ein gelîchiu êwikeit. Disem
neither suffering nor sequence but an equal eternity From-this
menschen ist in der wârheit wunder abe genomen und alliu
man is in the truth wonder off taken and all
dinc stânt weselîche in ime. Dar umbe enpfâhet er niht
things stand essentially in him There for receives he nothing
niuwes von künftigen dingen noch von keinem zuovalle,
new from future things nor from any chance

wan er wonet in einem nû, allezît niuwe grüenende âne
for he dwells in one now always newly greening without
underlâz. Alsolichiu götlîchiu hêrschaft ist in dirre kraft.
ceasing Such divine lordship is in this power
Noch ein kraft ist, diu ist ouch unlîplich: si fliuzet ûz dem
Yet a power is which is also bodiless she flows out-of the
geiste unde belîbet in dem geiste und ist zemâle geistlich. In
spirit and remains in the spirit and is wholly spiritual In
dirre kraft ist got âne underlâz glimmende unde brinnende
this power is God without ceasing glowing and burning
mit aller sîner rîcheit mit aller sîner süezekeit unde mit aller
with all his richness with all his sweetness and with all
sîner wunne. Wêrlich! in dirre kraft ist alsô grôziu fröide und
his delight Truly in this power is so great joy and
alsô grôziu unmêzigiu wunne, daz nieman nâch wârheit dar
so great immeasurable delight that no-one after truth there
abe gesprechen noch geoffenbâren kan. Ich spriche aber, wêr
of speak nor reveal can I say however were
ein einic mensche, der hie inne schouwete vernünfteclîche in
a single man who here within beheld rationally in
der wârheit einen ougenblic die wunne unde die fröide: allez
the truth one eye-blink the delight and the joy all
daz er gelîden möhte unde daz got von ime geliten wolte hân,
that he suffer might and that God from him suffered would have
daz wêre im allez kleine unde joch nihtesniht; ich spriche
that would-be to-him all small and even nothing-at-all I say
noch mê: ez wêre im alzemâle ein fröide und ein gemach.
yet more it would-be to-him wholly a joy and an ease
Wilt dû rehte wizzen, obe dîn lîden dîn sî oder gotes, daz
(If)-wilt thou rightly know whether thy suffering thine be or God's that
solt dû her an merken. Lîdest dû umbe dîn selbes willen,
shalt thou here on mark (If)-sufferest thou for thy self's sake

in welher wîse daz ist, daz lîden tuot dir wê und ist dir
in whatever manner that is the suffering does to-thee woe and is to-thee
swêre ze tragende. Lîdest dû aber umbe got und gote
heavy to bear (If)-sufferest thou however for God and to-God
alleine, daz lîden entuot dir niht wê unde ist dir ouch
alone the suffering does to-thee not woe and is to-thee also
niht swêre, wan got treit den last. Mit guoter wârheit! wêre
not heavy for God bears the burden With good truth were
ein mensche, der lîden wolte durch got unde lûterlîche gote
a man who suffer would for God and purely to-God
alleine, und viele allez daz lîden ûf in zemâle daz alle
alone and should-fall all the suffering upon him wholly that all
menschen ie geliten unde daz al diu welt hât gemeinlich, daz
men ever suffered and that all the world has in-common that
entête ime niht wê noch enwêre ime ouch niht swêre, wan
did to-him not woe nor would-be to-him also not heavy for
got der trüege den last. Der mir einen zentener leite ûf
God he would-bear the burden Who to-me a hundredweight should-lay on
mînen hals und in denne ein ander trüege ûf sîme halse, alse
my neck and it then an other bore on his neck as
liep leite ich hundert ûf als einen, wan ez enwêre mir niht
gladly would-lay I hundred on as one for it would-be to-me not
swêre noch entête mir ouch niht wê. Kürzlîche gesprochen:
heavy nor would-do to-me also not woe Briefly spoken
swaz der mensche lîdet durch got und gote alleine, daz
whatever the man suffers for God and to-God alone that
machet er ime lîht unde süeze, als ich sprach in deme beginne,
makes he to-him light and sweet as I spoke in the beginning
dâ mite wir unser bredige begunden: 'Jêsus gienc ûf in ein
there with we our sermon began Jesus went up into a
bürgelîn unde wart enpfangen von einer juncvrouwen, diu ein
little-castle and was received by a virgin who a

wîp was.' War umbe? Daz muoste sîn von nôt, daz si ein
woman was Where fore That must be of necessity that she a
juncvrouwe was und ouch ein wîp. Nû hân ich iu geseit,
virgin was and also a woman Now have I to-you said
daz Jêsus enpfangen wart: ich enhân iu aber niht geseit,
that Jesus received was I have to-you however not said
waz daz bürgelîn sî, alsô als ich nû dar abe sprechen wil.
what the little-castle be so as I now there of speak will
Ich hân etwenne gesprochen, ez sî ein kraft in dem geiste,
I have sometimes spoken it be a power in the spirit
diu sî alleine frî. Underwîlen hân ich gesprochen, ez sî ein
which be alone free Sometimes have I spoken it be a
hütte des geistes; underwîlen hân ich gesprochen, ez sî ein
but of-the spirit sometimes have I spoken it be a
lieht des geistes; underwîlen hân ich gesprochen, ez sî ein
light of-the spirit sometimes have I spoken it be a
fünkelîn. Ich spriche aber nû: ez enist weder diz noch daz.
little-spark I say however now it is neither this nor that
Nochdenne ist ez ein waz: daz ist hœher boben diz unt
Nonetheless is it a something that is higher above this and
daz denne der himel ob der erden. Dar umbe nenne ich ez
that than the heaven above the earth There for name I it
nû in einer edelerr wîse denne ich ez ie genante, und ez
now in a nobler manner than I it ever named and it
luoget der edelkeit unde der wîse und ist dar enboben. Ez
peers-over the nobility and the manner and is there above It
ist von allen namen frî unde von allen formen blôz, ledig
is of all names free and of all forms bare empty
unde frî zemâle, als got ledig unde frî ist in ime selber. Ez
and free wholly as God empty and free is in him self It
ist sô gar ein und einvaltig, als got ein und einvaltig ist,
is so wholly one and simple as God one and simple is

daz man mit dekeiner wîse dar zuo geluogen mac. Diu selbe
that one with no manner there to peer may The same
kraft, dar abe ich gesprochen hân, dar inne ist got blüende
power there of I spoken have there in is God blooming
unde grüenende mit aller sîner gotheit unde der geist in
and greening with all his godhead and the spirit in
gote, in der selber kraft, dâ der vater sînen einbornen
God in the same power where the father his only-begotten
sun inne bernde ist als gewêrlîche als in ime selber, wan er
son in bearing is as truly as in him self for he
wêrlîche lebet în dirre kraft, unde der geist gebirt mit dem
truly lives in this power and the spirit bears with the
vater den selben sun und sich selber den selben sun und ist
father the same son and her self the same son and is
der selbe sun in disem liehte und ist diu wârheit. Möhtent
the same son in this light and is the truth Could
ir gemerken mit mînem herzen, ir verstüendent wol waz ich
you perceive with my heart you would-understand well what I
spriche, wan ez ist wâr unde diu wârheit sprichet ez selbe.
say for it is true and the truth speaks it self
Sehent, nû merkent, alsô ein und einvaltig ist diz bürgelîn
See now mark so one and simple is this little-castle
boben alle wîse, dâ von ich iu sage unde daz ich meine,
above all manner there of I to-you speak and which I mean
in der sêle, daz disiu edele kraft, von der ich gesprochen
in the soul that this noble power of which I spoken
hân, niht des wirdig ist, daz si iemer mêr dar în geluoge
have not of-it worthy is that she ever more there in peer
einen ougenblic, noch ouch diu ander kraft, dâ got ist inne
one eye-blink nor also the other power where God is in
glimmende unde brinnende, diu engetar ouch niemer mê
glowing and burning she dares also never more

dar în geluogen, sô rehte ein und einvaltig ist diz bürgelîn
there in peer so rightly one and simple is this little-castle
unde sô enboben alle wîse und alle krefte ist diz einig ein,
and so above all manner and all powers is this single one
daz ime niemer kraft noch wîse zuo geluogen mac noch
that to-it never power nor manner to peer may nor
got selber. Mit guoter wârheit! und alsô wêrlîche als daz
God self With good truth and as truly as that
got lebet, got selber luoget dâ niemer în einen ougenblic
God lives God self peers there never in one eye-blink
unde geluogete noch nie dar în. als er sich habende
and peered yet never there in as he himself having
ist nâch wîse und ûf eigenschaft sîner persônen. Diz ist
is after manner and on property of-his persons This is
guot ze merkenne, wan diz einig ein ist sunder wîse und
good to mark for this single one is without manner and
sunder eigenschaft. Und dar umbe, sol got iemer dar în
without property And there for (if)-shall God ever there in
geluogen, ez muoz in kosten alle sîn götlîche namen unde
peer it must him cost all his divine names and
sîn persônlich eigenschaft: daz muoz er allez hie vor lâzen,
his personal property that must he all here before leave
sol er iemer mê dar în geluogen. sunder als er ist
(if)-shall he ever more there in peer but as he is
einvaltig ein, âne alle wîse und eigenschaft: dâ enist er
simple one without all manner and property there is-neither he
vater noch sun noch heiliger geist in disem sinne, und ist
father nor son nor holy spirit in this sense and is
doch ein waz, daz enist noch diz noch daz. Sehent, alsus
yet a something that is neither this nor that See thus
als er ein ist und einvaltig, alsô kumet er in daz ein, daz
as he one is and simple so comes he into the one that

ich dâ heize ein bürgelîn in der sêle, und anders kumt er
I there call a little-castle in the soul and otherwise comes he
enkeine wîse dar în: sunder alsô kumet er dar în und ist
in-no manner there in but so comes he there in and is
dâ inne. Mit dem teile ist diu sêle gote gelîch und anders
there within With the part is the soul to-God like and otherwise
niht. Daz ich iu geseit hân daz ist wâr: des setze ich
not That I to-you said have that is true of-that set I
iu die wârheit ze einem geziugen unde mîne sêle ze einem
to-you the truth for a witness and my soul for a
pfande. Daz wir alsus sîn ein bürgelîn, in dem Jêsus ûf
pledge That we thus be a little-castle in which Jesus up
gange und werde enpfangen und êweclîche in uns belîbe in
go and be received and eternally in us remain in
der wîse, als ich gesprochen hân, des helf uns got. Âmen.
the manner as I spoken have that help us God Amen

IX. Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum, Martha nomine

Mary sat at the Lord's feet, held by God's goodness, a nameless longing, and sweet comfort; Martha served from ripe age, a well-exercised ground, and a wise understanding. Martha, who knew Mary better than Mary knew her, asks that Mary help, fearing she would stay in delight. Christ names her twice, for she lacked nothing; she stands by her cares, not in them. Works should be orderly, rational, and knowing. Only after receiving the Spirit did Mary serve and preach.

Intravit Jesus in quoddam castellum, et mulier quædam,
Entered Jesus into a-certain little-castle and woman a-certain
Martha nomine, excepit illum etc. (Luc. X, 38.). Sant Lucas
Martha by-name received him etc. Luke X 38 Saint Luke
schrîbet in dem êwangeliô, daz unser herre Jêsus Kristus
writes in the gospel that our lord Jesus Christ

gieng in ein stetlîn, dâ enpfieng in ein frouwe, hiez
went into a little-town there received him a lady called
Marthâ, diu hêt eine swester, hiez Marîâ; diu saz ze den
Martha she had a sister called Mary she sat at the
füezen unsers herren unde hôrte sîn wort, aber Marthâ
feet of-our lord and heard his word but Martha
gieng umbe unde diente unserm herren.
went about and served our lord
Driu dinc tâten Marîen sitzen bî den füezen unsers herren.
Three things made Mary sit by the feet of-our lord
Daz ein was: diu güeti gotes hete umbegriffen ir sêle.
The one was the goodness of-God had embraced her soul
Daz ander was grôz unsprechlîchiu girde: si begerte, si
The second was great unspeakable desire she desired she
enwiste wie, unde wolte, si enwiste waz. Daz dritte was
knew-not how and willed she knew-not what The third was
süezer trôst unde lust, den si schepfete ûz dem êwigen
sweet comfort and delight that she drew out-of the eternal
worte, diu dâ runnen durch den munt Kristî.
words which there ran through the mouth of-Christ
Marthâ zugen ouch driu dinc, diu sî tâten umbe gân unde
Martha drew also three things which her made about go and
dienen dem lieben Kristô. Daz ein was ein hêrlich altar
serve the dear Christ The one was a lordly age
und ein wol geüebeter grunt ûf daz aller nêhste, dâ von
and a well exercised ground unto the all nearest there from
dûhte sî, daz niemanne daz werc alsô wol ze tuonde wêre
seemed to-her that to-no-one the work so well to do were
als ir. Daz ander was ein wîsiu verstantnüsse, diu daz
as to-her The second was a wise understanding which the

ûzer werc wol gerihten kunde in daz nêhste, daz minne
outer work well direct could into the nearest that love
gebiutet. Daz dritte was grôziu wirdekeit des lieben gastes.
commands The third was great worthiness of-the dear guest
Die meister sprechent, daz got einem ieglîchen menschen
The masters say that God to-an every man
bereit sî nâch redelîcher genüegede unde nâch sinnelîcher ûf
ready be after rational satisfaction and after sensual to
daz jungeste, des er begert. Daz uns got genuoc sî nâch
the last of-what he desires That to-us God enough be after
redelicheit unde daz er uns ouch genuoc sî nâch sinnelicheit,
reason and that he to-us also enough be after sensuality
daz hât underscheit an den lieben friunden gotes. Genuoc sîn
that has distinction in the dear friends of-God Enough be
nâch sinnelicheit, daz ist, daz uns got gît trôst, lust und
after sensuality that is that us God gives comfort delight and
genüegde und hie mite verwenet sîn. daz gât abe den lieben
satisfaction and here with spoiled be that goes off from-the dear
friunden gotes nâch den inren sinnen. Aber redelîchiu genüegde
friends of-God after the inner senses But rational satisfaction
daz ist nâch dem geiste. Ich spriche dem redelîche genüegde,
that is after the spirit I call that rational satisfaction
daz von allem luste daz oberste wipfellîn niht wirt geneiget
that from all delight the highest little-top not becomes bent
her abe, daz ez niht ertrinke in dem luste, ez enstande
here down that it not drown in the delight but-it stand
gewalteclîche ûf im. Denne ist er in redelîcher genüegde, sô
powerfully upon it Then is he in rational satisfaction when
lieb unde leit der crêatûre daz obreste wipfellîn niht geneigen
joy and sorrow of-the creature the highest little-top not bend
mac. Crêatûre heize ich allez, des man enpfindet under got.
may Creature call I all that one perceives under God

Nû sprichet Marthâ ‘herre, heiz, daz si mir helfe.’ Diz
Now speaks Martha lord bid that she me help This
ensprach Marthâ niht von hazze, mêr: sî sprach ez von
spoke Martha not from hate but she spoke it from
eime minnegunste, von dem wart si betwungen. Wir sullen
a love-favor by which was she compelled We shall
nû sprechen einen minnegunst oder einen minneschimpf.
now speak a love-favor or a love-jest
Alse wie? Daz merkent. Si sach, daz Marîâ umbegriffen was
As how That mark She saw that Mary embraced was
mit luste nâch aller ir sêle genüegede. Marthâ bekande baz
with delight after all her soul's satisfaction Martha knew better
Marîen denne Marîâ Marthen, wan si lange unde wol gelebet
Mary than Mary Martha for she long and well lived
hete, wan leben gît daz edelste bekennen. Leben bekennet
had for life gives the noblest knowing Life knows
baz lust unde lieht denne allez, daz man in disem lîbe under
better delight and light than all that one in this life under
got enpfâhen mag, und etelîche wîse lûterr denne êwic lieht
God receive may and in-some manner purer than eternal light
gegeben müge. Êwic lieht gibet ze erkennende sich selber unde
give may Eternal light gives to know it self and
got, aber niht sich selber âne got, dâ er sich selber alleine
God but not it self without God where he him self alone
siht. Dâ merkent ez baz, waz gelîch oder ungelîch ist. Daz
sees There mark it better what like or unlike is That
bewîset sanctus Paulus und ouch die heidenischen meister. Sant
shows saint Paul and also the heathen masters Saint
Paul sach in sînem zuke got unde sich selber nâch geistes
Paul saw in his rapture God and him self after spirit's
wîse in got unde was doch niht billîche wîse in im, ein
manner in God and was yet not fitting manner in him an

ieglîche tugende ze erkennen an daz nêhste, unde daz was dâ
every virtue to know on the nearest and that was there
von, daz er sich an den werken niht geüebet hete. Die meister
from that he himself in the works not exercised had The masters
kâmen mit üebunge der tugende in sô hôch bekantnüsse,
came with exercise of-the virtues into so high knowledge
daz sie eine ieglîche tugent bildeclîche nêher bekanten denne
that they an every virtue imagewise nearer knew than
Paulus oder dehein heilige in sînem êrsten zuke.
Paul or any saint in his first rapture
Alsô stuont ouch Marthâ. Dâ von sprach si 'herre, heiz,
So stood also Martha There from spoke she lord bid
daz si mir helfe.' als ob si sprêche: mîne swester dunket,
that she me help as if she spoke my sister seems-to-herself
si vermüge swaz si welle, die wîle si bî dir in dem trôste
she can whatever she will the while she by thee in the comfort
sitzet: nû lâz schouwen, ob es alsô sî, unde heiz sî ûf stên
sits now let see whether it so be and bid her up stand
unde von dir gân. Daz ander was ein lieplîch minnen, wan
and from thee go The second was a lovely loving for
daz si ez sprêche ûz dem sinne. Marîâ was sô vol girde, si
that she it spoke out-of the mind Mary was so full of-desire she
gerte, si enwiste wie, unde wolte, si enwiste waz. Wir hân
desired she knew-not how and willed she knew-not what We have
sî arcwênic die lieben Marîen, si sêze etwenne mê durch
her suspected the dear Mary she sat sometimes more for
lust denne durch redelîchen nutz. Dâ von sprach Marthâ
delight than for rational profit There from spoke Martha
'herre, heiz sî ûf stân!' wan si vorhte, daz si belîbe in dem
lord bid her up stand for she feared that she remain in the
luste unde niht fürbaz enkême. Dô antwurte ir Kristus unde
delight and not further came Then answered her Christ and

sprach ‘Marthâ, Marthâ, dû bist sorcsam, dû wirst betrüebet
spoke Martha Martha thou art careful thou becomest troubled
umbe vil. des einen ist nôt: Marîâ hât den besten teil
about much of-the one is need Mary has the best part
erwelt, der ir niemer mac benomen werden. Diz wort
chosen which from-her never may taken become This word
sprach Kristus niht zuo Marthen in einer strâfender wîse,
spoke Christ not to Martha in a rebuking manner
mêr: er antwurte ir unde gab ir trôst, daz Marîâ werden
but he answered her and gave her comfort that Mary become
solte als si begerte. War umbe sprach Kristus: Marthâ, und
should as she desired Where fore spoke Christ Martha and
nampte sî zwirunt? Isidorus sprichet: ez ist âne zwîvel, daz
named her twice Isidore says it is without doubt that
got vor der zît daz er mensche wart nie mensche genampte
God before the time that he man became never man named
mit namen, daz ir dekein ie verlorn würde. die er niht
with name that of-them any ever lost would-be those he not
ennante, umbe die stât ez in zwîvel. Nennen Kristî heize
named about them stands it in doubt Naming of-Christ call
ich sîn êwigez wizzen, unwandelliche stân êweclîche vor
I his eternal knowing unchangeably standing eternally before
geschöpfede aller crêatûren in dem lebenden buoche vater sun
creation of-all creatures in the living book father son
und heilig geist. Swaz dar inne genennet was unde Kristus
and holy spirit Whatever there in named was and Christ
den namen mit worten her ûz sprach, der menschen wart
the name with words here out spoke of-the men became
enkeinez nie verlorn. Daz bewîset Moyses, zuo dem got selber
none ever lost That shows Moses to whom God self
sprach ‘ich hân dich mit namen erkant’, unde Nathanaêl, zuo
spoke I have thee by name known and Nathanael to

dem der liebe Kristus sprach 'ich bekante dich, dô dû lêge
whom the dear Christ spoke I knew thee when thou lay
under dem vîcboume.' Der vîcboum bezeichent ein gemüete,
under the fig-tree The fig-tree signifies a mind
daz sich gote niht verseit und in sînen namen êweclich
that itself to-God not denies and in his names eternally
geschriben was. Und alsô ist bewîset, wie der menschen
written was And so is shown how of-the men
keiner niemer wart noch wirt verlorn, den der liebe Kristus
none ever was nor becomes lost whom the dear Christ
durch menschlîchen munt ûz dem êwigen worte ie genante.
through human mouth out-of the eternal word ever named
Wâ von nante er Marthen zwirunt? Er meinte, allez daz
Where from named he Martha twice He meant all that
zîtlîches und êwiges guotes wêre unde daz crêatûre besitzen
of-temporal and eternal good were and that creature possess
solte, daz daz Marthâ zemâle hâte. An dem êrsten, dô er
should that that Martha wholly had At the first when he
sprach Marthâ, dô bewîste er vollekomenheit zîtlîcher werke.
spoke Martha then showed he perfection of-temporal works
Zuo dem andern mâle dô er sprach Marthâ, dô bewîste
At the second time when he spoke Martha then showed
er, allez daz dâ hœret ze êwiger sêlde, daz in des niht
he all that there belongs to eternal bliss that to-them of-it nothing
enbreste. Dâ von sprach er 'dû bist sorcsam', unde meinte:
lacked There from spoke he thou art careful and meant
dû stâst bî den dingen unde diu dinc stânt niht in dir;
thou standest by the things and the things stand not in thee
unde die stânt mit sorgen, die âne hindernüsse stânt in
and those stand with cares who without hindrance stand in
allem irm gewerbe. Die stânt âne hindernüsse, die alliu ir
all their business Those stand without hindrance who all their

werk rihtent ordenlîche nâch dem bilde des êwigen liehtes.
works direct orderly after the image of-the eternal light
Werc üebet man von ûzen, aber gewerbe ist, sô man
Works exercises one from outside but business is when one
mit redelîcher bescheidenheit sich üebet von innen; unde
with rational discretion himself exercises from within and
die liute stânt bî den dingen unde niht in den dingen.
the people stand by the things and not in the things
Sie stânt vil nâhe unde habent es niht minre denne ob
They stand very near and have it not less than if
sie stüenden dort oben an dem umberinge der êwikeit vil
they stood there above at the circle of-the eternity very
nâhe. Wan alle crêatûre die mitelent. Mitel ist zwivalt. Einez
near For all creatures they mediate Means is twofold One
ist, âne daz ich in got niht komen mac, daz ist werc
is without which I into God not come may that is work
und gewerbe in der zît, als ouch dâ vor geschriben ist,
and business in the time as also there before written is
unde daz enminret niht êwige sêlde. Daz ander mitel daz
and that lessens not eternal bliss The other means that
ist: blôz sîn des selben. Wan dar umbe sîn wir gesetzet
is bare being of-the same For there for are we set
in die zît, daz wir von zîtlîchem vernünftigem gewerbe
into the time that we by temporal rational business
gote nêher unde gelîcher werden. Daz meinte ouch sanctus
to-God nearer and more-like become That meant also saint
Paulus dô er sprach 'lœsent die zît, die tage sint übel.' Die
Paul when he spoke redeem the time the days are evil The
zît lœsen ist, daz man âne underlâz ûf gange in got mit
time redeem is that one without ceasing up go into God with
vernünftekeit unde niht nâch bildelîcher underscheidenheit,
reason and not after imagewise distinction

mêr: mit vernünftiger lobelîcher wârheit. Unde sint die
but with rational praiseworthy truth And (if)-are the
tage übel, daz verstânt alsô. Tac bewîset naht, wan enwêre
days evil that understand so Day shows night for were
kein naht, sô enwêre und hieze ez ouch niht tac, wan
no night so were and were-called it also not day for
ez wêre allez ein lieht, unde daz meinte Paulus, wan ein
it were all one light and that meant Paul for a
liehtez leben ist alzekleine, bî dem noch vinsternüsse gesîn
bright life is all-too-small by which yet darkness be
mac, daz einen hêrlîchen geist bewîlet unde beschatewet
may that a lordly spirit obscures and overshadows
êwiger sêlden. Daz meinte ouch Kristus, dô er sprach 'gânt
of-eternal bliss That meant also Christ when he spoke go
die wîle ir daz lieht habent.' Wan wer dâ würket in dem
the while you the light have For who there works in the
liehte, der gât ûf in got frî unde blôz alles mitels: sîn
light he goes up into God free and bare of-all means his
lieht ist sîn gewerbe unde sîn gewerbe ist sîn lieht.
light is his business and his business is his light
Alsô stuont diu liebe Marthâ. Dâ von sprach er zuo ir 'des
So stood the dear Martha There from spoke he to her of-the
einen ist nôt.' Ich unde dû eine stunde umbevangen mit
one is need I and thou one hour embraced with
êwigem liehte ist einez unde zwei einez ist. Ein brinnender
eternal light is one and two one is A burning
geist, der dâ stât ob allen dingen und under got an dem
spirit that there stands above all things and under God at the
umberinge der êwikeit, der ist zwei, wan er âne mitel got
circle of-the eternity it is two for it without means God
niht ensiht. Sîn bekennen unde sîn wesen oder sîn bekennen
not sees Its knowing and its being or its knowing

und ouch des bekantnüsses bilde die enwerdent niemer ein,
and also of-the knowledge image they become never one
sie ensehen got, wan dâ wirt got geistes frî von allen
unless-they see God for there becomes God of-spirit free from all
dingen. Einez wirt zwei, zwei ist ein, lieht unde geist diu
things One becomes two two is one light and spirit the
zwei ist ein in dem umbevange êwiges liehtes.
two is one in the embrace of-eternal light
Nû merkent, waz umberinc sî in der êwikeit. Diu sêle hât
Now mark what circle be in the eternity The soul has
drîe wege in got. Der ein ist: mit manicvaltigem gewerbe
three ways into God The one is with manifold business
mit brinnender minne in allen crêatûren got suochen. Daz
with burning love in all creatures God to-seek That
meinte künic Dâvit, dô er sprach 'in allen dingen hân
meant king David when he spoke in all things have
ich ruowe gesuochet.' Der ander weg ist weg âne weg,
I rest sought The second way is way without way
frî unde doch gebunden, erhaben unde gezuket vil nâch
free and yet bound raised and snatched very near
über sich und alliu dinc âne willen und âne bilde, swie
above itself and all things without will and without image though
alleine ez doch weselîche niht enstê. Daz meinte Kristus,
alone it yet essentially not stand That meant Christ
dô er sprach 'sêlic bist dû, Pêtre! fleisch noch bluot
when he spoke blessed art thou Peter flesh nor blood
enliuhtent dir niht, mêr: in die vernunfte erhaben sîn, in
enlightens thee not but in the reason raised be in
dem dû mir sprichest: got; mîn himelscher vater hât ez
which thou to-me speakest God my heavenly father has it
dir geoffenbâret.' Sant Pêter sach niht got blôz: er was wol
to-thee revealed Saint Peter saw not God bare he was well

über alle redelicheit mit des himelschen vaters kraft geruket
above all reason with the heavenly father's power snatched
an den umberinc der êwikeit. Ich spriche daz, er was von
to the circle of-the eternity I say that he was from
dem himelschen vater in eime lieplîchen umbevange mit
the heavenly father in a loving embrace with
stürmiger kraft unwizzende in einem ûf kapfenden geiste,
stormy power unknowing in an up gazing spirit
der entzuket ist über alle redelicheit in des himelschen
that rapt is above all reason in the heavenly
vaters vermugentheit. Dâ wart sant Pêtrô în gesprochen
father's might There was saint to-Peter in spoken
von enoben mit einem süezen geschaffenen dône, blôz
from above with a sweet created tone bare
doch alles lîplîches gebrûchens, in einvaltiger wârheit gotes
yet of-all bodily enjoying in simple truth of-God
unde menschen einikeit, in der persône des himelschen
and of-man oneness in the person of-the heavenly
vater-sunes. Ich spriche getürsteclîche: hête sant Pêter got
father-son I say boldly had saint Peter God
âne mitel gesehen in nâtûre, als er dar nâch tête und
without means seen in nature as he there after did and
als Paulus, dô er in den dritten himel gezuket wart, im
as Paul when he into the third heaven snatched was to-him
wêre des obresten engels gesprêche alze grob gewesen. Sus
were of-the highest angel's speech all-too coarse been So
sprach er manicvaltigiu süeziu wort, der der liebe Jêsus niht
spoke he manifold sweet words which the dear Jesus not
enbedorfte, wan er siht in herzen und in geistes grunt,
needed for he sees into heart and into spirit's ground
dâ er stât âne mittel in frîheit wârer iresheit. Daz meinte
where he stands without means in freedom of-true is-ness That meant

sant Paul, dô er sprach ‘ez wart gezuket ein mensche unde
saint Paul when he spoke it was snatched a man and
hôrte sôgetâniû wort, diu unsprechelich sint allen menschen.’
heard such words which unspeakable are to-all men
Dâ bî verstât, daz sant Pêter stuont an dem umberinge
There by understand that saint Peter stood at the circle
der êwikeit unde niht in einikeit got sehende in sînesheit.
of-the eternity and not in oneness God seeing in his-is-ness
Der dritte wec heizet wec, und ist doch heime, daz ist got
The third way is-called way and is yet home that is God
sehen âne mitel in sînesheit. Nû sprichet der liebe Kristus
see without means in his-is-ness Now speaks the dear Christ
‘ich bin wec, wârheit unde leben:’ ein Kristus ein persône,
I am way truth and life one Christ one person
ein Kristus ein vater, ein Kristus ein geist, drîe ein, drîe
one Christ one father one Christ one spirit three one three
weg, wârheit unde leben, ein der liebe Jêsus. Uzerhalp disem
way truth and life one the dear Jesus Outside this
wege umberingent unde vermitelnt alle crêatûre; in got, in
way circle and mediate all creatures in God in
disem wege, geleitet mit sînes wortes liehte und umbevangen
this way led with his word's light and embraced
mit ir beider geistes minne, daz ist über allez, daz man
with their both spirit's love that is over all that one
geworten mac. Nû lose wunder, welich wunderlich! stân ûze
put-in-words may Now listen wonder what wonderful stand outside
und inne, begriffen und umbegriffen werden, sehen unde sîn
and inside grasped and embraced become see and be
diu gesiht, enthalten und enthalten werden, daz ist daz ende,
the sight hold and held become that is the end
dâ der geist belîbet mit ruowe in einikeit der lieben êwikeit.
where the spirit remains with rest in oneness of-the dear eternity

Nû kêren wider zuo unser rede, wie diu liebe Marthâ und mit
Now turn back to our discourse how the dear Martha and with
ir alle gotes friunde stânt mit der sorge, niht in der sorge.
her all God's friends stand with the care not in the care
unde dâ ist zîtlich werc als edel als dekein füegen in got,
and there is temporal work as noble as any joining into God
wan ez füeget alsô nâhe als daz obreste, daz uns werden mag,
for it joins as near as the highest that to-us become may
ân alleine got sehen in blôzer nâtûre. Dâ von sprichet er 'dû
save alone God see in bare nature There from speaks he thou
stâst bî den dingen unde bî der sorge,' und meinet, daz si mit
standest by the things and by the care and means that she with
den nideren kreften was betrüebet unde bekümbert, wan si niht
the lower powers was troubled and burdened for she not
alsô verwenet stuont in geistes süezi: si stuont sunder nutzes.
so spoiled stood in spirit's sweetness she stood apart of-use
Sunder driu puncte süllen wir haben in unsern werken.
But three points shall we have in our works
Daz ist, daz man würke ordenlîche unde redelîche unde
That is that one work orderly and rationally and
wizzenlîche. Dem spriche ich ordenlîche, daz man in allen
knowingly That call I orderly that one in all
sînen orten antwürtet dem nêhsten. Sô spriche ich dem
his places answers to-the nearest So call I that
redelîche, daz man in der zît niht bezzers bekenne. Sô
rationally that one in the time nothing better know So
spriche ich dem wizzenlîche, daz man bevinde lebelîcher
call I that knowingly that one perceive of-living
wârheit mit lustiger gegenwürtikeit in guoten werken. Swâ
truth with delightful presence in good works Wherever

disiu driu puncte sint, diu füegent alsô nâhe unde sint alsô
these three points are they join as near and are as
nütze als aller der lust Marîen Magdalênen in der wüesti.
useful as all the delight of-Mary Magdalene in the wilderness
Nû sprichet Kristus 'dû bist betrüebet umbe vil, niht umb
Now speaks Christ thou art troubled about much not about
einez.' Daz ist, sô si lûter einvaltic stât ân allen gewerb
one That is when she pure simple stands without all business
hin ûf gerihtet an den umberinc der êwikeit, sô wirt si
thither up directed to the circle of-the eternity so becomes she
betruebet, sô si von sache gemitelt wirt, daz si niht mac
troubled when she by cause mediated becomes that she not may
stân mit luste dort oben. Der mensche der stât bî der sorge
stand with delight there above The man he stands by the care
und in der betrüebede. Aber Marthâ stuont in hêrlîcher wol
and in the trouble But Martha stood in lordly well
gevester tugende und in einem frîen gemüete, ungehindert
fastened virtue and in a free mind unhindered
von allen dingen: dâ von begerte si, daz ir swester in daz
by all things there from desired she that her sister into the
selbe gesetzet würde, wan si sach, daz si niht wesenlîche
same set would-be for she saw that she not essentially
stuont. Ez was ein hêrlîcher grunt, ûz dem si begerte, daz
stood It was a lordly ground out-of which she desired that
si stüende in allem dem, daz dâ gehœret ze êwiger sêlde.
she stood in all that which there belongs to eternal bliss
Dâ von sprichet Kristus 'eines ist nôt.' Waz ist daz? Daz
There from speaks Christ one is need What is that That
ist daz eine, daz ist got. Daz ist nôt allen crêatûren. Wan
is the one that is God That is need to-all creatures For
züge got daz sîne an sich, alle crêatûre würden ze
should-draw God the his to himself all creatures would-become to

nihte. Züge got daz sîne abe der sêle Kristî, dâ ir geist
nothing Should-draw God the his off the soul of-Christ where her spirit
geeiniget ist an die êwigen persônen, Kristus belibe blôze
united is to the eternal persons Christ would-remain bare
crêatûre. Dâ bedarf man des einen wol. Marthâ vorhte,
creature There needs one the one well Martha feared
daz ir swester behaftete in dem luste und in der süezi,
that her sister cling in the delight and in the sweetness
unde begerte, daz si würde als si. Dâ sprach Kristus als
and desired that she became as she There spoke Christ as
ob er sprêche: gehab dich wol, Marthâ, si hât den besten
if he spoke keep thee well Martha she has the best
teil erwelt; diz sol ir abe gân, daz nêhste, daz crêatûre
part chosen this shall from-her off go the nearest that creature
werden mac, daz sol ir werden: si sol heilic werden als dû.
become may that shall to-her become she shall holy become as thou
Nû vernement die lêre der tugende. Tugenthaft leben hât
Now hear the teaching of-the virtues Virtuous life has
driu punct an willen. Daz ein ist, den willen ûf geben in
three points in will The one is the will up give into
got, wan daz muoz sîn, daz man daz volbringe daz man
God for that must be that one that accomplish which one
dâ bekennet, ez sî denne abe legen oder zuo nemen. Ez ist
there knows it be then off lay or to take It is
drîerleie wille. Der ein ist ein sinnelîcher wille, der ander
threefold will The one is a sensual will the second
ist ein redelîcher wille, der dritte ist ein êwiger wille. Der
is a rational will the third is an eternal will The
sinnelîcher wille gebiutet lêre, daz man hœre wâre lêre.
sensual will commands teaching that one hear true teaching
Der redelîche wille daz ist, daz man die füeze setze in alle
The rational will that is that one the feet set into all

diu werc Jêsû Kristî unde der heiligen, daz ist, daz man
the works of-Jesus Christ and of-the saints that is that one
gelîch schicke wort, wandel unde gewerb an daz nêhste
alike arrange word conduct and business to the nearest
geordent. Sô diz vollebrâht wirt, sô gît got ein anderz in
ordered When this accomplished becomes so gives God an other in
der sêle grunt, daz ist ein êwiger wille mit lieplîchem gebote
the soul's ground that is an eternal will with loving command
des heiligen geistes. Denne sprichet diu sêle 'herre, sprich
of-the holy spirit Then speaks the soul lord speak
in mich daz dîn êwiger wille sî.' Sô si alsus genuog ist
into me what thy eternal will be When she thus enough is
dem, als wir hie von gesprochen hân, gevallet ez denne gote
to-that as we here of spoken have (if)-pleases it then God
wol, sô sprichet der liebe vater sîn êwigez wort in die sêle.
well so speaks the dear father his eternal word into the soul
Nû sprechent unser guoten liute, man sulle alsô vollekomen
Now speak our good people one should so perfect
werden, daz uns kein liebe bewegen müge und daz man
become that us no joy move may and that one
unberüerlich sî von liebe unde von leide. Sie tuont im
unmovable be by joy and by sorrow They do to-it
unreht. Ich spriche, daz heilige sô grôz nie enwart, er
wrong I say that saint so great never became but-he
möhte beweget werden. Sô sprich ich ouch dâ wider: daz
might moved become So say I also there against that
wirt dem heiligen wol in disem lîbe, daz in nihtes niht her
becomes to-the saint well in this life that him nothing at-all here
abe von gote gewegen mac. Ir wênent, die wîle wort wegen
off from God move may You suppose the while words move
mügen in liebe und in leit, sô sîent ir unvolkomen? des
may in joy and in sorrow so are you imperfect that

enist niht. Kristus enhâte sîn niht, daz bewîsete er dô er
is not Christ had of-it not that showed he when he
sprach 'mîn sêle ist trûric biz ûf den tôt.' Kristô dem tâten
spoke my soul is sad until to the death to-Christ him did
wort alsô wê, und wêre aller crêatûre wê gevallen ûf eine
words so woe and were of-all creatures woe fallen on one
crêatûre, daz wêre als grôz niht gewesen, als Kristô wê was,
creature that were as great not been as to-Christ woe was
unde daz was von adel sîner nâtûre unde von der heiligen
and that was from nobility of-his nature and from the holy
vereinunge gotlîcher und menschlîcher nâtûre. Dâ von
union of-divine and human nature There from
spriche ich, daz heilige nie enwart noch niemer erkrieget,
say I that saint never became nor ever attains
pîne entuo ime wê und liep wol. Daz beschiht etwenne
unless-pain do to-him woe and joy well That happens sometimes
von liebe unde minne unde von gnâde, der einem menschen
from love and love and from grace who to-a man
sprêche an sînen gelouben oder waz man wolte, sô der
spoke against his faith or whatever one would if the
mensche mit der gnâde überzogen wêre, sô stüende er wol
man with the grace overspread were so stood he well
gelîch in liep und in leit. Aber daz wirt heiligen wol,
alike in joy and in sorrow But that becomes to-saints well
daz in nihtes niht von her ûz von gote gewegen mac,
that them nothing at-all from here out from God move may
wirt joch daz herze gepînget, ob der mensche in der
(if)-becomes even the heart pained if the man in the
gnâde niht enist, daz doch der wille einvalteclîche bestê in
grace not is that yet the will simply remain in
gote, alsô sprechende: herre, ich dir unde dû mir. Swaz
God thus speaking lord I to-thee and thou to-me Whatever

dar în vellet, daz enhindert niht die ewige sêlde, alle die
there in falls that hinders not the eternal bliss all the
wîle ez niht vellet in daz obreste wipfellîn des geistes dort
while it not falls into the highest little-top of-the spirit there
oben, dâ ez stât in einekeit gotes aller liebestes willen.
above where it stands in oneness of-God's all dearest will
Nû sprichet Kristus 'umbe vil sorge wirst dû betrüebet.'
Now speaks Christ about much care becomest thou troubled
Marthâ was sô wesenlich, daz sî ir gewerp niht enhinderte,
Martha was so essential that her her business not hindered
werc unde gewerp leite sî ze êwiger sêlde. Marîâ was ê
work and business led her to eternal bliss Mary was before
Marthâ, ê si Marîâ würde, wan dô si saz bî den füezen
Martha before she Mary became for when she sat by the feet
unsers herren, dô enwas si niht Marîâ: si was ez wol an
of-our lord then was she not Mary she was it well in
dem namen, si enwas ez aber niht an des geistes werke, wan
the name she was it however not in the spirit's work for
si saz bî luste unde bî süeze unde was aller êrst ze schuole
she sat by delight and by sweetness and was all first to school
gangen unde lernete leben. Aber Marthâ stuont sô wesenlîche,
gone and learned living But Martha stood so essentially
dâ von sprach si 'herre, heiz sî ûf stân!' als ob si sprêche:
there from spoke she lord bid her up stand as if she spoke
herre, ich wolte, daz si dâ niht sêze durch lust, ich wolte,
lord I would that she there not sat for delight I would
daz si lernete leben, daz si ez wesenlîche besêze: heiz sî ûf
that she learned living that she it essentially possessed bid her up
stân, daz si durnehte werde. Si enhiez niht Marîâ, dô si
stand that she perfect become She was-called not Mary when she
bî Kristî füezen saz. Ich heize daz Marîâ, ein wol geüebeter
by Christ's feet sat I call that Mary a well exercised

lîp, gehôrsam einer wîser lêre. Daz heiz ich gehôrsam,
body obedient to-a wise teaching That call I obedience
swaz bescheidenheit gebiutet, daz des der wille genuoc sî.
whatever discretion commands that to-it the will enough be
Nû wênent unser guoten liute erkriegen, daz gegenwürtekeit
Now suppose our good people to-attain that presence
sinnelîcher dinge den sinnen niht ensî. Des engât in niht
of-sensual things to-the senses not be That goes to-them not
zuo: daz ein pînlich gedœne mînen ôren als lustig sî als ein
to that a painful din to-my ears as delightful be as a
süezez seitenspil, daz erkriege ich niemer. Aber daz sol man
sweet string-music that attain I never But that shall one
haben, daz ein redelich gotgeformeter wille blôz stande alles
have that a rational God-formed will bare stand of-all
nâtiurlîchen lustes, swenne ez bescheidenheit an schouwet, daz
natural delight whenever it discretion on looks that
si dem willen gebiete, sich abe ze kêrende, unde der wille
she to-the will command itself off to turn and the will
spreche: ich tuon ez gerne. Sehent, dâ würde krieg ze
speak I do it gladly See there would-become strife to
luste, wan swaz der mensche muoz mit grôzer arbeit erstrîten,
delight for whatever the man must with great toil win
daz wirt im ein herzenfröide unde denne wirt ez fruhtber.
that becomes to-him a heart-joy and then becomes it fruitful
Nû wellent etelîche liute dar zuo komen, daz sie werke lidig
Now will some people there to come that they of-works free
sîn. Ich spriche: es enmac niht sîn. Nâch der zît dô die
be I say it may not be After the time when the
junger enpfiengen den heiligen geist, dô viengen sie êrste an
disciples received the holy spirit then began they first on
tugende ze würken. Dâ von dô Marîâ saz bî den füezen
virtues to work There from when Mary sat by the feet

unsers herren, dô lernete si, wan si aller êrst ze schuole
of-our lord then learned she for she all first to school
was gesetzet unde lernete leben. Aber dar nâch dô Kristus
was set and learned living But there after when Christ
ze himel fuor unde si den heiligen geist enpfienc, dô vienc
to heaven went and she the holy spirit received then began
si aller êrst an ze dienende unde fuor über mer unde
she all first on to serve and went over sea and
brediete unde lêrte unde wart ein dienerin der junger. Sô
preached and taught and became a servant of-the disciples When
die heiligen ze heiligen werdent, denne aller êrst vâhent sie
the saints to saints become then all first begin they
an tugende ze würken, wan denne samenent sie hort êwiger
on virtues to work for then gather they treasure of-eternal
sêlden. Swaz dâ vor ist gewürket, daz giltet schulde unde
bliss Whatever there before is worked that pays debt and
leit wîze abe. Des vinden wir ein geziugnüsse an Kristô.
sorrow punishment off Of-that find we a witness in Christ
Von dem anbeginne daz got mensche wart und mensche got,
From the beginning that God man became and man God
dô vieng er an ze würken unser sêlikeit unz an daz ende,
then began he on to work our blessedness until to the end
daz er starp an dem kriuze. Enkein gelit was an sîme lîbe,
that he died on the cross No limb was on his body
ez enüebete sunderlich tugende. Daz wir ime gewêrlich nâch
but-it exercised special virtues That we him truly after
volgen an üebunge wârer tugende, des helf uns got. Âmen.
follow in exercise of-true virtues that help us God Amen

XIII. In hoc apparuit charitas dei

God's love appeared in that He sent His only Son into the world that we might live with, in, and through Him. God not only became man but took on human nature, so that all good the saints and Christ possess is mine in it; to stand in it bare, wish the stranger overseas as well as your friend. Nothing burns in hell: the damned lack the something the blessed have, and that nothing pains them. The Son is sent into the inner world, where God's ground is my ground; work from it without a why, as life lives for living. Go out of yourself, and God goes out of Himself for you; the will turned back to its source is free, and lost time is restored.

In hoc apparuit charitas dei in nobis (Joh. 1. epist. V, 9.). 'In
In this appeared love of-God in us John 1 Epist. V 9 In
deme ist uns erzeiget und erschinen gotes minne an uns, wan
that is to-us shown and appeared God's love in us for
er hât gesant sînen einbornen sun in die welt durch daz, daz
he has sent his only-begotten son into the world through that that
wir leben mit dem sune und in dem sune unde durch den sun.'
we live with the son and in the son and through the son
Alle die dâ niht lebent durch den sun, den ist wêrlich unreht.
All who there not live through the son to-them is truly wrong
Swâ nû wêre ein rîcher künic, der dâ hête eine schœne tohter
Where now were a rich king who there had a fair daughter
unde die gêbe eines armen mannes sune: alle die zuo dem
and her gave to-a poor man's son all who to the
geslehte hôrten, die würden dâ von erhœhet unde gewirdiget.
kindred belonged they would-be there from raised and dignified
Nû sprichet ein meister: got ist mensche worden, dâ von ist
Now says a master God is man become there from is
erhœhet unde gewirdiget allez menslich künne. Des mügen
raised and dignified all human kind Of-that may
wir uns wol fröuwen, daz Kristus, unser bruoder, ist gevarn
we us well rejoice that Christ our brother is gone

von sîner eigener kraft über alle kœre der engele unde
by his own power over all choirs of-the angels and
sitzet zuo der rehten hant des vaters. Dirre meister hât wol
sits at the right hand of-the father This master has well
gesprochen; aber wêrlich, ich gêbe niht vil dar umbe. Waz
spoken but truly I give not much there for What
hülfe mich, hêt ich einen bruoder, der dâ wêre ein rîche
would-help me had I a brother who there were a rich
man und ich ein arme, er wîse und ich ein tôre? Ich spriche
man and I a poor-one he wise and I a fool I say
ein anderz und ein nêherz: got ist niht alleine mensche
an other and a nearer God is not alone man
worden, mêr: er hât menschlîche nâtûre an sich genomen.
become but he has human nature on himself taken
Ez sprechent die meistere gemeinlich, daz alle menschen sîn
It say the masters commonly that all men be
glîch edele in der nâtûre. Aber ich spriche gewêrlich: allez daz
equally noble in the nature But I say truly all the
guot, daz alle heiligen besezzen hânt unde Marîâ gotes muoter
good that all saints possessed have and Mary God's mother
unde Kristus nâ sîner menscheit, daz ist mîn eigen in dirre
and Christ after his humanity that is my own in this
nâtûre. Nû möhten ir mich frâgen: sît ich in dirre nâtûre
nature Now might you me ask since I in this nature
habe allez daz, daz Kristus nâ sîner menscheit geleisten mac,
have all that which Christ after his humanity achieve may
wâ von ist danne, daz wir Kristum hœben unde wirdigen
where from is then that we Christ exalt and honor
als unseren herren und unseren got? Daz ist dâ von, wan
as our lord and our God That is there from for
er ist gewesen ein bote von gote zuo uns unde hât uns
he is been a messenger from God to us and has to-us

zuo getragen unser sêlikeit, unde diu sêlikeit, die er uns
to borne our blessedness and the blessedness which he to-us
zuo truoc, diu was unser. Dâ der vater sînen sun gebirt
to bore that was ours Where the father his son bears
in dem inrestem grunde, dâ hât ein însweben disiu nâtûre.
in the innermost ground there has an in-hovering this nature
Disiu selbe nâtûre ist ein und einveltic. Hie mac wol etwaz
This same nature is one and simple Here may well something
ûz luogen und iht zuo hangen, daz ist diz eine niht.
out peer and anything to hang that is this one not
Ich spriche ein anderz unde spriche ein swêrêrz. Swer in
I say an other and say a harder Whoever in
der blôzheit dirre nâtûre âne mitel sol bestân, der muoz
the bareness of-this nature without means shall stand he must
aller persônen ûz gegangen sîn, alsô daz er dem menschen.
of-all persons out gone be so that he to-the man
der iensît mers ist, den er mit ougen nie gesach, alsô wol
who beyond sea is whom he with eyes never saw as well
guotes gunne alse deme, der bî im ist unde sîn heimlich
good grant as to-him who by him is and his intimate
friunt ist. Al die wîle dû dîner persônen mêr guotes ganst
friend is All the while thou to-thy person more good grantest
danne dem menschen, den dû nie gesêhe, sô ist dir wêrlich
than to-the man whom thou never sawest so is to-thee truly
unreht noch dû geluogtest nie in disen einveltigen grunt
wrong nor thou peeredst ever into this simple ground
ê einen ougenblik. Dû hâst aber wol gesehen in eime
even one eye-blink Thou hast however well seen in an
abgezogenen bilde die wârheit als in eime glîchnisse, ez was
abstracted image the truth as in a likeness it was
aber daz beste nit. Zuo dem anderen solt dû reines herzen
however the best not At the second shalt thou of-pure heart

sîn, wan daz herze ist alleine reine, daz alle geschaffenheit
be for the heart is alone pure that all createdness
vernihtet hât. Zuo dem dritten solt dû nihtes blôz stân.
annihilated has At the third shalt thou of-nothing bare stand
Ez ist ein frâge, waz in der helle brinne? Die meistere
It is a question what in the hell burn The masters
sprechent gemeinlich: daz tuot eigen wille. Aber ich spriche
say commonly that does own will But I say
wêrlich, daz niht in der helle brinnet. Ein glîchnisse! Man
truly that nothing in the hell burns A likeness One
neme einen brinnenden koln unde lege in ûf mîne hant.
take a burning coal and lay it on my hand
Sprêche ich, daz der kol mîne hant brande, sô têt ich ime
Should-say I that the coal my hand burned so would-do I to-it
gar unreht. Sol aber ich sprechen eigenlich, waz mich
wholly wrong (If)-shall however I speak properly what me
brenne, daz tuot daz niht, wan der kol etwaz in ime hât,
burn that does the nothing for the coal something in it has
des mîn hant niht enhât. Sehent, daz selbe niht brennet
which my hand not has See that same nothing burns
mich. Hête aber mîn hant allez daz in ir, daz der kol
me Had however my hand all that in it that the coal
ist unde geleisten mac, sô hête si fiures nâtûre zemâle. Der
is and achieve may so had it fire's nature wholly Who
danne nême allez daz fiur, daz ie gebrante, und schuttez ûf
then took all the fire that ever burned and poured-it on
mîne hant, daz möhte mich niht gepînegen. Zuo glîcher wîse
my hand that could me not pain In like manner
alsô spriche ich: wan got und alle die, die in dem angesihte
so say I for God and all those who in the sight
gotes sint, nâch rehter sêlikeite etwaz in in hânt, daz
of-God are after right blessedness something in them have which

die niht hânt, die von gote gesundert sint, daz niht alleine
those not have who from God separated are the nothing alone
pîneget die sêlen mê, die in der hellen sint, danne eigen wille
pains the souls more who in the hell are than own will
oder kein fiur. Ich spriche wêrlich: alse vil dir niht zuo
or any fire I say truly as much to-thee nothing to
haftet, alse verre bist dû unvollekomen. Har umbe wellent
clings so far art thou imperfect Here for will
ir volkomen sîn, sô sullent ir nihtes blôz sîn. Her umbe
you perfect be so shall you of-nothing bare be Here for
sprichet daz wörtelîn, daz ich für geleit hân 'got hât gesant
says the little-word that I forth laid have God has sent
sînen einbornen sun in die welt', daz sunt ir niht verstân
his only-begotten son into the world that shall you not understand
für die ûzwendigen welt, als er mit uns az unde tranc: ir
for the outward world as he with us ate and drank you
sünt ez verstân für die inren welt. Alse wêrlîche der vater
shall it understand for the inner world As truly the father
mit sîner einvaltiger nâtûre gebirt sînen sun nâtûrlîche, alse
with his simple nature bears his son naturally so
gewêrliche gebirt er in in des geistes innegestez, unt diz ist
truly bears he him in the spirit's innermost and this is
diu inre welt. Hie ist gotes grunt mîn grunt unde mîn grunt
the inner world Here is God's ground my ground and my ground
gotes grunt. Hie lebe ich ûzer mîme eigen, als got lebet
God's ground Here live I out-of my own as God lives
ûzer sîme eigen. Swer in disen grunt ie geluogete einen
out-of his own Whoever into this ground ever peered one
ougenblik, dem menschen sint tûsent marc rôtes geslagenen
eye-blink to-that man are thousand marks of-red minted
goldes als ein valscher haller. Uzer disem inrestem grunde
gold as a false farthing Out-of this innermost ground

solt dû würken alliu dîniu werc sunder warumbe. Ich spriche
shalt thou work all thy works without why I say
wêrlich: al die wîle dû dîniu werc wirkest umbe himelrîche
truly all the while thou thy works workest for heaven
oder umbe got oder umbe dîn êwige sêlikeit von ûzen zuo,
or for God or for thy eternal blessedness from outside to
sô ist dir wêrlich unreht. Man mac dich aber wol lîden,
so is to-thee truly wrong One may thee however well suffer
doch ist ez daz beste niht. wan wêrlîche, swer gotes mê
yet is it the best not for truly whoever of-God more
wênet bekomen in innerkeit, in andâht, in süezekeit und in
supposes to-get in inwardness in devotion in sweetness and in
sunderlîcher zuofüegunge danne bî dem fiure oder in dem
special joining than by the fire or in the
stalle, sô tuostû niht anders dan obe dû got nêmest unde
stable so doest-thou not otherwise than if thou God tookest and
wundest ime einen mantel umbe daz houbet unde stahtist
wrappedst to-him a mantle about the head and stuckest
in ůnder einen bank. Wan swer got suochet in wîse, der
him under a bench For whoever God seeks in manner he
nimet die wîse unde lât got, der in der wîse verborgen
takes the manner and leaves God who in the manner hidden
ist. Aber swer got suochet âne wîse, der nimet in als
is But whoever God seeks without manner he takes him as
er in ime selber ist, unde der mensche lebet mit dem sune
he in him self is and the man lives with the son
und er ist daz leben selbe. Swer daz leben frâgete tûsent
and he is the life self Whoever the life asked thousand
jâr: war umbe lebestû? solt ez antwürten, ez sprêche niht
years where fore livest-thou should it answer it would-say not
anders wan: ich lebe dar umbe daz ich lebe. Daz ist dâ
otherwise but I live there for that I live That is there

von, wan leben lebet ûzer sînem eigenem grunde unde quillet
from for life lives out-of its own ground and wells
ûzer sîme eigen: dar umbe lebet ez âne warumbe in dem,
out-of its own there for lives it without why in that
daz ez sich selber lebet. Swer nû frâgete einen wârhaften
that it it self lives Whoever now asked a truthful
menschen, der dâ würket ûzer sîme eigenen grunde: war
man who there works out-of his own ground where
umbe würkest dû dîniu werk! solte er rehte antwürten, er
fore workest thou thy works should he rightly answer he
sprêche niht anders dan: ich würke dar umbe daz ich wirke.
would-say not otherwise than I work there for that I work
Swâ crêatûre endet, dâ beginnet got ze sînne. Nû begert
Where creature ends there begins God to be Now desires
got niht mê von dir, wan daz dû dîn selbes ûz gangest
God not more of thee but that thou of-thy self out go
in crêatûrlîcher wîse unde lâzest got got in dir sîn. Daz
in creaturely manner and let God God in thee be The
minneste crêatûrlîche bilde, daz sich iemer in dir bildet, daz
least creaturely image that itself ever in thee images that
ist als grôz, als got grôz ist. War umbe? Dâ hindert ez
is as great as God great is Where fore There binders it
dich eines ganzen gotes. Wan rehte dâ diz bilde în gât, dâ
thee of-a whole God For right where this image in goes there
muoz got wîchen und alliu sîn gotheit. Aber dâ diz bilde
must God yield and all his godhead But where this image
ûz gât, dâ gât got în. [Ez enwart in der zît nie kein bilde
out goes there goes God in It became in the time never any image
sô gotlich, ez tête der sêle drîe schaden. Der êrste irret
so godly but-it did to-the soul three harms The first binders
innerkeit, der ander beflecket lûterkeit, der dritte schade
inwardness the second stains purity the third harm

irret abegescheidenheit. Waz tuot mîn sîn? fliuch über dich
hinders detachment What does my being flee over thee
unde trüke alle crêatûren under dich: daz tuot got dîn sîn.]
and press all creatures under thee that does God thy being
Got begert des alsô sêre, daz dû dîn selbes ûz gangest in
God desires of-it so sorely that thou of-thy self out go in
crêatûrlîcher wîse, als ob alliu sîn sêlikeit dar an lige. Eyâ
creaturely manner as if all his blessedness there on lay Eya
lieber mensche, waz schat dir, daz dû gote gunnest, daz
dear man what harms to-thee that thou to-God grantest that
er got in dir sî? Gang dîn selbes alzemâle ûz durch got,
he God in thee be Go of-thy self wholly out for God
sô gât got alzemâle des sînen ûz durch dich. Dâ disiu
so goes God wholly of-the his out for thee Where these
zwei ûz gânt, zwaz dâ belîbet, daz ist ein einvaltigez ein.
two out go whatever there remains that is a simple one
In disem ein gebirt der vater sînen sun in dem inresten
In this one bears the father his son in the innermost
gequelle. Dâ blüeget ûz der heiligeist und dâ enspringet
spring There blossoms out the holy-spirit and there springs-forth
in gote ein wille, der behœret der sêle zuo. Unde die wîle
in God a will that belongs to-the soul to And the while
der wille stât unberüeret von allen crêatûren unde von aller
the will stands untouched by all creatures and by all
geschaffenheit, sô ist der wille frî. Kristus spricht 'nieman
createdness so is the will free Christ says no-one
kumt zuo dem himel, wan der von dem himel komen ist.'
comes to the heaven but who from the heaven come is
Alliu dinc sint geschaffen von nihte: dar umbe ist ir reht
All things are created from nothing there for is their right

ursprunc niht. Alse verre sich dirre edel wille neiget ûf die
origin nothing As far itself this noble will inclines to the
crêatûren, sô verfliuzet er mit den crêatûren zuo ir nihte.
creatures so flows-away it with the creatures to their nothing
Nû ist ein frâge, ob dirre wille alsô verflieze, daz er
Now is a question whether this will so flow-away that he
niemer müge widerkomen? Die meister sprechent gemeinlîche,
never may come-back The masters say commonly
daz er niemer widerkome, als verre er mit der zît verflozzen
that he never come-back as far he with the time flowed-away
ist. Aber ich spriche: swenne sich dirre wille kêret von ime
is But I say when itself this will turns from it
selber unde von aller geschaffenheit einen ougenblik wider in
self and from all createdness one eye-blink back into
sînen ursprunc, dâ stât der wille in sîner rehter frîer art
its origin there stands the will in its right free kind
und ist frî, und in disem ougenblicke wirt alliu verlorne zît
and is free and in this eye-blink becomes all lost time
widerbrâht. Die liute sprechent dicke zuo mir: bitent für mich.
brought-back The people say often to me pray for me
Sô gedenke ich: war umbe gânt ir ûz? war umbe blîbent ir
So think I where fore go you out where fore remain you
niht bî iu selben unde grîfent in iwer eigen guot? ir tragent
not by you selves and grasp into your own good you carry
doch alle wârheit weselich in iu. Daz wir alsô wêrlich in
yet all truth essentially in you That we so truly in
ime müezen blîben und alle wârheit besitzen âne mitel und
him may remain and all truth possess without means and
âne underscheit in rehter sêlikeit, des helf uns got. Âmen.
without distinction in right blessedness that help us God Amen

XIV. Quasi vas auri solidum

Augustine, and every good soul that has left all things, is likened to a golden vessel, firm and steadfast, set with every precious stone. God's image is pressed into the soul without means, and an image hangs wholly on what it images. Whoever would know God must be the Son himself, not love God as one loves a cow, for its milk. The heart must be closed to all creatures, steady in joy and sorrow, and take every virtue in the ground where it is one with God's nature.

Quasi vas auri solidum ornatum omni lapide pretioso
As vessel of-gold solid adorned with-every stone precious
(Eccl. L,10.). Ich hân gesprochen ein wörtelîn, daz mac man
Ecclus. L,10 I have spoken a little-word that may one
sprechen von sant Augustînus unde von einer ieglichen guoter
speak of saint Augustine and of an every good
sêle, wie die sint gelîchet einem guldînen vazze, daz dâ ist
soul how they are likened to-a golden vessel that there is
veste unde stête unde hât an sich edelkeit alles gesteines.
firm and steadfast and has on itself nobility of-all gemstones
Daz kumet von edelkeit der heiligen, daz man sie mit eime
That comes from nobility of-the saints that one them with one
gelîchnüsse niht bewîsen mac, dar umbe gelîchet man sie den
likeness not show may there for likens one them to-the
boumen unde der sunnen unde dem mânen. Als ist hie sant
trees and to-the sun and to-the moon So is here saint
Augustînus gelîchet einem guldînen vazze, daz dâ ist veste
Augustine likened to-a golden vessel that there is firm
unde stête und hât an sich edelkeit alles gesteines. Unde diz
and steadfast and has on itself nobility of-all gemstones And this
mac man sprechen wêrlîche von einer heiliger unde guoter
may one speak truly of a holy and good
sêle, diu dâ hât gelâzen elliu ding unde nimet sie dâ,
soul which there has left all things and takes them there

dâ sie êwic sint. Swer diu dinc lâzet, als sie zuoval sint,
where they eternal are Whoever the things leaves as they accident are
der besitzet sie, dâ sie ein lûter wesen sint und êwic sint.
he possesses them where they a pure being are and eternal are
Ein ieglich vaz hât zwei dinc: ez enpfâhet und enthaltet.
An every vessel has two things it receives and contains
Geistlîchiu vaz unde lîplîchiu vaz hânt ein underscheit. Der
Spiritual vessels and bodily vessels have a distinction The
wîn ist in dem vazze, daz vaz ist niht in dem wîne, noch
wine is in the vessel the vessel is not in the wine nor
der wîn ist niht in dem vazze alsô in den bretten; wan
the wine is not in the vessel as in the boards for
wêre er in dem vazze alsô in den bretten, sô möhte man in
were it in the vessel as in the boards so might one it
niht getrinken. Anders ist ez umbe daz geistlîche vaz. Allez
not drink Otherwise is it with the spiritual vessel All
daz dar în enpfangen wirt, dâz ist in dem vazze unde daz
that there in received becomes that is in the vessel and the
vaz in ime unde ist daz vaz selbe. Allez, daz daz geistlich
vessel in it and is the vessel self All that the spiritual
vaz enpfâhet, daz ist sîn nâtûre. Gotes nâtûre ist, daz er
vessel receives that is its nature God's nature is that he
sich gibet einer ieglîcher guoter sêle, unde der sêle nâtûre
himself gives to-an every good soul and the soul's nature
ist daz, daz si got enpfâhet, und daz mac man sprechen von
is that that she God receives and that may one speak of
dem edelsten, daz diu sêle geleisten mac. Dâ treit diu sêle
the noblest that the soul achieve may There bears the soul
daz götlîche bilde und ist gote gelîch. Bilde mac niht sîn
the divine image and is to-God like Image may not be
âne gelîcheit, aber gelîcheit mac wol sîn âne bilde. Zwei
without likeness but likeness may well be without image Two

eiger sint gelîch wîze und einz ist doch des andern bilde
eggs are equally white and one is yet of-the other image
niht: wan daz des andern bilde sol sîn, daz muoz von sîner
not for what of-the other image shall be that must from its
nâtiure komen sîn unde muoz von im geborn sîn und muoz
nature come be and must from it born be and must
ime gelîch sîn. Ein ieglich bilde hêt zwô eigenschaft. Diu ein
to-it like be An every image has two properties The one
ist, daz ez von dem, des bilde ez ist, sîn wesen âne mitel
is that it from that whose image it is its being without means
nemende ist boben dem willen, wan ez hât einen nâtiurlichen
taking is above the will for it has a natural
ûfgang unde dringet ûz der nâtûre als der ast ûz dem
up-going and presses out-of the nature as the branch out-of the
boume. Swenne daz antlütze geworfen wirt für den spiegel,
tree When the face cast becomes before the mirror
sô muoz daz antlütze dar inne erbildet werden, ez welle oder
so must the face there in imaged become it will or
enwelle. Aber diu nâtûre diu erbildet sich niht in daz bilde
will-not But the nature it images itself not into the image
des spiegels, mêre: der munt unde diu nase unde diu ougen
of-the mirror but the mouth and the nose and the eyes
und alliu gestaltnisse des antlützes daz erbildet sich in den
and all forms of-the face that images itself into the
spiegel. Aber daz hât got im alleine behalten, swâ er sich
mirror But that has God to-him alone reserved where he himself
în bildet, daz er dâ sîne nâtûre und allez, daz er ist unde
in images that he there his nature and all that he is and
geleisten mac, ze mâle dar inne erbilde obe den willen. wan
achieve may in full there in image above the will for
daz bilde fürsetzet den willen unde der wille volget dem
the image goes-before the will and the will follows the

bilde unde daz bilde hât den êrsten ûzbruch ûz der nâtûre
image and the image has the first outbreak out-of the nature
unde ziuhet in sich allez, daz die nâtûre unde daz wesen
and draws into itself all that the nature and the being
geleisten mac, unde diu nâtûre ergiuzet sich ze mâle in
achieve may and the nature pours itself in full into
daz bilde unde belîbet doch ganze in sich selber; wan die
the image and remains yet whole in it self for the
meister legent niht daz bilde in den heiligen geist, mêre:
masters lay not the image in the holy spirit but
sie legent ez in die mitelen persône. wan der sun hât den
they lay it in the middle person for the son has the
êrsten ûzbruch ûz der nâtûre: dar umbe heizet er eigenlich
first outbreak out-of the nature there for is-called he properly
ein bilde des vater, unde daz entuot niht der heilig geist:
an image of-the father and that does not the holy spirit
der ist alleine ein ûzblüegen von dem vater unde von dem
he is alone an out-blossoming from the father and from the
sune unde hât doch ein nâtûre mit in beiden. Unt doch
son and has yet one nature with them both And yet
enist der wille niht ein mitel zwischent dem bilde unde
is the will not a means between the image and
der nâtûre, jâ noch bekennen noch wizzen noch wîsheit
the nature yea neither knowing nor understanding nor wisdom
mac hie niht ein mitel gesîn, wan daz gotlich bilde brichet
may here not a means be for the divine image breaks
ûz der fruhtberkeit âne mitel der nâtûre. Ist aber hie
out-of the fruitfulness without means of-the nature (If)-is however here
ein mitel der wîsheit, daz ist daz bilde selber. Her umbe
a means of-the wisdom that is the image self Here for
heizet der sun in der gotheit die wîsheit des vater.
is-called the son in the godhead the wisdom of-the father

Ir süllent wizzen, daz daz einvaltic gotlîche bilde, daz in die
You shall know that the simple divine image which into the
sêle gedrucket ist, in dem innegesten der nâtûre âne mitel
soul pressed is in the innermost of-the nature without means
sich nemende ist; und daz innegeste und daz edelste, daz in
itself taking is and the innermost and the noblest that in
der nâtûre ist, daz erbildet sich aller eigenlîchest in daz bilde
the nature is that images itself all most-properly into the image
der sâle, unde hie enist niht ein mitel weder wille noch
of-the soul and here is not a means neither will nor
wîsheit, als ich ê sprach: ist hie wîsheit ein mitel, daz ist
wisdom as I before spoke (if)-is here wisdom a means that is
daz bilde selber. Hie ist got âne mitel in dem bilde, unde
the image self Here is God without means in the image and
daz bilde ist âne mitel in gote. Doch ist got vil edellîcher
the image is without means in God Yet is God much more-nobly
in dem bilde, denne daz bilde sî in gote. Hie nimet daz bilde
in the image than the image be in God Here takes the image
niht got als er ein schepfer ist, sunder ez nimet in als er ein
not God as he a creator is but it takes him as he a
vernünftic wesen ist, unt daz edelste der nâtûre erbildet sich
rational being is and the noblest of-the nature images itself
als eigenlîchest in daz bilde. Diz ist ein nâtiurlîch bilde gotes,
as most-properly into the image This is a natural image of-God
daz got in allen sêlen nâtûrlich gedruket hât. Nû mag ich
which God in all souls naturally pressed has Now may I
niht mê geben dem bilde: gêbe ich ime mê, sô müeste ez
not more give to-the image should-give I to-it more so must it
got selber sîn, unde des enist niht, wan sô wêre got niht got.
God self be and that is not for so were God not God

Die ander eigenschaft des bildes sülent ir merken an der
The second property of-the image shall you mark in the
glîcheit des bildes. Und hie erkent sunderlich zwei stüke.
likeness of-the image And here know specially two pieces
Daz ein ist: daz bilde ist sîn selbes niht noch enist im
The one is the image is of-its self not nor is to-it
selber niht. Ze glîcher wîse als daz bilde, daz in den ougen
self not In like manner as the image which in the eyes
enpfangen wirt, daz enist daz ouge niht und enhêt enhein
received becomes that is the eye not and has no
wesen an den ougen, sunder ez hêt alleine ein zuohangen und
being in the eyes but it has alone a hanging-to and
ein zuohaften an dem, des bilde ez ist, und ist im alzemâle,
a clinging-to on that whose image it is and is to-it wholly
und von dem nimet ez sîn wesen und ist daz selbe wesen.
and from that takes it its being and is the same being
Nû merkent mich vil rehte, waz eigenlich ein bilde sî. Daz
Now mark me very rightly what properly an image be That
sülent ir merken an vier stüken, oder vil lîhte wirt ir
shall you mark in four pieces or very likely becomes of-them
mê. Bilde enist sîn selbes niht noch enist ime selber niht:
more Image is of-its self not nor is to-it self not
ez ist alleine des bilde ez ist und ist ime alzemâle allez,
it is alone of-whose image it is and is to-him wholly all
daz er ist. Daz dem vrömde ist, des bilde ez ist, dem enist
that he is What to-that alien is whose image it is to-that is
ez niht noch enist sîn niht. Bilde nimet alleine sîn wesen
it not nor is of-it not Image takes alone its being
âne mitel an dem, des bilde ez ist, unde hât ein wesen
without means on that whose image it is and has one being
mit ime und ist daz selbe wesen. Diz enist niht gesprochen
with it and is the same being This is not spoken

von den dingen, diu man sol reden in den schuolen: sunder
of the things which one shall discuss in the schools but
wan mac sie wol sprechen ûf dem stuole ze einer lêre.
one may them well speak on the pulpit for a teaching
Ir vrâgent dike, wie ir leben süllent. Daz sont ir hie
You ask often how you live shall That shall you here
merken mit flîze. Ze glîcher wîse, als hie gesprochen ist
mark with diligence In like manner as here spoken is
von dem bilde, sich! alsus solt dû leben. Dû solt sîn
of the image see so shalt thou live Thou shalt be
sîn unde solt ime sîn unde solt dîn niht sîn unde solt
his and shalt to-him be and shalt thine not be and shalt
dir niht sîn unde solt niemannes sîn. Swer hât einen
to-thee not be and shalt no-one's be Whoever has a
reht lieben vriunt, der hât allez daz liep, daz ime zuo
right dear friend he has all that dear which to-him to
gehœret, unde swaz sînem vriunde wider ist, des enmag er
belongs and whatever to-his friend against is that may he
niht. Des nement ein glîchnüsse an dem hunde, der ein
not Of-that take a likeness in the dog which an
unvernünftic tier ist. Der ist sînem herren alsô getriuwe,
irrational beast is He is to-his lord so faithful
allez daz sînem herren wider ist, daz hazzet er, und swer
all that to-his lord against is that hates he and whoever
sînes herren vriunt ist, den hât er liep. Er ensihet niht an
his lord's friend is him has he dear He looks not at
rîchtuom noch armuot, jâ und wêre ein blinder dürftige,
riches nor poverty yea and were a blind beggar
der sînem herren heinlich wêre, den hêti er lieber denne
who to-his lord intimate were him had he dearer than
einen künic oder einen keiser, der sînem herren wider wêre.
a king or an emperor who to-his lord against were

Ich spriche wêrlich, unde wêre daz mügelich, daz der hunt
I say truly and were that possible that the dog
sînem herren halber ungetriuwe wêre, er hazzete sich selber.
to-his lord half unfaithful were he would-hate him self
Aber nû klagent etlîche liute, daz sie niht haben innekeit
But now lament some people that they not have inwardness
noch andâht noch süezekeit noch sunderlîchen trôst von
nor devotion nor sweetness nor special comfort from
gote. Den liuten ist wêrlich noch gar unrehte, wan mac
God To-the people is truly still wholly wrong one may
sie aber wol lîden, doch ist ez daz beste niht. Ich spriche
them however well suffer yet is it the best not I say
wêrlîche: alle die wîle daz sich kein bilde in dir erbildet, daz
truly all the while that itself any image in thee images that
daz êwig wort niht enist oder kein ûzluogen hât ûz dem
the eternal word not is or any out-peering has out-of the
êwigen wort, daz enkan niemer sô guot gesîn, ime sî wêrlich
eternal word that can never so good be to-it be truly
unreht. Her umbe ist daz alleine ein gereht mensche, der
wrong Here for is that alone a just man who
elliu geschaffeniu dinc vernihtet hât und an einer gelîchen
all created things annihilated has and on a like
linien ân allez ûzluogen in daz êwige wort gerihtet stât
line without all out-peering into the eternal word directed stands
unde dar în gebildet unde widerbildet in der gerehtikeit. Der
and there in imaged and re-imaged in the justice The
mensche nimet dâ der sun nimet und ist der sun selber.
man takes where the son takes and is the son self
Ein schrift sprichet: nieman bekennet den vater wan der sun,
A scripture says no-one knows the father but the son
und dâ von wellent ir got bikennen, sô süllent ir niht
and there from (if)-will you God know so shall you not

alleine gelîch sîn dem sun, sunder ir sont der sun selber
alone like be to-the son but you shall the son self
sîn. Aber etlîche liute wellent got mit den ougen ansehen,
be But some people will God with the eyes look-at
alse sie ein rint ansehent, unde wellent got alsô minnen, als
as they a cow look-at and will God so love as
sie ein rint minnent. Die minnest dû umbe die milch und
they a cow love That lovest thou for the milk and
umbe die kæse und umbe dînen eigen nutz. Alsô tuont alle
for the cheese and for thine own profit So do all
die liute, die got minnent umbe ûzewendigen rîchtuom oder
the people who God love for outward riches or
inwendigen trôst, unde die minnent got niht reht, sunder
inward comfort and they love God not rightly but
sie minnent got umbe irn eigenen nutz. Jâ ich spriche
they love God for their own profit Yea I say
wêrlîche: allez, daz dû fürsetzest in dîner meinunge, daz got
truly all that thou settest-before in thy intention that God
niht in im selber ist, daz enkan niemer sô guot sîn, ez
not in him self is that can never so good be but-it
ensî dir ein hindernisse der nêhsten wârheit. Und als ich
be to-thee a bindrance of-the nearest truth And as I
ê sprach, wie sant Augustînus gelîchet ist einem guldînen
before spoke how saint Augustine likened is to-a golden
vazze, daz dâ ist undnân ganz und obnân offen, sich! alsô
vessel that there is below whole and above open see so
solt dû sîn: wilt dû mit sant Augustîn bestên und in aller
shalt thou be (if)-wilt thou with saint Augustine stand and in all
heiligen heilikeit, sô sol dîn herze beslozzen sîn vor aller
saints' holiness so shall thy heart closed be against all
geschaffenheit unde solt got nemen, als er in ime selber ist.
createdness and shalt God take as he in him self is

Her umbe sint die man gelîchet den oberen kreften, wan sie
Here for are the men likened to-the upper powers for they
alle zît blôzes houbtes sint, unde die vrowen den nideren
all time of-bare head are and the women to-the lower
kreften, wan in ir houbet alle zît bedeket ist. Die obern
powers for to-them their head all time covered is The upper
krefte die sint über zît und über stat und urspringent âne
powers they are above time and above place and spring without
mitel in dem wesen der sêle, unde dâ von sint sie gelîchet
means in the being of-the soul and there from are they likened
dien mannen, wan sie alle zît blôz stânt. Dâ von ist
to-the men for they all time bare stand There from is
ir werk êwic. Ein meister sprichet, daz alle die nidersten
their work eternal A master says that all the lowest
krefte der sêle alsô verre als sie berüeret habent zît oder
powers of-the soul as far as they touched have time or
stat, alsô vil habent sie verlorn ir juncvröwelîche reinekeit
place so much have they lost their maidenly purity
und enmügent niemer sô gar ûzgezogen werden noch sô
and may never so wholly out-drawn become nor so
gar gebiutelt werden, daz sie iemer komen mügent in die
wholly sifted become that they ever come may into the
oberôsten krefte. In wirt aber wol gegeben ein gelîchez
uppermost powers To-them becomes however well given a like
bilde einer îngedruketheit. Dû solt sîn stête unde veste,
image of-an impressedness Thou shalt be steadfast and firm
daz ist: dû solt gelîch stân liebes und leides, gelükes und
that is thou shalt alike stand in-joy and in-sorrow fortune and
ungelükes unde solt haben an dir edelkeit alles gesteines, daz
misfortune and shalt have on thee nobility of-all gemstones that
ist, daz alle tugent in dir beslozzen sint unde wesenlich von
is that all virtues in thee enclosed are and essentially from

dir vliezent. Dû solt alle tugent durchgân und übergân unde
thee flow Thou shalt all virtues go-through and over-go and
solt alleine die tugent nemen in dem grunde, dâ si ein ist
shalt alone the virtue take in the ground where she one is
mit götlîcher nâtûre. Und als vil sô dû mê geeingôt bist
with divine nature And as much as thou more united art
götlîcher nâtûre danne der engel, als verre muos er durch
to-divine nature than the angel as far must he through
dich enpfâhen. Daz wir ein werden, des helf uns got. Âmen.
thee receive That we one become that help us God Amen

XIX. Surrexit autem Saulus de terra

Saul rose from the earth and with open eyes saw nothing; Eckhart finds four senses there, first that the nothing was God. God dwells in a light no one can approach. The bride seeks Him in her bed and does not name Him, since God is nameless, and finds Him a little beyond creatures. Whatever falls into knowing is not God: the soul must take God as manner without manner, being without being, and, as Bernard says, measure without measure.

Surrexit autem Saulus de terra apertisque occulis nihil
Rose however Saul from earth and-with-opened eyes nothing
videbat (Act. XI, 8.). Diz wort, daz ich gesprochen habe in
saw Acts XI 8 This word which I spoken have in
der latîne, daz schrîbet sant Lucas in sînem êwangeliô von
the Latin that writes saint Luke in his gospel of
sante Paulô unde sprichet alsus ‘Paulus stuont ûf von der
saint Paul and says thus Paul stood up from the
erden unde mit offenen ougen sach er niht.’ Mich dunket,
earth and with open eyes saw he nothing Me seems
daz diz wörtelîn vier sinne habe. Ein sin ist: dô er ûf stuont
that this little-word four senses have One sense is when he up stood

von der erden mit offenen ougen sach er niht unde daz niht
from the earth with open eyes saw he nothing and that nothing
was got, wan dô er got sach, daz heizet er ein niht. Der
was God for when he God saw that calls he a nothing The
ander sin: dô er ûf stuont, dô sach er niht denne got. Der
second sense when he up stood then saw he nothing but God The
dritte: in allen dingen sach er niht wan got. Der vierde: dô
third in all things saw he nothing but God The fourth when
er got sach, dô sach er alliu dinc als ein niht. Hie vor hât
he God saw then saw he all things as a nothing Here before has
er gesprochen, wie ein lieht snelle kam von dem himel unde
he spoken how a light swiftly came from the heaven and
sluoc in nider zuo der erden. Nû merkent daz er sprichet, daz
struck him down to the earth Now mark that he says that
ein lieht von himel kam. Ez sprechent unser besten meister,
a light from heaven came It say our best masters
daz der himel in im selbe lieht habe unde doch niht enliuhtet.
that the heaven in it self light have and yet not shines
Diu sunne hât ouch lieht unde liuhtet. Ez sprechent unser
The sun has also light and shines It say our
meister: daz fiur an sîner einvaltiger nâtiurlîcher lûterkeit an
masters that fire in its simple natural purity in
sîner oberster stat dâ enliuhtet ez niht. Sîn nâtûre ist sô
its highest place there shines it not Its nature is so
lûter, daz ez kein ouge niht gesehen mac enkeine wîse. Ez
pure that it no eye ever see may in-any manner It
ist sô kleinfüege und entfremedet den ougen, wêre ez hie
is so subtle and estranged to-the eyes were it here
niden bî den ougen, ez enmöhte sîn niht berüeren mit der
below by the eyes it could of-it not touch with the

gesiht. Aber an eime fremden dinge dâ siht man ez wol
sight But in an alien thing there sees one it well
daz ez enpfenget ist, an einem holze oder an eime koln.
that it kindled is in a wood or in a coal
Bî dem liehte des himels prüeven wir daz lieht, daz got ist,
By the light of-the heaven judge we the light that God is
daz daz keines menschen sin gereichen mac. Dâ von sprichet
that which no man's sense reach may There from says
sant Paulus 'got wonet in eime liehte, dâ nieman zuo komen
saint Paul God dwells in a light where no-one to come
mac.' Er sprichet got ist ein lieht, dâ niht zuoganges enist.'
may He says God is a light where nothing of-approach is
Zuo gote ist kein zuoganc. Swer noch ûf gênde unde zuo
To God is no approach Whoever still up going and in
nemende ist an gnâden und an liehte, der kam noch nie in
increasing is in grace and in light he came yet never into
got. Got ist niht ein zuonemende lieht: man muoz mit dem
God God is not an increasing light one must with the
zuonemende dar sîn komen. In dem zuonemende siht man
increasing there be come In the increasing sees one
gotes niht. Sol got gesehen werden, daz muoz geschehen
of-God nothing (If)-shall God seen become that must happen
in eime liehte, daz got selber ist. Ein meister sprichet: in
in a light that God self is A master says in
gote enist niht minre noch mê noch daz unt daz. Die
God is not less nor more nor this and that The
wîle wir in dem zuogange sîn, sô komen wir niht dar în.
while we in the approach are so come we not there in
Nû sprichet er 'ein lieht von himel umbeschein in.' Dâ
Now says he a light from heaven shone-around him There
meinet er: swaz sîner sêle iht was, daz wart umbegriffen.
means he whatever of-his soul anything was that became embraced

Ein meister sprichet, daz in disem liehte alle die krefte der
A master says that in this light all the powers of-the
sêle überhüppent und erhœhent sich die ûzern sinne, dâ
soul leap-up and raise themselves the outer senses there
mite wir sehen und hœren, unde die innewendigen sinne,
with we see and hear and the inward senses
die wir gedanke heizen: wie wît die sîn unde wie grundelôs,
which we thoughts call how wide they be and how groundless
daz ist wunder. Als wol gedenke ich über mer als hie bî
that is wonder As well think I over sea as here by
mir. Über die gedenke ist vernüftekeit, als si noch suochende
me Over the thoughts is reason as she still seeking
ist. Si gât alumbe unde suochet, si lûzet har unde dar
is She goes all-around and seeks she peers hither and thither
und ir gât zuo und abe. Über die vernüftekeit, diu dâ
and to-her goes to and off Over the reason which there
suochende ist, sô ist ein ander vernüftekeit, diu dâ niht
seeking is so is an other reason which there not
ensuochet, diu dâ stât in ir lûterem einvaltigen wesenne,
seeks which there stands in her pure simple being
daz dâ begriffen ist in dem liehte. Und ich spriche, daz
that there grasped is in the light And I say that
in disem liehte alle die krefte der sêle sich erhœhent.
in this light all the powers of-the soul themselves raise
Die sinne entspringent in die gedanke. Wie hôch unde wie
The senses spring into the thoughts How high and how
grundelôs die sîn daz weiz nieman wan got unde diu sêle.
groundless they be that knows no-one but God and the soul
Ez sprechent unser meister, und ist ein swêre frâge, daz die
It say our masters and is a heavy question that the
engel niht enwizzen der gedenke, sie enbrechen danne
angels not know of-the thoughts unless-they break then

ûz unde die gedanke springen denne in die vernünftekeit,
out and the thoughts spring then into the reason
als diu vernünftekeit suochent ist. Und diu vernünftekeit,
as the reason seeking is And the reason
diu dâ suochende ist, springet in die vernünftekeit, diu
which there seeking is springs into the reason which
dâ niht suochende ist, diu dâ ein lûter lieht in ir selber
there not seeking is which there a pure light in her self
ist. Daz lieht begrîfet alle die krefte der sêle in sich.
is That light grasps all the powers of-the soul into itself
Dar umbe sprichet er 'daz lieht des himels umbeschein in.'
There for says he that light of-the heaven shone-around him
Ez sprichet ein meister: elliu diu dinc, diu ûzfluz hânt, diu
It says a master all the things which outflow have they
habent enkein enpfân von den nideren dingen. Got fliuzet in
have no receiving from the lower things God flows into
alle crêatûre unde belîbet er doch unberüeret von in allen. Er
all creatures and remains he yet untouched by them all He
bedarf ir niht. Got gibet der nâtûre, daz si würket, unde
needs them not God gives to-the nature that she works and
daz êrste werc ist daz herze. Dâ von wolten etlîche meister,
the first work is the heart There from would some masters
daz diu sêle alzemâle in dem herzen wêre und ûz flüzze mit
that the soul wholly in the heart were and out flowed with
lebenne in diu anderen gelîder. Des enist niht. Diu sêle ist in
life into the other limbs That is not The soul is in
eime ieklîchen gelide alzemâle. Ez ist wol wâr, ir êrste werk
an every limb wholly It is well true her first work
ist in dem herzen. Daz herze ist enmitten, ez wil al umbehuot
is in the heart The heart is in-the-midst it will all guarded
sîn, als der himel niht fremedes înfluzzes hât noch enpfâhens
be as the heaven no alien inflow has nor of-receiving

von nihte enhât, er habe alliu dinc in ime. Er berüeret alliu
from nothing has he have all things in him He touches all
dinc und er belîbet umberüeret. Dennoch daz fiur, swie hôch
things and he remains untouched Nonetheless the fire however high
ez sî an sîner oberster stat, ez enrüeret doch den himel niht.
it be in its highest place it touches yet the heaven not
'In dem umbeschîne wart er geworfen ûf die erden unde
In the shining-around was he thrown on the earth and
wurden im sîn ougen ûf entslozzen, daz er sach mit
became to-him his eyes up unlocked that he saw with
offenen ougen alliu dinc als niht. Unde dô er elliu dinc
open eyes all things as nothing And when he all things
sach als niht, dô sach er got.' Nû merkent, ein wörtelîn
saw as nothing then saw he God Now mark a little-word
sprichet diu sêle in der minne buoche 'in mînem bettelîn
speaks the soul in the love's book in my little-bed
hân ich gesuochet dur die naht, den mîn sêle minnet,
have I sought through the night him-whom my soul loves
und ich envant sîn niht.' Si suochte in in dem bettelîn:
and I found of-him not She sought him in the little-bed
dâ meinet si, swer dâ behaftet oder behanget an ihte,
there means she whoever there attached or hung on anything
daz under got ist, des bette ist ze enge. Allez daz got
that under God is his bed is too narrow All that God
geschaffen mag, daz ist ze enge. Si sprichet 'ich suochte in
create may that is too narrow She says I sought him
al dur die naht.' Ez ist kein naht, si habe ein lieht: ez
all through the night It is no night but-it have a light it
ist aber bedeket. Diu sunne schînet in der naht, si ist aber
is however covered The sun shines in the night it is however
bedeket. Tages schînet si unde bedeket elliu anderiu lieht.
covered By-day shines it and covers all other lights

Alsô tuot daz götlich lieht, daz bedeket unde verblendet
So does the divine light that covers and blinds
alliu lieht. Swaz wir suochen an crêatûren, daz ist allez
all lights Whatever we seek in creatures that is all
naht. Diz meine ich: allez swaz wir an dekeiner crêatûre
night This mean I all whatever we in any creature
suochen, daz ist allez schate und ist naht. Nochdenne des
seek that is all shade and is night Nonetheless the
obersten engels lieht, swie hôch ez sî, ez enliuhtet doch
highest angel's light however high it be it shines yet
der sêle niht. Swaz daz êrste lieht niht enist daz ist allez
to-the soul not Whatever the first light not is that is all
tunkel und ist naht. Dâ von vindet si gotes niht. 'Dô
dark and is night There from finds she of-God nothing Then
stuont ich ûf unde suochte alumbe unde lief dur wîte unt
stood I up and sought all-around and ran through wide and
dur enge gazzen. Dô funden mich die wahter (daz wâren
through narrow streets Then found me the watchmen those were
die engel) und ich frâgete sie, obe sie den niht hêten
the angels and I asked them whether they him not had
gesehen, den mîn sêle minnet? Unde sie swigen. vil lîhte
seen whom my soul loves And they were-silent very likely
enkunden sie sîn niht genemmen. 'Dô ich dô ein wênic
could they him not name When I then a little
fürbaz kam, dâ vant ich den mîn sêle minnet.' Daz
further came there found I him-whom my soul loves The
wenige unde daz kleine, daz sî dâ irte, daz si sîn niht
little and the small which her there hindered that she him not
envant, dâ von hân ich ouch mê gesprochen. Swem niht
found there from have I also more spoken To-whomever not
kleine und als ein niht sint elliu zerganclîchiu dinc, der
small and as a nothing are all transitory things he

vindet gotes niht. Dâ von sprichet si ‘dô ich ein wênic
finds of-God nothing There from says she when I a little
fürbaz kam, dô vant ich den ich suochte.’ Sô sich
further came then found I him-whom I sought When himself
got in die sêle bildet und în giuzet, nimest dû in denne
God into the soul images and in pours (if)-takest thou him then
als ein lieht oder ein wesen oder ein güete, bekennest dû
as a light or a being or a goodness (if)-knowest thou
noch iht von ime, daz enist got niht. Seht, daz kleine
yet anything of him that is God not See the small
sol man über gân unde sol alliu zuolegunge abe nemen
shall one over go and shall all additions off take
unde got bekennen ein. Dâ von sprichet si ‘dô ich ein
and God know one There from says she when I a
wênic fürbaz kam, dô vant ich den mîn sêle minnet.’
little further came then found I him-whom my soul loves
Wir sprechen gar dicke: den mîn sêle minnet. Nû ist er
We say very often him-whom my soul loves Now is he
doch gar verre ob der sêle, unde si ennante sîn niht, den sî
yet very far above the soul and she named him not whom she
minnete. Ez sint fünf sache, war umbe si in niht ennante.
loved There are five causes where fore she him not named
Ein sache ist, wan got namelôs ist. Solte si ime namen
One cause is for God nameless is Should she to-him name
geben, daz müeste bedaht werden. Got ist über alle namen,
give that must thought become God is above all names
nieman kan dar zuo komen, daz er got gesprechen müge. Diu
no-one can there to come that he God speak may The
ander sache ist: swenne diu sêle alzemâle mit minne in got
second cause is when the soul wholly with love into God
verfliuzet, sô enweiz si niht anders wan minne. Si wênet,
flows-away so knows she nothing else but love She supposes

daz in alle liute bekennen als si. Sî wundert, daz ieman
that him all people know as she Her wonders that anyone
iht anders bekennet wan got alleine. Diu dritte sache ist:
anything else knows but God alone The third cause is
si enhâte sô vil zîtes niht, daz si in genante. Si enkan
she had so much of-time not that she him named She can
sô lange von minne niht gekêren, si enmac kein ander wort
so long from love not turn she may no other word
geleisten wan minne. Daz vierde, daz si vil lîhte wênet,
achieve but love The fourth that she very likely supposes
daz er keinen namen anders habe wan minne. si nennet
that he no name else have but love she names
alle namen in der minne. Dâ von sprichet si 'ich stuont
all names in the love There from says she I stood
ûf unde gienc dur wîte unde dur enge. Dô ich dô ein
up and went through wide and through narrow When I then a
wênic fürbaz kam, dô vant ich den mîn sêle minnet.'
little further came then found I him-whom my soul loves
'Paulus stuont ûf von der erden unde mit offenen ougen
Paul stood up from the earth and with open eyes
sach er niht.' Ich mac niht gesehen daz ein ist. Er sach
saw he nothing I may not see what one is He saw
niht, daz was got. Got ist ein niht und got ist ein.
nothing that was God God is a nothing and God is one
Swaz iht ist daz ist ouch niht. Swaz got ist daz ist
Whatever something is that is also nothing Whatever God is that is
er alzemâle. Dâ von sprichet der liehte Dionysius, swâ er
he wholly There from says the bright Dionysius wherever he
von gote sprichet dâ sprichet er: er ist über wesen, er ist
of God speaks there says he he is above being he is
über leben, er ist über lieht; er gibet im noch diz noch
above life he is above light he gives to-him neither this nor

daz, und er meinet, daz er sî neizwaz, daz gar verre dar
that and he means that he be I-know-not-what that very far there
über sî. Der iht siht oder vellet iht in dîn bekennen,
above be Who anything sees or falls anything into thy knowing
daz ist got niht; dâ von niht, wan er noch diz noch daz
that is God not there from not for he neither this nor that
ist. Swer sprichet, daz got hie oder dâ sî, dem geloubet
is Whoever says that God here or there be him believe
niht. Daz lieht, daz got ist, daz liuhtet in der vinsternüsse.
not The light that God is that shines in the darkness
Got ist ein wâr lieht: swer daz sehen sol, der muoz blint
God is a true light whoever that see shall he must blind
sîn unde muoz gote al abe nemen von ihte. Ein meister
be and must from-God all off take of something A master
sprichet: swer von gote redet bî dekeiner gelîchnisse, der
says whoever of God speaks by any likeness he
redet unlûterlich von ime. Der aber bî nihte von gote redet,
speaks impurely of him Who however by nothing of God speaks
der redet eigenlich von ime. Swenne diu sêle kumet in
he speaks properly of him When the soul comes into
ein unde si dâ inne tritet in ein lûter verworfenheit ir
one and she there in steps into a pure casting-off of-her
selbes, dâ vindet si got als in eime nihte. Ez dûhte einen
self there finds she God as in a nothing It seemed to-a
menschen als in eime troume (ez was ein wachender troum),
man as in a dream it was a waking dream
wie ez swanger würde von nihte als ein frowe mit einem
how it pregnant became of nothing as a woman with a
kinde, und in dem nihte wart got geborn, der was diu fruht
child and in the nothing was God born he was the fruit
des nihtes. Got wart geborn in dem nihte. Dâ von sprichet
of-the nothing God was born in the nothing There from says

er ‘er stuont ûf von der erden unde mit offenen ougen
he he stood up from the earth and with open eyes
sach er niht.’ Er sach got, dâ alle crêatûre niht ensint.
saw he nothing He saw God where all creatures nothing are
Er sach alle crêatûre als ein niht, wan er hât aller crêatûre
He saw all creatures as a nothing for he has all creatures’
wesen in im. Er ist ein wesen, daz alliu wesen in im hât.
being in him He is a being that all beings in him has
Ein ander sache meinet er daz er sprichet ‘er sach niht.’ Ez
An other cause means he that he says he saw nothing It
sprechent unser meister: swer iht bekennet von ûzerlîchen
say our masters whoever anything knows of outward
dingen, dâ muoz etwaz în vallen, zem minsten ein îndruk.
things there must something in fall at-the least an impression
Sô ich ein bilde wil nemen bî einem dinge als von eime
When I an image will take by a thing as of a
steine, sô ziuhe ich daz aller gröbeste in mich, daz ziuhe
stone so draw I the all coarsest into me that draw
ich ûzwendic abe. Als ez aber in mîner sêle grunde ist,
I outwardly off As it however in my soul’s ground is
dâ ist ez an dem hœhsten und an dem edelesten, dâ enist
there is it at the highest and at the noblest there is
ez niht denne ein bilde. Swaz mîn sêle von ûzwendic
it nothing but an image Whatever my soul from outward
bekennet, dâ vellet etwaz fremedes în: swaz ich crêatûre
knows there falls something alien in whatever I creature
in gote bekenne, dâ vellet niut în wan got alleine, wan
in God know there falls nothing in but God alone for
in got ist niht wan got. Sô ich alle crêatûre bekenne, sô
in God is nothing but God When I all creatures know so
bekenne ich niht. Er sach got, dâ alle crêatûre niht ensint.
know I nothing He saw God where all creatures nothing are

Zem dritten mâle, war umbe er niht ensach. Niht daz was
At-the third time where fore he nothing saw Nothing that was
got. Ein meister sprichet: alle crêatûre sint in gote als ein
God A master says all creatures are in God as a
niht, wan er hât aller crêatûren wesen in ime. Er ist ein
nothing for he has all creatures' being in him He is a
wesen, daz elliu wesen in ime hât. Ein meister sprichet, daz
being that all beings in him has A master says that
niht under got ist, swie nâhe ez ime bî sî, dâ envalle
nothing under God is however near it to-him by be there but-falls
etwaz în. Ein meister sprichet, der engel bekenne sich
something in A master says the angel know him
selber unde got sunder mittel. Swaz er anders bekennet,
self and God without means Whatever he otherwise knows
dâ vellet etwaz fremedes în, daz ist noch ein îndruk,
there falls something alien in that is yet an impression
swie kleine ez joch sî. Sülle wir got bekennen, daz
however small it even be (If)-shall we God know that
muoz geschehen sunder mittel, dâ enkan niht fremedes în
must happen without means there can nothing alien in
gevallen. Bekennen wir got in disem liehte, daz muoz eigen
fall (If)-know we God in this light that must own
sîn und îngezogen âne allez înrîsen dekeiner geschaffener
be and in-drawn without all in-falling of-any created
dinge. Denne bekennen wir êwic leben sunder allez mittel.
things Then know we eternal life without all means
'Dô er niht ensach, dô sach er got.' Daz lieht, daz got ist, daz
When he nothing saw then saw he God The light that God is that
fliuzet unde machet vinster allez lieht. Dâ von sprichet Job 'er
flows and makes dark all light There from says Job he
gebiutet der sunnen, daz si niht enschîne, unde hât die sternen
commands to-the sun that she not shine and has the stars

under ime beslozzen als under ein ingesigel.' Von dem, daz er
under him enclosed as under a seal From that that he
umbegriffen was mit dem liehte, sô sach er anders niht, wan
embraced was with the light so saw he otherwise nothing for
swaz der sêle was, daz was bekümbert unde was unmüezic
whatever of-the soul was that was occupied and was busy
mit dem liehte, daz got ist, daz er anders niht mohte war
with the light that God is that he otherwise nothing could heed
nemen, unde daz ist uns ein guotiu lêre, wand swenne wir
take and that is to-us a good teaching for when we
mit gote bekümbert sîn, sô sîn wir wênic bekümbert von ûzen.
with God occupied are so are we little occupied from outside
Daz vierde, war umbe er sach niht: daz lieht, daz got ist,
The fourth where fore he saw nothing the light that God is
daz hât enkeinen gemanc, dâ vellet enkein gemanc în. Daz
that has no mixture there falls no mixture in That
was ein zeichen, daz er daz wâre lieht sach, daz dâ niht
was a sign that he the true light saw which there nothing
enist. Mit dem liehte meinet er anders niht, denne daz er
is With the light means he otherwise nothing than that he
mit offenen ougen niht sach. In deme daz er niht sach,
with open eyes nothing saw In that that he nothing saw
dô sach er daz götlich niht. Sant Augustînus sprichet:
then saw he the divine nothing Saint Augustine says
dô er nicht sach, dô sach er got. Sant Paulus sprichet
when he nothing saw then saw he God Saint Paul says
'swer anders niht ensiht unde blint ist, der siht got.' Dâ
whoever otherwise nothing sees and blind is he sees God There
von sprichet sant Augustînus: sît dem mâle daz got ein
from says saint Augustine since the time that God a
wâr lieht ist unde der sêle ein enthalt und ir nâher ist
true light is and to-the soul a support and to-her nearer is

denne diu sêle ir selber sî, swenne diu sêle gekêret ist
than the soul to-her self be when the soul turned is
von allen gewordenen dingen, von nôt muoz daz sîn, daz
from all become things of necessity must that be that
got in ir glenze unde blike. Diu sêle enmac minne noch
God in her shine and glance The soul may love nor
angest haben, si enwizze wâvon. Swenne diu sêle niht
fear have unless-she know wherefrom When the soul not
ûz engêt an ûzeriu dinc, sô ist si hein komen unde wonet
out goes to outer things so is she home come and dwells
in ir einvaltigem lûteren liehte. Dâ enminnet si noch
in her simple pure light There loves she nor
enhât angest noch vorhte. Bekantnisse ist ein gruntveste und
has fear nor dread Knowledge is a foundation and
ein pfunmunt alles wesennes. Minne mac niht anders haften
a fundament of-all being Love may not otherwise cling
denne in bekantnisse. Swenne diu sêle blint ist und anders
than in knowledge When the soul blind is and otherwise
niht ensiht, sô siht si got, unde daz muoz von nôt sîn.
nothing sees so sees she God and that must of necessity be
Ein meister sprichet: daz ouge in sîner grœsten lûterkeit, dâ
A master says the eye in its greatest purity where
ez enkein varwe hât, dâ siht ez alle varwe, niht alleine dâ
it no color has there sees it all color not alone where
ez in im selber blôz ist aller varwe, dâ ez an dem lîchamen
it in it self bare is of-all color where it in the body
stât, dâ muoz ez âne varwe sîn, dâ man bekennen sol
stands there must it without color be where one know shall
varwe. Swaz dâ ist âne varwe, dâ siht man alle varwe,
color Whatever there is without color there sees one all color
wêre ez joch unden an den füezen. Got ist ein solich wesen,
were it even below at the feet God is a such being

daz in sich treit alliu wesen. Sol got werden bekant der
that in itself bears all beings (If)-shall God become known to-the
sêle, sô muoz si blint sîn. Dar umbe sprichet er ‘er sach daz
soul so must she blind be There for says he he saw the
niht, des lieht alliu lieht sint, des wesen alliu wesen sint.’
nothing whose light all lights are whose being all beings are
Dâ von sprichet diu brût in der minne buoche ‘dô ich ein
There from says the bride in the love's book when I a
wênic fürbaz kam, dô vant ich den mîn sêle minnet.’ Daz
little further came then found I him-whom my soul loves The
wênic fürbaz daz si kam daz wâren alle crêatûren. Swer die
little further that she came that were all creatures Whoever them
niht ze rugge stôzet, der vindet gotes niht. Si meinet ouch,
not to back pushes he finds of-God nothing She means also
swie kleine, swie lûter daz ist, dâ bî ich got bekenne, daz
however small however pure that is there by I God know that
muoz abe. Nochdenne daz lieht, daz wêrlich got ist, nime
must off Nonetheless the light that truly God is (if)-take
ich daz, als ez mîne sêle rüeret, im ist unrehte. Ich sol ez
I that as it my soul touches to-it is wrong I shall it
nemen in dem, dâ ez ûz brichet. Ich enmöhte daz lieht
take in that where it out breaks I could the light
niht wol gesehen, dâ ez schînet an die want, ich enkêrte
not well see where it shines on the wall unless-I turned
denne mîn ouge dar, dâ ez ûz brichet. Dennoch, nime
then my eye thither where it out breaks Nonetheless (if)-take
ich ez dâ ez ûz brichet, des selben ûzbrechens muoz ich
I it where it out breaks of-the same outbreaking must I
beroubet werden: ich sol ez nemen weder dâ ez rüerende
robbed become I shall it take neither where it touching
ist noch ûzbrechende ist noch in im selber swebende ist,
is nor out-breaking is nor in it self hovering is

want ez ist noch allez wîse. Man muoz got nemen wîse
for it is yet all manner One must God take manner
âne wîse unde wesen âne wesen, want er hât keine wîse.
without manner and being without being for he has no manner
Dâ von sprichet sant Bernhardus: swer dich, got, bekennen
There from says saint Bernard whoever thee God know
sol, der muoz dich mâzen sunder mâze. Biten wir unsern
shall he must thee measure without measure Pray we our
herren, daz wir komen in daz bekantnisse, daz dâ alzemâle
lord that we come into the knowledge that there wholly
âne wîse und âne mâze sî. Des helf uns got. Âmen.
without manner and without measure be That help us God Amen

LX. Alliu glîchiu dinc minnent sich

All like things love and unite, all unlike things flee one another; earth, most unlike heaven, has fled to the lowest place, and heaven pours itself into it. So God must pour Himself wholly into the man who has taken the lowest place. The soul holds an uncreated light that takes God bare, without means; this spark is not content with Father, Son, and Spirit, nor with the still divine being, but would go into the simple ground, the still desert where no distinction ever looked in.

Meister Eckehart sprichet: alliu glîchiu dinc minnent sich
Master Eckhart says all like things love themselves
under einander und vereinent sich mit einander und alliu
among each-other and unite themselves with each-other and all
unglîchiu dinc fliehent sich unde hazzent sich under
unlike things flee themselves and hate themselves among
einander. Nû sprichet ein meister, daz niht sô unglîch
each-other Now says a master that nothing so unlike
under einander sî als himel und erde. Daz hât daz ertrîche
among each-other be as heaven and earth That has the earth

befunden in sîner nâtûre daz ez dem himel verre ist und
found in its nature that it to-the heaven far is and
unglîch. Har umbe hât ez den himel geflohen ûf die niderste
unlike Here for has it the heaven fled to the lowest
stat, unde dar umbe ist daz ertrîche unbewegelich, daz
place and there for is the earth unmovable that
ez dem himele iht genâhe, unde des ist der himel gewar
it to-the heaven not approach and of-that is the heaven aware
worden in sîner nâtûren, daz in daz ertrîche geflohen hât
become in its nature that it the earth fled has
unde die niderste stat besezzen hât. Dar umbe ergiuzet sich
and the lowest place occupied has There for pours itself
der himel alzemâle in fruhtberlîcher art in daz ertrîche,
the heaven wholly in fruitful manner into the earth
unde wellent daz die meistere, daz der breite wîte himel
and will that the masters that the broad wide heaven
niht behalte als breit als einer nâdeln spitze, ern gebere
not keep as broad as a needle's point but-it bear
sich alzemâle in fruhtberlîcher art in daz ertrîche. Dar
itself wholly in fruitful manner into the earth There
umbe heizet daz ertrîche die fruhtberlîcheste crêatûre under
for is-called the earth the most-fruitful creature among
allen zîtlîchen dingen. Ze glîcher wîse spriche ich von dem
all temporal things In like manner speak I of the
menschen, der sich vernihtet hât in ime selben in gote und
man who himself annihilated has in him self in God and
in allen crêatûren. Der mensche hât die niderste stat besezzen
in all creatures The man has the lowest place occupied
und in den menschen muoz sich got alzemâle ergiezen
and into the man must himself God wholly pour
oder ern ist niht got. Ich spriche bî gotes êwiger wârheit,
or he is not God I say by God's eternal truth

daz sich got in einen ieclîchen menschen, der sich zuo
that himself God into an every man who himself to
grunde gelâzen hât, muoz alzemâle ergiezen nâch aller sîner
ground left has must wholly pour after all his
vermügentheit alsô ganz unde gar, daz er in sîme lebenne,
might so whole and entirely that he in his life
in sîme wesenne, in sîner nâtûre noch in aller sîner gotheit
in his being in his nature nor in all his godhead
niht behaltet, er muoz ez alzemâle ergiezen in fruhtberlîcher
nothing keeps he must it wholly pour in fruitful
art in den menschen, der sich gote gelâzen unde die
manner into the man who himself to-God left and the
niderste stat besezzen hât. Dô ich hiute har gienc, dô
lowest place occupied has When I today hither went then
gedâhte ich, wie ich iu alsô vernunfteclîche gebredieti, daz
thought I how I to-you so rationally might-preach that
ir mich wol verstüendent, unde gedâhte ein glîchnis. Kündent
you me well understood and thought a likeness Could
ir daz wol verstân, sô verstüendent ir mînen sin unde den
you that well understand so understood you my sense and the
grunt aller mîner meinunge, den ich ie gebredieti, unde
ground of-all my meaning which I ever preached and
was daz glîchnisse von mînen ougen unde von dem holze.
was the likeness of my eyes and of the wood
Wirt mîn ouge ûf getân, sô ist ez ein ouge. Ist ez zuo,
(If)-becomes my eye up opened so is it an eye (If)-is it closed
sô ist ez daz selbe ouge, unde dur des gesihtes willen sô
so is it the same eye and through the seeing's sake so
gêt dem holze weder abe noch zuo. Nû merkent mich vil
goes from-the wood neither off nor to Now mark me very
rehte. Geschiht aber daz, daz mîn ouge ein und einvaltic ist
rightly (If)-happens however that that my eye one and simple is

an ime selber und ûf getân wirt und ûf daz holz geworfen
in it self and up opened becomes and onto the wood cast
wirt mit eime ansehenne, sô blîbet ein ieclich daz ez ist
becomes with a looking so remains an every-one what it is
unde werdent doch in der wirklicheit des ansehens als ein,
and become yet in the actuality of-the looking as one
daz man mac sprechen ouge holz unde daz holz ist mîn ouge.
that one may say eye wood and the wood is my eye
Wêre aber daz holz âne materien unde zemâle geistlich,
Were however the wood without matter and wholly spiritual
als daz gesihte mînes ougen, sô möhte man sprechen in der
as the sight of-my eye so might one say in the
wârheit, daz in der wirklicheit mîns gesihtes daz holz unde
truth that in the actuality of-my sight the wood and
mîn ouge bestüenden in einem wesenne. Ist diz wâr von
my eye stood in one being (If)-is this true of
lîplîchen dingen, vil mê ist ez wâr von geistlîchen dingen.
bodily things much more is it true of spiritual things
Ir sunt wizzen, daz mîn ouge vil mê einekeit hât mit
You shall know that my eye much more oneness has with
eines schâfes ougen, daz jensît mers ist, daz ich nie gesach,
a sheep's eyes that beyond sea is which I never saw
dan ez habe mit mînen ôren, mit den ez doch ein ist in
than it have with my ears with which it yet one is in
dem wesenne; unt daz ist dâ von, wan des schâfes ouge hât
the being and that is there from for the sheep's eye has
die selbe wirklicheit, die ouch mîn ouge hât, unt dâ von
the same actuality which also my eye has and there from
gib ich ime mê einekeit in dem werke dan ich tuo mînen
give I to-it more oneness in the work than I do to-my
ougen und ôren, wan diu sint gesundert an den werken.
eyes and ears for they are separated in the works

Ich hân etwenne gesprochen von einem liehte, ist in der sêle,
I have sometimes spoken of a light is in the soul
daz ist ungeschaffen und unschepfelich. Diz selbe lieht pflige
that is uncreated and uncreatable This same light am-wont
ich alwege ze rüerende in mîner predie unt daz selbe lieht
I always to touch in my sermon and the same light
nimet got âne mitel unbedecket blôz, als er an ime selber
takes God without means uncovered bare as he in him self
ist, unt daz ist ze nemende in der wirklicheit der îngeberunge.
is and that is to take in the actuality of-the in-bearing
Dâ mac ich wêrlîche sprechen, daz diz licht habe mê einekeit
There may I truly say that this light have more oneness
mit gote dan mit deheiner kraft, mit der ez doch ein ist in
with God than with any power with which it yet one is in
dem wesenne. Want ir sunt wizzen, daz diz lieht niht edeler
the being For you shall know that this light not nobler
ist in dem wesenne mîner sêle dan diu niderste kraft oder
is in the being of-my soul than the lowest power or
diu aller grobeste, als gehœrde oder gesiht oder ein ander
the all coarsest as hearing or sight or an other
kraft, an die hunger oder turst, frost oder hitze gevallen
power on which hunger or thirst frost or heat fall
mac, und ist daz des schult, daz daz wesen einveltic ist. Dâ
may and is that of-it the-blame that the being simple is There
von als man die krefte nimet in dem wesenne, sô sint sie alle
from as one the powers takes in the being so are they all
ein unde gelîch edel; aber dâ man die krefte nimet in irn
one and equally noble but where one the powers takes in their
werken, sô ist einiu vil edeler unde hœher dan diu ander.
works so is one much nobler and higher than the other

Dar umbe sô spriche ich: swenne sich der mensche bekêret
There for so say I when himself the man turns
von ime selben unde von allen geschaffen dingen, als vil dû
from him self and from all created things as much thou
daz tuost, als vil wirst dû geineget unde gesêliget in dem
that doest as much becomest thou united and blessed in the
fünkelîn der sêle, daz zît noch stat nie beruorte. Dirre funke
little-spark of-the soul which time nor place never touched This spark
widerseit allen crêatûren und enwil niht dan got blôz, als er in
renounces all creatures and will nothing but God bare as he in
ime selben ist. Ime engnüeget an vater noch an sune noch an
him self is To-it suffices in father nor in son nor in
heiligem geiste noch an den drin persônen als verre als ieclîchiu
holy spirit nor in the three persons as far as each
bestêt in ir eigenschaft. Ich spriche wêrlîche, daz diseme selben
stands in its property I say truly that to-this same
liehte niht begnüeget an der einberkeit der fruhtberlîcher
light not suffices in the oneness of-the fruitful
art gotlîcher nâtûre. Ich wil noch mê sprechen, daz noch
manner of-divine nature I will yet more say what yet
wunderlîcher lûtet: ich spriche bî guoter wârheit, daz disem
more-wondrously sounds I say by good truth that to-this
liehte niht genüeget an dem einveltigen stillestânden gotlîchen
light not suffices in the simple still-standing divine
wesenne, daz weder gît noch ennimet, mêr: ez wil wizzen,
being that neither gives nor takes but it will know
wannen diz wesen har kome, ez wil in den einveltigen grunt,
whence this being hither come it will into the simple ground
in die stillen wüeste, dâ nie underscheit în geluogete weder
into the still desert where never distinction in peered neither
vater noch sun noch heiligeist; in dem innegen, dâ nieman
father nor son nor holy-spirit in the innermost where no-one

heime ist, dâ benüeget ez inme liehte, unt dâ ist ez einiger
at-home is there suffices it in-the light and there is it more-one
dan in ime selber; want dirre grunt ist ein einveltic stille, diu
than in it self for this ground is a simple stillness which
in ir selber unbewegelich ist, unde von dirre unbewegelicheit
in her self unmovable is and from this unmovability
werdent beweget alliu dinc und enpfangen alliu leben, diu
become moved all things and receive all lives which
vernünfteclîche lebent und in sich selber gezogen sint. Daz
rationally live and into them self drawn are That
wir alsus vernünfteclîche leben, des helf uns got. Âmen.
we thus rationally live that help us God Amen

LXV. Justi autem in perpetuum vivent

The just shall live forever, and their reward is with God. The just give each his own: God His honor, the saints and angels joy. They take all things alike from God, dear or loath, and have no will but His; were God not just, they would not care a bean for Him. God's being is my life. As the woman was made from the man's side as his equal, the just soul stands equal beside God, and the Father bears me as His Son without distinction. We should ask nothing of God as of a stranger, being friends, not servants, nor serve for any why. God and I are one in knowing and in working, changed into Him as fire changes wood into itself.

Justi autem in perpetuum vivent et apud dominum est merces
The-just however into perpetuity shall-live and with the-lord is reward
eorum (Sap. IV, 19.). 'Die gerehten süllent leben êweclîche und
their Wisd. IV 19 The just shall live eternally and
ir lôn ist bî gote.' Nû merkent disen sin gar eben; alleine
their reward is with God Now mark this sense quite closely though
er grob lûte unde gemeine, sô ist er doch gar merklich unde
it coarse sound and common so is it yet very notable and

gar guot. ‘Die gerehten süllent leben.’ Welhez sint die gerehten?
very good The just shall live Which are the just
Ein geschrift sprichet: der ist gereht, der eim iegelîchen gît
A scripture says he is just who to-an every-one gives
daz sîn ist. Alsô sint diz die gerehten, die dâ gote gebent
what his is So are these the just who there to-God give
daz sîn ist unde den heiligen unde den engeln daz ir ist
what his is and to-the saints and to-the angels what theirs is
unde dem ebenmenschen daz sîn ist. Gotes ist diu êre. Wer
and to-the fellow-man what his is God's is the honor Who
sint, die got êrent? Die ir selbes alzemâle sint ûz
are they-that God honor Those-who of-their self wholly are out
gegangen unde des iren alzemâle niht suochent an dekeinen
gone and of-the theirs wholly nothing seek in any
dingen, swaz ez joch sî, grôz noch klein, die niht suochent
things whatever it even be great nor small who nothing seek
weder under sich noch über sich noch nebent sich, die
neither under themselves or over themselves or beside themselves who
niht enmeinent noch guot noch êre noch gemach noch lust
not intend neither good or honor or ease or delight
noch innekeit noch heilekeit noch lôn noch himelrîche. Und
or inwardness or holiness or reward or heaven And
dise sint ûz gegangen alles des iren, der liute hât got êre
these are out gone of-all of-the theirs of-these people has God honor
unde die êrent got eigenlîche unde gebent im daz sîn ist.
and they honor God properly and give him what his is
Man sol geben den heiligen unde den engeln fröude. Eyâ,
One shall give to-the saints and to-the angels joy Eya
wunder über allez wunder! Mag ein mensche in disem
wonder over all wonder May a man in this
lebenne fröude geben den, die in dem êwigen lebenne sint?
life joy give to-those who in the eternal life are

Jâ, wêrlîche! ein iegelich heilige hât sô grôzen lust unde sô
Yea truly an every saint has so great delight and so
unsprechelîche vröude von eime ieglîchen guoten werke, von
unspeakable joy from an every good work from
einem guoten willen oder einer begerunge, daz ez ein wunder
a good will or a desire that it a wonder
ze sagenne wêre und ungelouplich; jâ, sie habent hie von
to tell were and unbelievable yea they have here of
sô grôze vröude, daz ez kein munt ûz sprechen kan noch
so great joy that it no mouth out speak can nor
kein herze erdenken, als ich gesprochen habe. War umbe
any heart think-out as I spoken have Where fore
ist daz? Dâ minnent si got als unmêzlîchen sêre unde
is that There love they God so immeasurably sorely and
habent in sô rehte liep, daz sîn êre in lieber ist denne
have him so rightly dear that his honor to-them dearer is than
ir sêlekeit. Niht alleine die heiligen unde die engel, mêr:
their blessedness Not alone the saints and the angels but
got selber hât sô grôzen lust dar abe, reht als ob ez sîn
God self has so great delight there of just as if it his
sêlekeit sî unde sîn wesen swebe dar an unde sîn genüegede
blessedness be and his being hover there on and his satisfaction
unde sîn wollust. Eyâ, nû merkent! Enwolten wir gote niht
and his delight Eya now mark Would we God not
dienen umbe kein ander sache wan umbe die grôzen vröude,
serve for any other cause but for the great joy
die sie dar an habent, die in dem êwigen lebenne sint,
which they there in have who in the eternal life are
unde got selber, wir möhten ez gerne tuon unde mit allem
and God self we might it gladly do and with all

flîze. Man möhte ouch den geben, die in dem vegefiure
diligence One might also to-those give who in the purgatory
sint, hilfe, unde bezzerunge den, die noch lebent.
are help and betterment to-those who still live
Der mensche ist gereht in einer wîs, und in einem anderen
The man is just in one manner and in an other
sinne sô sint die gereht, die alliu dinc gelîch enpfâhent von
sense so are those just who all things alike receive from
gote swaz ez joch sî, grôz oder klein, lieb oder leit, allez
God whatever it even be great or small dear or loath all
gelîch, minre noch mêr, einz als daz ander. Wigestû
alike less nor more one as the other (If)-weighest-thou
daz ein iht mêr denne daz ander, sô ist im unreht.
the one anything more than the other so is to-it wrong
Dû solt dînes eigen willen alzemâle sîn ûz gegangen.
Thou shalt of-thy own will wholly be out gone
Ich gedâhte niuwelîche umb ein dinc: wölte got niht als ich, sô
I thought newly about a thing would God not as I so
wölte ich doch als er. Sumlîche liute wellent ir willen hân an
would I yet as he Some people will their will have in
allen dingen; daz ist bœse, dar în vellet gebreste. Die andern
all things that is evil there in falls defect The others
sint ein wênic bezzer, die wellent wol, waz got wil, unde wider
are a little better they will well what God wills and against
sînen willen sô wellent sie niht; wêren sie aber siech, sô
his will so will they not were they however sick so
wölten sie wol, daz ez gotes wille wêre, daz sie gesunt wêren.
would they well that it God's will were that they healthy were
Alsô wölten dise liute, daz got nâch ir willen wêre, lieber
So would these people that God after their will were rather
denne sie nâch sînem willen. Man muoz ez vertragen, im ist
than they after his will One must it bear to-it is

aber unreht. Die gerehten hânt zemâle keinen willen: waz got
however wrong The just have wholly no will what God
wil, daz ist in alzemâle gelîch, swie grôz der ungemach sî.
wills that is to-them wholly alike however great the discomfort be
Den gerehten menschen den ist alsô ernst zuo der
To-the just men to-them is so earnest to the
gerehtekeit, wêre, daz got niht gereht wêre, sie enahteten ein
justice were that God not just were they would-heed a
bône niht ûf got, jâ sie stênt alsô vaste in der gerehtekeit
bean not on God yea they stand so firmly in the justice
unde sint ir selbes alsô gar ûz gegangen, daz sie noch
and are of-their self so wholly out gone that they neither
pîne der helle ahtent noch fröude des himels noch keines
pain of-the hell heed nor joy of-the heaven nor of-any
dinges. Jâ wêre alliu diu pîne, die dâ hânt die in der
thing Yea were all the pain which there have those-who in the
helle sint, oder alliu diu pîne, diu ûf ertrîche ie geliten
hell are or all the pain which on earth ever suffered
wart oder iemer sol werden geliten, wêre diu gesetzet bî der
was or ever shall become suffered were it set by the
gerehtekeit, sie enahteten sîn niht umb einen bast, sô vaste
justice they would-heed of-it not for a bast so firmly
stênt sie an gote und an der gerehtekeit. Dem gerehten
stand they on God and on the justice To-the just
menschen ist niht pînlîcher noch swêrre denne daz der
man is nothing more-painful nor heavier than what to-the
gerehtekeit wider ist, daz ez in allen gelîch ist. Alse wie?
justice against is that it to-them all alike is As how
Mag sie ein dinc fröuwen und ein anderz betrüeben, sô
(If)-may them one thing gladden and an other sadden so
ensint sie niht gereht, mêr: sint sie ze einer zît frô unde
are they not just but (if)-are they at one time glad and

ze der andern minner oder niht, sô ist im unreht. Wan
at the other less or not so is to-it wrong For
swer die gerehtekeit minnet, der stêt sô vaste dar ûf, swaz
whoever the justice loves he stands so firmly there on whatever
er minnet daz ist sîn wesen, den enmac dekein dinc abe
he loves that is his being him may no thing off
ziehen noch keines dinges ahtet er anders. Sant Augustînus
draw nor of-any thing heeds he otherwise Saint Augustine
sprichet: dâ diu sêle minnet, dâ ist si eigenlîcher denne
says where the soul loves there is she more-properly than
dâ si leben gît. Daz wort lûtet grob unde gemeine, unde
where she life gives The word sounds coarse and common and
verstêt doch wênic ieman, wie im sî, und ist doch wâr.
understands yet little anyone how it be and is yet true
Swer underscheit verstêt von gerehtekeit unde von gerehten,
Whoever distinction understands of justice and of just-ones
der verstêt allez, daz ich sage: 'die gerehten süllent leben.'
he understands all that I say the just shall live
Ez ist kein dinc sô liep noch sô begirlich alse leben under
There is no thing so dear nor so desirable as life among
allen dingen. Sô ist kein leben sô bœse noch sô swêrlich, ein
all things So is no life so evil nor so grievous a
mensche welle dannoch leben. Ein geschrift diu sprichet: ie
man will yet live A scripture it says ever
daz dinc dem tôde nêher ist, sô ez ie pînlîcher ist. Nochdenne
the thing to-the death nearer is so it ever more-painful is Nonetheless
swie bœse daz leben ist, sô wil ez leben. War umbe izzest
however evil the life is so will it live Where fore eatest
dû? War umbe slâfest du? Umbe daz dû lebest. War umbe
thou Where fore sleepest thou For that thou livest Where fore
begerst dû guotes oder êren? Daz weist dû harte wol. Mêr:
desirest thou good or honors That knowest thou very well But

war umbe lebest dû? Umbe leben, unde enweist dannoch
where fore livest thou For life and knowest yet
niht, war umbe dû lebest. Sô begirlich ist daz leben in ime
not where fore thou livest So desirable is the life in it
selber, daz man ez umbe sich selber begert. Die in der
self that one it for it self desires Those-who in the
helle sint in êwiger pîne, die wölten niht ir leben verliesen
hell are in eternal pain they would not their life lose
noch vîende noch sêle, wan ir leben daz ist sô edel, daz ez
neither fiends nor souls for their life that is so noble that it
sunder alle mitel fliuzet von gote in sie. Dar umbe wellent
without all means flows from God into them There for will
sie leben. Waz ist leben? Gotes wesen ist mîn leben. Ist
they live What is life God's being is my life (If)-is
mîn leben gotes wesen, sô muoz daz gotes sîn mîn sîn unde
my life God's being so must the God's being mine be and
gotes istikeit mîn istikeit, weder minner noch mêr. Sie lebent
God's is-ness my is-ness neither less nor more They live
êweclich bî gote, jâ ebengelîch, noch unden noch oben. Sie
eternally with God yea equally neither below nor above They
würkent alliu ir werc bî gote unde got bî in. Sant Johannes
work all their works with God and God with them Saint John
sprichet 'daz wort was bî gote.' Ez was alzemâle gelîch
says the word was with God It was wholly equal
unde bî nebent, noch undenân noch obenân, sunder gelîch.
and by beside neither below nor above but equal
Dô got den menschen beschuof, dô machte er die frouwen
When God the man created then made he the woman
von des mannes sîten, dar umbe daz si ime gelîch wêre.
from the man's side there for that she to-him like were
Er machte sî niht von dem houbte noch von den füezen,
He made her not from the head nor from the feet

daz si wêre weder frouwe noch man, sunder daz si gelîch
that she were neither lady nor man but that she like
wêre. Alsô sol diu gerehte sêle gelîch bî gote sîn unde
were So shall the just soul alike by God be and
bî nebent gote, rehte ebengelîch, noch unden noch oben.
by beside God right equal neither below nor above
Wer sint die alsô gelîch sint? Die niht gelîch sint die
Who are they-who so equal are Those-who not like are they
sint alleine gote gelîch. Götlich wesen dem ist niht gelîch, in
are alone to-God like Divine being to-it is nothing like in
im ist noch bilde noch forme. Die sêle, die alsô gelîch sint,
it is neither image nor form The souls which so equal are
den gît der vater gelîch und enthaltet in nihtes niht vor.
to-them gives the father equally and withholds from-them nothing at-all before
Swaz der vater geleisten mac, daz gît er dirre sêle gelîch, jâ
Whatever the father achieve may that gives he to-this soul equally yea
obe si gelîch stêt ir selber, niht mêr dan eime andern. Ir
if she equal stands to-her self not more than to-an other Her
eigen êre, ir nutz unde swaz ir ist, des ensol si niht mê
own honor her profit and whatever hers is that shall she not more
begern noch ahten denne eines fremeden. Swaz iemannes ist
desire nor heed than of-a stranger Whatever anyone's is
daz sol ir wider sîn, frömde unde verre, ez sî bœse oder
that shall to-her neither be alien and far it be evil or
guot. Alliu minne dirre welte ist gebûwen ûf eigenminne.
good All love of-this world is built on self-love
Hêtest dû die gelâzen, sô hêtestû al die welt gelâzen.
Had thou that left so hadst-thou all the world left
Der vater gebirt sînen sun in der êwikeit ime selber gelîch.
The father bears his son in the eternity to-him self like
'Daz wort was bî gote unde got was daz wort': daz selbe
The word was with God and God was the word the same

in der selben nâtûre. Noch spriche ich mêr: er hât in
in the same nature Yet say I more he has him
geborn in mîner sêle. Niht alleine ist si bî ime noch er bî
born in my soul Not alone is she by him nor he by
ir gelîch, sunder er ist in ir unde gebirt der vater sînen
her alike but he is in her and bears the father his
sun in der sêle in der selben wîse, als er in in der êwikeit
son in the soul in the same manner as he him in the eternity
gebirt, unde niht anders. Er muoz ez tuon, ez sî ime liep
bears and not otherwise He must it do it be to-him dear
oder leit. Der vater gebirt sînen sun âne underlâz, unde
or loath The father bears his son without ceasing and
ich spriche mêr: er gebirt mich sînen sun unde den selben
I say more he bears me his son and the same
sun. Ich spriche mêr: er gebirt mich niht alleine sînen sun,
son I say more he bears me not alone his son
mêr: er gebirt mich sich unde sich mich unde mich sîn
but he bears me himself and himself me and me his
wesen unde sîn nâtûre. In dem nidersten quille ich ûz in
being and his nature In the lowest well I out in
dem heiligen geiste, dâ ist éin leben und éin wesen und éin
the holy spirit there is one life and one being and one
werc. Alsô waz got würket daz ist ein, dar umbe gebirt
work So whatever God works that is one there for bears
er mich sînen sun ân allen underscheit. Mîn lîplîcher
he me his son without all distinction My bodily
vater ist niht eigenlich mîn vater, sunder an einem kleinen
father is not properly my father but in a small
stückelîn sîner nâtûre, und ich bin gescheiden von im; er
little-piece of-his nature and I am separated from him he
mac tôt sîn und ich lebe. Dar umbe sô ist der himelische
may dead be and I live There for so is the heavenly

vater wârlîche mîn vater, wan ich sîn bin und allez daz von
father truly my father for I his am and all that from
im habe daz ich habe und ich der selbe sun bin unde niht
him have that I have and I the same son am and not
ein ander. Wan der vater ein werc würket, dar umbe würket
an other For the father one work works there for works
er mich sînen sun ân allen underscheit. Ez sprichet Paulus
he me his son without all distinction It says Paul
'wir werden alzemâle transformieret in got unde verwandelt.'
we become wholly transformed into God and changed
Merk ein gelîchnüsse. Ze glîcher wîse, als an dem sacramente
Mark a likeness In like manner as in the sacrament
verwandelt wirt brôt in unsers herren lîchamen, swie vil
changed becomes bread into our lord's body however many
der brôte wêre, sô wirt doch niht mê dan éin lîcham.
of-the breads were so becomes yet not more than one body
Ze glîcher wîse wêren alliu diu brôt verwandelt in mînen
In like manner were all the breads changed into my
vinger, sô würde doch niht mê dan ein vinger. Mêr:
finger so would-become yet not more than one finger But
würde mîn vinger verwandelt in daz brôt, sô wêre diz alsô
became my finger changed into the bread so were this as
vil als jenez; wan waz in daz ander verwandelt wirt, daz
much as that for what into the other changed becomes that
wirt einz mit ime. Alsô, wirde ich verwandelt in in, daz
becomes one with it So (if)-become I changed into him that
er würket mich sîn wesen ein unde gelîch, bî dem lebentigen
he works me his being one and alike by the living
got, sô ist daz wâr, daz kein underscheit enist. Der vater
God so is that true that no distinction is The father
gebirt sînen sun âne underlâz. Dâ der sun geborn îst,
bears his son without ceasing Where the son born is

dâ ennimet er niht von dem vater, wan er hât ez allez:
there takes he nothing from the father for he has it all
aber dâ er geborn wirt, dâ nimet er von dem vater.
but where he born becomes there takes he from the father
In disem süllen wir ouch niht begern von gote als von einem
In this shall we also not desire from God as from a
frömden. Unser herre sprach ze sînen jungern 'ich hân iuch niht
stranger Our lord spoke to his disciples I have you not
geheizen knehte sunder friunde.' Waz iht begert von dem
called servants but friends What anything desires from the
andern daz ist kneht; waz dâ lônet daz ist herre. Ich gedâhte
other that is servant what there rewards that is lord I thought
niulîche, ob ich von gote iht nemen wölte oder begern. Ich
newly whether I from God anything take would or desire I
wil mich harte wol berâten, wan dâ ich von got wêre nemende,
will me very well consider for where I from God were taking
dâ wêre ich under gote als ein kneht under sîme herren an
there were I under God as a servant under his lord in
dem gebenne. Alsô süllen wir niht sîn in dem êwigen lebenne.
the giving So shall we not be in the eternal life
Ich sprach einest alhie und ist ouch wâr: waz der mensche
I spoke once here and is also true what the man
ûzer got ziuhet oder nimet, dem ist unreht. Man ensol got
out-of God draws or takes to-it is wrong One shall God
niht nemen ûzer im selber noch ahten, sunder als er mîn
not take outside him self nor regard but as he my
eigen und in mir ist; noch man ensol dienen noch würken
own and in me is nor one shall serve nor work
umbe kein warumbe noch umbe got noch umbe sîn êre
for any why nor for God nor for his honor

noch umbe nihtesniht, daz ûzer ime sî, wan alleine umbe
nor for nothing-at-all that outside him be but alone for
daz, daz sîn wesen unde sîn eigen leben ist in ime.
that which his being and his own life is in him
Sumlîche einveltige liute die wênent, sie süllen got sehen
Some simple people they suppose they shall God see
als stande er dâ unde sie hie. Des enist niht. Got und ich
as-if stood he there and they here That is not God and I
wir sîn ein mit bekennen. Nime ich alsô got in mich mit
we are one in knowing (If)-take I so God into me with
minne, sô gân ich in got. Etlîche sprechent, daz sêlikeit niht
love so go I into God Some say that blessedness not
lige an bekantnisse, sunder alleine an willen. Die hânt unreht;
lie in knowledge but alone in will They have wrong
wan lêge ez alleine an willen, sô wêre ez niht ein. Daz
for should-lie it alone in will so were it not one The
würken unde daz werden daz ist ein. Sô der zimmerman
working and the becoming that is one When the carpenter
niht würket, sô würket ouch daz hûs niht. Dâ diu barte
not works so works also the house not Where the axe
lât, dâ lât ouch daz gewerden. Got und ich wir sîn ein in
rests there rests also the becoming God and I we are one in
dem gewürke: er würket und ich gewirde. Daz fiur verwandelt
the working he works and I become The fire changes
in sich swaz im zuo gefüeget wirt unde wirt sîn nâtûre.
into itself whatever to-it to joined becomes and becomes its nature
Daz holz daz verwandelt daz fiur in sich niht, mêr: daz fiur
The wood that changes the fire into itself not but the fire
daz verwandelt daz holz in sich. Alsô werden wir in got
that changes the wood into itself So become we into God
verwandelt, daz wir in danne bekennen als er ist, sprichet
changed that we him then know as he is says

sant Paulus. Alsô sullen wir in bekennende sîn, reht ich in
saint Paul So shall we him knowing be just I him
als er mich, noch minner noch mêr, gelîch blôz. ‘Die gerehten
as he me neither less nor more alike bare The just
süllent leben êweclich und ir lôn ist bî gote’ alsô gelîch
shall live eternally and their reward is with God as equal
als ich geseit hân. Daz wir die gerehtekeit minnen durch
as I said have That we the justice love for
sich selben unde got âne warumbe, des helf uns got. Âmen.
it self and God without why that help us God Amen

LXXXIII. In diebus suis placuit deo

For Saint Germanus’ feast: he pleased God in his days. There is the soul’s day and God’s; days seven thousand days ago are as near as yesterday, for time there is a present now, in which God creates the world, the Father bears His Son in the soul, and the soul is born again in God. Whoever seeks nothing of his own in God or creatures dwells in God, who is love. All that pleases God pleases Him in His only Son, and a man should be one with the Son, not a servant. A power in the soul seeks God not as good or truth but in His oneness, His desert, and His own ground. The saint was found just, alike in joy and sorrow, and God loves the just as like Himself.

In diebus suis placuit deo et inventus est justus (Eccl.
In days his pleased to-God and found was just Ecclus.
XLIV, 17). Diz wort, daz ich gesprochen hân in der latîne,
XLIV 17 This word which I spoken have in the Latin
liset man zuo êre einem heiligen, des tac man hiute
reads one to honor of-a saint whose day one today
begêt in der heiligen kristenheit, mit namen Germânus,
celebrates in the holy Christendom by name Germanus
von des tugentrîchem lebenne vil geschriben ist, unde
of whose virtue-rich life much written is and

haltet diz wort disen sin ze tiutsche inne ‘er hât gote
holds this word this sense in German within he has to-God
wol gevallen in sînen tagen.’
well pleased in his days
Nû merkent. Sô man sprichet ‘in sînen tagen’, dâ ist mê
Now mark When one says in his days there is more
tac dan einer. Er ist der sêle tac und ist gotes tac. Die tage,
day than one It is the soul's day and is God's day The days
die hie sint, sehs oder siben in den tagen, die dâ wâren vor
which here are six or seven in the days that there were before
siben tûsent tagen, die sint den tagen hiute alse nâhe alse
seven thousand days they are to-the days today as near as
der tac, der gester was. War umbe? Dâ ist diu zît in eime
the day that yesterday was Where fore There is the time in a
gegenwürtigen nû. Daz der himel loufet, der êrste louf des
present now That the heaven runs the first run of-the
himels dâ von ist ez tac. Dâ geschiht in eime nû der sêle
heaven there from is it day There happens in a now the soul's
tac, und in irm nâtiurlîchen liehte, dâ alliu dinc sint, dâ ist
day and in her natural light where all things are there is
ein ganzer tac, dâ ist tac unde naht ein, dâ ist gotes tac.
a whole day there is day and night one there is God's day
Diu sêle stêt dâ in dem tage der êwikeit in eime wesenlîchen
The soul stands there in the day of-the eternity in an essential
nû, unde dâ gebirt der vater sînen in eime gegenwürtigen nû
now and there bears the father his-own in a present now
unde wirt diu sêle wider in gote geborn. Alse dicke sô diu
and becomes the soul again in God born As often as the
geburt geschiht, alse dicke gebirt si den eingebornen sun. Dar
birth happens so often bears she the only-begotten son There
umbe ist der süne vil mêr, die die juncfrouwen gebernt,
for are of-the sons many more whom the virgins bear

wan sie gebernt über zît in êwikeit. Wie vil der süne ist,
for they bear above time in eternity However many of-the sons are
die diu sêle gebirt in êwikeit, sô ist ir doch niht mêr dan
whom the soul bears in eternity so is of-them yet not more than
éin sun, wan ez geschiht oben zît in den tagen der êwikeit.
one son for it happens above time in the days of-the eternity
Nû ist dem menschen gar reht, der in tugenden lebet
Now is to-the man wholly right who in virtues lives
und in tugenden würket, dem ist gar reht, der des sînen
and in virtues works to-him is wholly right who of-the his
niht ensuochet an dekeinen dingen weder an gote noch an
not seeks in any things neither in God nor in
den crêatûren. Der wonet in gote unde got wonet in im.
the creatures He dwells in God and God dwells in him
Dem menschen ist lustlich elliu dinc ze lâzenne unde ze
To-the man is delightful all things to leave and to
versmêhenne und elliu dinc ze volbringenne ûf daz aller
despise and all things to accomplish to the all
hœhste. Ez sprichet sant Johannes ‘got ist diu minne unde
highest It says saint John God is the love and
diu minne ist got und wer in der minne wonet, der wonet in
the love is God and who in the love dwells he dwells in
gote’, der hât wol gehûset âne zwîvel und ist ein erbe gotes,
God he has well housed without doubt and is an heir of-God
unde in wem got wonet, der hât wirdige hûsgenôzen bî im.
and in whom God dwells he has worthy housemates by him
Ein meister sprichet, der sêle werde ein gâbe gegeben von
A master says to-the soul becomes a gift given from
gote, dâ von si beweget wirt zuo innern dingen. Ez sprichet
God from which she moved becomes to inner things It says
ouch ein meister, daz diu sêle wirt beweget âne mitel von
also a master that the soul becomes moved without means by

dem heiligen geiste, wan in der minne, dar inne sich got
the holy spirit for in the love there in himself God
selber minnet, in der selben minne minnet er mich unde diu
self loves in the same love loves he me and the
sêle minnet got in der selben minne, dar inne er sich selber
soul loves God in the same love there in he him self
minnet, unde wêre diu minne niht, dar inne got sich selber
loves and were the love not there in God him self
minnet, der heilig geist enwêre niht. Ez ist ein hitze und ein
loves the holy spirit were not It is a heat and an
ûzblüejen des heiligen geistes, dar inne diu sêle got minnet.
out-blossoming of-the holy spirit there in the soul God loves
Nû schrîbet ein êwangeliste 'diz ist mîn lieber sun, in
Now writes an evangelist this is my dear son in
deme ich mir wol gevalle.' Der ander schrîbet 'diz ist mîn
whom I myself well please The other writes this is my
lieber sun, in deme mir alliu dinc gevallent.' Der dritte
dear son in whom to-me all things please The third
schrîbet 'diz ist mîn lieber sun, in deme ich mir selber
writes this is my dear son in whom I me self
gevalle.' Allez, daz gote gevellet, daz gevellet ime in sîme
please All that to-God pleases that pleases him in his
eingebornen sune, und allez, daz got minnet, daz minnet er
only-begotten son and all that God loves that loves he
in sîme eingebornen sune. Nû sol der mensche alsô leben,
in his only-begotten son Now shall the man so live
daz er ein sî mit dem eingebornen sune unt daz er der
that he one be with the only-begotten son and that he the
eingeborne sun sî. Zwischen dem eingebornen sune unde der
only-begotten son be Between the only-begotten son and the
sêle enist dekein underscheit. Zwischen dem knehte unt dem
soul is no distinction Between the servant and the

herren enwirt niemer minne gelîch. Die wîle ich kneht bin,
lord becomes never love alike The while I servant am
sô bin ich dem eingebornen sune gar verre und ungelîch.
so am I to-the only-begotten son wholly far and unlike
Sêhe ich got ane mit mînen ougen, dâ mite ich die
Should-see I God on with my eyes there with I the
varwe an sihe, sô wêre mir gar unreht, wan ez ist zîtlich;
color on see so were to-me wholly wrong for it is temporal
wan allez, daz zîtlich ist, dâ man zît nennet, dâ nennet
for all that temporal is where one time names there names
man sî von dem minsten. Nû, daz ist zît unde stât in ime
one it from the least Now that is time and stands in it
selber. Die wîle der mensche zît unde stat hât unde zal
self The while the man time and place has and number
unde meinunge, sô ist im gar unreht und got ist im
and intention so is to-him wholly wrong and God is to-him
verre unde vremde. Dar umbe sprichet unser herre ‘wer mîn
far and alien There for says our lord who my
junger wil werden, der muoz sieh selber lâzen’, als ob er
disciple will become he must him self leave as if he
sagte: nieman mac mîn wort hœren noch mîne lêre, er
said no-one may my word hear nor my teaching unless-he
enhabe danne sich selber gelâzen. Alle crêatûre in sich
have then him self left All creatures in them
selber sint niht. Dar umbe hân ich gesprochen: lâzent niht
self are nothing There for have I spoken leave nothing
unde nement ein volmaht wesen, dâ der wille reht ist.
and take a full-mighty being where the will right is
Der allen sînen willen hât gelâzen, dem smacket mîn lêre
Who all his will has left to-him tastes my teaching
unde hœret mîn wort. Ein meister sprichet: alle crêatûre
and hears my word A master says all creatures

nement ir wesen âne mitel, dar umbe hânt sie, daz sie
take their being without means there for have they that they
got minnet von nâtûre mê denne sich selber. Bekante der
God love by nature more than them self Should-know the
geist sîne blôze abegescheidenheit, er enmöhte sich ûf kein
spirit its bare detachment it could itself to no
dinc geneigen. Dar umbe sprichet man von disem heiligen
thing incline There for says one of this holy
bischove 'er hât ime wol gevallen in sînen tagen.'
bishop he has to-him well pleased in his days
Der sêle tac unde gotes tac hânt underscheit. Dâ diu sêle an
The soul's day and God's day have distinction Where the soul in
irem nâtiurlîchen tage ist, dâ bekennet si elliu dinc obe zît
her natural day is there knows she all things above time
unde stat, ir enist kein dinc weder verre noch nâhe. Dar umbe
and place to-her is no thing neither far nor near There for
hân ich gesprochen, daz alliu dinc glîch edel sîn in disem tage.
have I spoken that all things equally noble be in this day
Sprêchen wir, daz got die welt schöpfete gester oder morne,
Should-say we that God the world created yesterday or tomorrow
daz wêre ein tôrheit an uns. Got schöpfet die welt und elliu
that were a foolishness in us God creates the world and all
dinc in eime gegenwürtigen nû. Jâ diu zît, diu dâ vergangen
things in a present now Yea the time which there past
ist vor tûsent jâren, diu ist gote iezuo alsô gegenwürtic und
is before thousand years it is to-God now as present and
alse nâhe als diu zît, diu iezuo ist. Diu sêle, diu dâ stât
as near as the time which now is The soul which there stands
in eime gegenwürtigen nû, dâ gebirt der vater in sî sînen
in a present now there bears the father into her his
eingebornen sun, und in der selben geburt wirt diu sêle wider
only-begotten son and in the same birth becomes the soul again

in gote geborn. Daz ist ein geburt, alse dicke si wider geborn
in God born That is one birth as often she again born
wirt in got, sô gebirt der vater sînen eingebornen sun in sî.
becomes in God so bears the father his only-begotten son into her
Ich hân gesprochen von einer kraft in der sêle; an irem
I have spoken of a power in the soul in her
êrsten ûzbruche sô ennimt si niht got, als er guot ist, si
first outbreak so takes she not God as he good is she
ennimt in ouch niht als er wârheit ist: si gründet unde
takes him also not as he truth is she grounds and
suochet vort unde nimt got in sîner einunge und in sîner
seeks further and takes God in his oneness and in his
einœde, si nimt got in sîner wüestunge und in sînem
solitude she takes God in his wilderness and in his
eigenen grunde. Dar umbe enlât si ir niht genüegen, si
own ground There for lets she herself not suffice she
suochet für baz, waz daz sî, daz in sîner gotheit ist und
seeks on further what that be that in his godhead is and
in sînem eigentuome sîner eigenen nâtûre. Nû sprichet man,
in his property of-his own nature Now says one
daz kein eigentuom grœzer sî, denne daz drîe persône ein
that no property greater be than that three persons one
got sint. Dar nâch sprichet man, daz kein einunge grœzer
God are There after says one that no union greater
sî denne got unt diu sêle. Wenne der sêle ein kus beschiht
be than God and the soul When to-the soul a kiss happens
von der gotheit, sô stêt si in ganzer vollekomenheit und
from the godhead so stands she in whole perfection and
in sêlikeit, dâ wirt ein umbevanc von der einekeit in
in blessedness there becomes an embrace from the oneness in
dem êrsten berüeren. Dâ got die sêle berüeret hât unde
the first touching Where God the soul touched has and

geschaffen unschöpflich, dâ ist diu sêle als edel als got
created uncreatable there is the soul as noble as God
selber ist nâch der berüerunge gotes. Got berüeret sî nâch
self is after the touching of-God God touches her after
ime selber. Dâ got die crêatûre ane siht, dâ gît er ir ir
him self Where God the creature on looks there gives he to-her her
wesen; dâ diu crêatûre got ane siht, dâ nimt si ir wesen.
being where the creature God on looks there takes she her being
Diu sêle hât ein vernünftic bekentlich wesen, dâ von, swâ
The soul has a rational knowing being there from wherever
got ist, dâ ist diu sêle, unde swâ diu sêle ist, dâ ist got.
God is there is the soul and wherever the soul is there is God
Nû sprichet man von disem heiligen 'er ist gereht funden
Now says one of this saint he is just found
worden.' Daz ist gereht, daz dâ gelîch ist in lieb und in leit,
become That is just which there alike is in joy and in sorrow
in bitterkeit und in süezikeit, unt dem zemâle kein dinc
in bitterness and in sweetness and to-whom wholly no thing
wider ist, daz er sich eine vindet in der gerehtekeit. Gelîcheit
against is that he himself one finds in the justice Likeness
wirt geminnet. Minne minnet allewege daz gelîche, dar umbe
becomes loved Love loves always the like there for
sô minnet got den gerehten menschen ime selber gelîch. Daz
so loves God the just man to-him self like That
wir uns alsô inne vinden in den tagen und in der zît der
we ourselves so within find in the days and in the time of-the
vernüftekeit und in dem tage der wîsheit und in dem tage
reason and in the day of-the wisdom and in the day
der sêlikeit, des helf uns diu unzerteilte drîvaltekeit. Âmen.
of-the blessedness that help us the undivided trinity Amen

LXXXIV. Quasi stella matutina

"As the morning star in the midst of a mist, as the full moon in its days, as the shining sun, so he shone in God's temple": said of holy teachers, here Saint Dominic. Eckhart takes the master's saying that God is above being: being is only His forecourt, and He dwells in His temple, reason, knowing Himself. Reason is nobler than will, for will takes God clothed in goodness and reason takes Him bare. The angel knows itself in God's reason as a morning star in the mist. God's most proper name is word; the soul should be a by-word beside it, as near God as Venus to the sun, raised like the far moon above earthly things, and blessed where God is blessed.

Quasi stella matutina in medio nebulæ etc. (Eccles. L, 6.).
As star morning in midst of-mist etc. Ecclus. L 6
'Als ein morgensterne miten in dem nebel und als ein
As a morning-star in-the-midst in the mist and as a
voller mâne in sînen tagen und als ein widerschînendiu
full moon in his days and as a reflecting
sunne alsô hât dirre geliuhtet in dem tempe gotes. Disiu
sun so has this-one shone in the temple of-God These
wort leit man gemeinlîche zuo den heiligen götlîchen lêrêren,
words lays one commonly to the holy divine teachers
die mit ir tugentrîchem lebenne unde götlîcher kunst den
who with their virtue-rich life and divine art to-the
weltlîchen herzen, diu mit den crêatûren verhaftet in dem
worldly hearts which with the creatures bound in the
nebel unde gebruch oder vinsternüsse der unwizzenheit als
mist and lack or darkness of-the ignorance as
die blinden ûf dem wege zuo dem êwigen heile irre gênt,
the blind on the way to the eternal salvation astray go
geschinen unde geliuhtet hânt, als vor ûz dirre heiliger
shone and lit have as before all this holy
vater, des wir hiute gedenken, sant Dominicus genant, ein
father whom we today commemorate saint Dominic called an

ûfenthalter der kristenheit und ein stifter bredier ordens,
upholder of-the Christendom and a founder of-preachers order
den er, ze verkündenne daz gotes wort unde ze helfenne
which he to proclaim the God's word and to help
dem armen sünder, ane gevangen und ûf gesetzet hât.
the poor sinner on begun and up set has
Nû sprichet diu geschrift, er habe geliuhtet als ein
Now says the scripture he have shone as a
morgensterne in dem tempel gotes. Waz ist got unde waz ist
morning-star in the temple of-God What is God and what is
der tempel gotes? Vierundzweinzic meister kâmen zesamen unde
the temple of-God Twenty-four masters came together and
wolten sprechen, waz got wêre unde enmohten ez niht. Dar
would say what God were and could it not There
nâch kâmen sie wider ze rehter zît unde brâhte ir ieglîcher
after came they back at right time and brought of-them each
wider sînen spruch, der nim ich iezuo zwei oder drîe. Der
back his saying of-which take I now two or three The
ein sprach: got ist etwaz, gegen dem alliu wandelbêriu unde
one spoke God is something against which all changeable and
zîtlîchiu dinc niht sint, und allez daz wesen hât daz ist von
temporal things nothing are and all that being has that is from
im und ist gegen im kleine. Der ander sprach: got ist etwaz,
him and is against him small The second spoke God is something
daz dâ ist über wesen unde daz in im selber niemannes
that there is above being and that in him self of-no-one
bedarf unde des elliu dinc bedürfent. Der dritte sprach: got
needs and of-which all things need The third spoke God
ist ein vernünftikeit, diu dâ minnet ir selbes bekantnüsse.
is a reason that there loves her self's knowledge

Ich lâze daz êrste unt daz dritte unde spriche von dem
I leave the first and the third and speak of the
anderen, daz got etwaz ist, daz von nôt über wesen sîn
second that God something is that of necessity above being be
muoz. Waz wesen hât, zît oder stat, daz hœret ze gote niht,
must What being has time or place that belongs to God not
er ist über daz selbe; daz er ist in allen crêatûren, daz ist
he is above the same that he is in all creatures that is
er doch dar über; waz dâ in vil dingen ein ist, daz muoz
he yet there above what there in many things one is that must
von nôt über diu dinc sîn. Etlîche meister wolten, daz diu
of necessity above the things be Some masters would that the
sêle alleine in dem herzen wêre. Daz ist niht unt dâ hânt
soul alone in the heart were That is not and there have
grôze meister an geirret. Diu sêle ist ganz und ungeteilt
great masters on erred The soul is whole and undivided
alzemâle in dem fuoze und in dem ougen. Nim ich ein
wholly in the foot and in the eye (If)-take I a
stücke von der zît, sô enist ez weder der tac hiute noch der
piece of the time so is it neither the day today nor the
tac gester. Nim ich aber nû, daz begrîfet in sich alle zît.
day yesterday (If)-take I however now that grasps into itself all time
Daz nû, dâ got die welt inne machte, daz ist alse nâhe
The now where God the world in made that is as near
dirre zît, als daz nû, dâ ich iezuo inne spriche, unde der
this time as the now where I now in speak and the
jungeste tac ist alse nâhe disem nû, alse der tac gester was.
last day is as near to-this now as the day yesterday was
Ein meister sprichet: got ist etwaz, daz dâ würket in
A master says God is something that there works in
êwikeit ungeteilet in ime selber, daz niemannes hilfe noch
eternity undivided in him self that of-no-one's help nor

gezöuwes bedarf und in ime selber blîbende ist, daz nihtes
tool needs and in him self remaining is that of-nothing
bedarf unde des alliu dinc bedürfent unde dâ alliu dinc
needs and of-which all things need and where all things
în kriegent als in ir lezest ende. Diz ende enhât keine
in strive as into their last end This end has no
wîse, ez entwehset der wîse unde gêt in die breite. Sant
manner it outgrows the manner and goes into the breadth Saint
Bernhart sprichet: got minnen daz ist wîse âne wîse.
Bernard says God love that is manner without manner
Ein arzât, der einen siechen gesunt wil machen, der hât
A physician who a sick-man healthy will make he has
niht wîse der gesuntheit, wie gesunt er den siechen welle
no manner of-the health how healthy he the sick-man will
machen: er hât wol wîse, wâ mite er in gesunt welle
make he has well manner where with he him healthy will
machen, aber wie gesunt er in welle machen, daz ist âne
make but how healthy he him will make that is without
wîse, wan er wil in gesunt machen alse verre er iemer
manner for he will him healthy make as far he ever
mac. Wie süllen wir got minnen? daz ist âne wîse. Ein
may How shall we God love that is without manner An
ieglich dinc würket in wesen, dekein dinc mac würken über
every thing works in being no thing may work above
sîn wesen. Daz fiur enmac niht würken denne in dem holze.
its being The fire may not work but in the wood
Got würket über wesen in der wîte, dâ er sich geregen
God works above being in the breadth where he himself stir
mac, er würket in unwesen wesen; ê danne wesen wêre,
may he works in unbeing being before than being were
dô worhte got, er worhte, dô niht wesen enwas. Grôze
then worked God he worked when no being was Great

meister sprechent, got sî ein lûter wesen; er ist hôch über
masters say God be a pure being he is high above
wesen, als der oberste engel ist über eine muggen. Und ich
being as the highest angel is above a gnat And I
spriche, ez ist als unreht, daz ich got heize ein wesen, als
say it is as wrong that I God call a being as
ob ich die sunne hieze bleich oder swarz. Got enist weder
if I the sun called pale or black God is neither
diz noch daz. Unde sprichet ein heilige: swer dâ wênet,
this nor that And says a saint whoever there supposes
daz er got bekant habe, unde bekante er iht, sô bekante
that he God known have and should-know he anything so would-know
er iht unde bekante got niht. Daz ich aber gesprochen
he something and would-know God not That I however spoken
habe, got sî niht ein wesen unde sî über wesen, hie mit
have God be not a being and be above being here with
enhabe ich im niht wesen abe gesprochen, sunder ich habe
have I to-him not being off spoken but I have
ez in ime gewirdiget unde gehœhet. Nim ich kupfer in
it in him dignified and exalted (If)-take I copper in
dem golde, sô ist ez dâ und ist dâ in einer hœhern wîse,
the gold so is it there and is there in a higher manner
danne ez ist an im selber. Sant Augustînus sprichet: got
than it is in it self Saint Augustine says God
ist wîse âne wîse, güete âne güete, gewalt âne gewalt.
is manner without manner goodness without goodness might without might
Kleine meister lesent in der schuole, daz alliu wesen sîn
Small masters read in the school that all beings be
geteilt in zwô wîse unde die selben sprechent sie gote
divided into two manners and the same say they from-God
zemâle abe. Dirre wîse berüeret got keine und er enbirt
wholly off Of-these manners touches God none and he lacks

ir ouch keine. Diu êrste, diu des wesens aller meist hât,
of-them also none The first which of-the being all most has
dâ alliu dinc wesen inne nement, daz ist substancie, unde
where all things being in take that is substance and
daz leste, daz des wesens aller minnest treit, daz heizet
the last which of-the being all least bears that is-called
relatio, daz ist gelîch in gote dem aller grœsten, daz des
relation that is alike in God to-the all greatest which of-the
wesens aller meist hât; sie habent ein gelîch bilde in gote.
being all most has they have a like image in God
In gote sint aller dinge bilde gelîch; aber sie sint ungelîch
In God are of-all things images alike but they are unlike
der dinge bilde. Der hœhste engel unde diu sêle unt diu
the things' images The highest angel and the soul and the
mugge hânt ein gelîch bilde in gote. Got ist niht wesen
gnat have a like image in God God is not being
noch güete. Güete klebet an wesenne und ist niht breiter
nor goodness Goodness cleaves to being and is not broader
dan wesen, wan wêre niht wesen, sô enwêre niht güete, unde
than being for were not being so were not goodness and
wesen ist noch lûterr denne güete. In gote ist weder güete
being is still purer than goodness In God is neither goodness
noch bezzerz noch allerbestez. Wer sprichet, daz got guot
nor better nor all-best Who says that God good
wêre, der tête im als unrehte, als der die sunnen swarz
were he would-do to-him as wrong as he-who the sun black
hieze. Nû sprichet doch got: nieman ist guot dan alleine got.
called Now says yet God no-one is good but alone God
Waz ist guot? Daz sich gemeinet. Den heizen wir einen
What is good That-which itself shares Him call we a
guoten menschen, der gemeine unde nütze ist. Dar umbe
good man who sharing and useful is There for

sprichet ein heidenischer meister, ein einsidel sî weder guot
says a heathen master a hermit be neither good
noch bœse (nâch dem sinne), wan er niht gemeine noch
nor evil after the sense for he not sharing nor
den liuten nütze ist. Got ist daz aller gemeineste, dekein
to-the people useful is God is the all most-sharing no
dinc gemeinet sich von dem sînen, wan alle crêatûre von in
thing shares itself from the its-own for all creatures from them
selber niht ensint. Swaz sie gemeinent, daz habent sie von
selves not are Whatever they share that have they from
eime anderen. Sie gebent sich ouch niht selbe. Diu sunne
an other They give themselves also not self The sun
gît iren schîn unde blîbet doch dâ stênde, daz fiur gît sîne
gives her shine and remains yet there standing the fire gives its
hitze unde belîbet doch fiur; aber got gemeinet daz sîne, wan
heat and remains yet fire but God shares the his-own for
er von im selber ist, daz er ist, und in allen den gâben, die
he from him self is what he is and in all the gifts which
er gît, sô gibet er sich selber ie zem êrsten. Er gît sich
he gives so gives he him self ever at-the first He gives himself
got als er ist in allen sînen gâben, alse verre ez an im ist,
God as he is in all his gifts as far it on him is
der in enpfâhen möhte. Sant Jacob sprichet ‘alle guote gâben
who him receive might Saint James says all good gifts
sint von oben her abe fliezende von dem vater der liehte.’
are from above hither down flowing from the father of-the lights
Als wir got nemen in dem wesenne, sô nemen wir in in
When we God take in the being so take we him in
sîner vorburg, dâ er inne wonet, wan wesen ist in gote
his forecourt where he in dwells for being is in God
unde er wonet in sîner vorburg, und ist sîn vorburg dâ
and he dwells in his forecourt and is his forecourt where

er inne wonet. Wâ ist er dan in sînem tempel (diz ist
he in dwells Where is he then in his temple this is
vernünftekeit)? Dâ er heilig schînet, als der ander meister
reason There he holy shines as the other master
sprach, daz got ist ein vernunft, diu dâ lebet in sîner
spoke that God is a reason which there lives in his
bekantnüsse alleine, in im selber alleine blîbende, dâ in nie
knowledge alone in him self alone remaining where him never
niht beruorte, wan er alleine dâ ist in sîner stilheit. Got
anything touched for he alone there is in his stillness God
in sîn selbes bekantnüsse bekennet sich selber in sich selber.
in his self's knowledge knows him self in him self
Nû nemen wir in der sêle, diu ein tröpfelîn hât vernünftekeit,
Now take we in the soul which a little-drop has of-reason
ein fünklîn, ein zwîc, diu hât krefte, die dâ würkent in dem
a little-spark a twig she has powers which there work in the
lîbe. Ein kraft ist, dâ von der mensche töuwet, diu würket
body A power is there from the man digests which works
mê in der naht dan in dem tage, dâ von der mensche zuo
more in the night than in the day there from the man to
nimt unde wehset. Diu sêle hât eine kraft in den ougen, dâ
takes and grows The soul has a power in the eyes there
von ist daz ouge sô subtil unde sô kleinlich unde sô verwenet,
from is the eye so subtle and so delicate and so spoiled
daz ez diu dinc niht nimet in der grobheit, alse sie an in
that it the things not takes in the coarseness as they in them
selber sint: sie müezent vor hin gebiutelt werden unde klein
selves are they must before hence sifted become and small
gemachet in dem lufte und in dem liehte; daz ist dâ von,
made in the air and in the light that is there from
daz ez die sêle bî im hât. Ein ander kraft ist in der sêle dâ
that it the soul by it has An other power is in the soul there

mite si gedenket. Disiu kraft bildet in sich diu dinc, diu
with she thinks This power images into itself the things which
niht gegenwürtic sint, daz ich diu dinc alsô wol bekenne, als
not present are that I the things as well know as
ob ich sie sêhe mit den ougen, unde noch baz. Ich bekenne
if I them saw with the eyes and still better I know
wol eine rôsen in dem winter, unde mit dirre kraft würket
well a rose in the winter and with this power works
diu sêle in unwesen unde volget gote, der in unwesen würket.
the soul in unbeing and follows God who in unbeing works
Ein heidenischer meister sprichet: diu sêle, diu got minnet,
A heathen master says the soul which God loves
diu nimet in under dem velle der güete (noch sint ez allez
she takes him under the hide of-the goodness still are it all
heidenischer meister wort, diu hie vor gesprochen sint, die
heathen masters' words which here before spoken are who
niht bekanten denne in eime nâtiurlîchen liehte, noch enbin
not knew but in a natural light still am
ich nit komen zuo der heiligen lêrêre worten, die dâ bekanten
I not come to the holy teachers' words who there knew
in eime vil hœhern liehte); er sprichet, daz diu sêle, diu got
in a much higher light he says that the soul which God
minnet, diu nimet in under dem velle der güete. Vernünftekeit
loves she takes him under the hide of-the goodness Reason
ziuhet gote diz vel der güete abe unde nimet in blôz, dâ er
draws from-God this hide of-the goodness off and takes him bare where he
entkleidet ist von güete unde von wesen unde von allen namen.
unclothed is of goodness and of being and of all names
Ich sprach in der schuole, daz vernünftekeit edeler wêre
I spoke in the school that reason nobler were
danne wille, unde hœrent doch beide in diz lieht. Dô
than will and belong yet both into this light Then

sprach ein meister in einer andern schuole, wille wêre edeler
spoke a master in an other school will were nobler
danne vernünftekeit, wan wille nimet diu dinc, als sie in
than reason for will takes the things as they in
in selber sint, unde vernünftekeit nimt diu dinc, als sie in
them selves are and reason takes the things as they in
ir sint. Daz ist wâr. Ein ouge ist edeler in ime selber dan
her are That is true An eye is nobler in it self than
ein ouge, daz an eine want gemâlet wêre. Ich spriche aber,
an eye that on a wall painted were I say however
daz vernünftekeit edeler ist dan wille. Wille nimt got under
that reason nobler is than will Will takes God under
dem kleide der güete. Vernünftekeit nimt got blôz, als er
the clothing of-the goodness Reason takes God bare as he
entkleidet ist von güete unde von wesen. Güete ist ein kleit,
unclothed is of goodness and of being Goodness is a clothing
dâ got under verborgen ist, unde wille nimt got under dem
where God under hidden is and will takes God under the
kleide der güete. Wêre güete an gote niht, mîn wille wölte
clothing of-the goodness Were goodness in God not my will would
sîn niht. Der einen künic kleiden wolte an dem tage, als
of-him not Who a king clothe would on the day when
man in ze künig machte, unde kleidete in in grâwiu kleit,
one him to king made and clothed him in gray clothes
der hête in niht wol gekleidet. Dâ von enbin ich niht
he would-have him not well clothed There from am I not
sêlic, daz got guot ist. Ich enwil des niemer begern, daz
blessed that God good is I will of-it never desire that
mich got sêlic mache von sîner güete, wan er enmöhte ez
me God blessed make by his goodness for he could it
niht getuon. Dâ von bin ich alleine sêlic, daz got vernünftic
not do There from am I alone blessed that God rational

ist und ich daz bekenne. Ein meister sprichet: vernünftekeit
is and I that know A master says reason
gotes ist, dâ des engels wesen zemâle ane hanget.
of-God is where the angel's being wholly on hangs
Man frâget, wâ daz wesen des bildes aller eigenlîchest sî:
One asks where the being of-the image all most-properly be
in dem spiegel oder in dem, von dem ez ûz gêt? Daz bilde
in the mirror or in that from which it out goes The image
ist in mir, von mir, zuo mir. Die wîle der spiegel gelîch
is in me from me to me The while the mirror even
stêt gegen mînem antlite, sô ist mîn bilde dâ inne; viele
stands against my face so is my image there in should-fall
der spiegel, sô zergienge ouch daz bilde. Des engels wesen
the mirror so would-perish also the image The angel's being
hanget dar an, daz im götlich vernünftekeit gegenwürtic
hangs there on that to-him divine reason present
ist, dar inne er sich bekennet als ein morgensterne miten
is there in he himself knows as a morning-star in-the-midst
in dem nebel. Ich meine allez diz wörtelîn quasi, daz heizet
in the mist I mean all this little-word quasi that is-called
als, unde diz ist, daz ich in allen mînen bredien meine.
as and this is what I in all my sermons mean
Daz heizent diu kint in der schuole ein bîwort.
That call the children in the school a by-word
Daz aller eigenlîchest, daz man von gote gesprechen mac,
The all most-proper that one of God speak may
ist wort unde wârheit. Got nante sich selber ein wort. Sant
is word and truth God named him self a word Saint
Johannes sprach 'in dem anevange was daz wort', unde meinet,
John spoke in the beginning was the word and means
daz man bî dem worte sî ein bîwort. Als der frîe sterne Vênus,
that one by the word be a by-word As the free star Venus

der frîtac genennet wirt, der hât manigen namen. Als
after-whom Friday named becomes he has many names When
er vor der sunnen gêt und er ê ûf gêt dan diu sunne, sô
he before the sun goes and he before up goes than the sun so
heizet er ein morgensterne; als er aber der sunnen nâch gêt,
is-called he a morning-star when he however the sun after goes
alsô daz diu sunne ê under gêt, sô heizet er ein âbentsterne.
so that the sun before under goes so is-called he an evening-star
Etwenne sô loufet er ob der sunnen, etwenne bî niden der
Sometimes so runs he above the sun sometimes by beneath the
sunnen. Vor allen sternen ist er alwege gelîch nâhe der sunnen,
sun Before all stars is he always equally near the sun
er enkumt ir niemer verrer, unde bediutet oder meinet, daz
he comes from-her never farther and signifies or means that
ein mensche, der hie zuo komen wil, der sol gote alle zît bî
a man who here to come will he shall to-God all time by
unde gegenwürtic sîn, alsô daz in gote niht müge geverren
and present be so that him from-God not may far-remove
weder gelücke noch ungelücke noch keinerleie crêatûre.
neither fortune nor misfortune nor any-kind creature
Er sprichet ouch ‘als ein voller mâne in sînen tagen.’ Der
He says also as a full moon in his days The
mâne hât hêrschaft über fiuhte nâtûre. Niemer ist der mâne
moon has lordship over moist nature Never is the moon
der sunnen sô nâhe denne sô er vol ist und als er
to-the sun so near as when he full is and when he
sîn lieht von der sunnen zem êrsten nimt, unde dâ von,
his light from the sun at-the first takes and there from
daz er der erden nêher ist denne kein sterne, sô hât er
that he to-the earth nearer is than any star so has he
zwêne schaden: daz er bleich unde vleckeht ist unde daz
two harms that he pale and spotted is and that

er sîn lieht verliuret. Niemer ist er sô kreftic denne sô
he his light loses Never is he so strong as when
er der erden aller verrest ist, denne sô wirfet er daz
he from-the earth all farthest is then so casts he the
mer aller verrest ûz; ie mêr er abe nimt, ie minner er
sea all farthest out ever more he off takes ever less he
ez ûz gewerfen mac. Ie mêr diu sêle ûf erhaben ist von
it out cast may Ever more the soul up raised is from
irdeschen dingen, ie kreftiger si ist. Der niht denne die
earthly things ever stronger she is Who nothing but the
crêatûre bekante, der bedörfte niemer gedenken ûf dekeine
creatures knew he would-need never think on any
bredie. Ein ieglîchiu crêatûre ist vol gotes und ist ein
sermon An every creature is full of-God and is a
buoch. Der mensche, der hie zuo komen wil, dâ von hie
book The man who here to come will there of here
vor gesprochen ist (hie gêt elliu diu rede zemâle ûf),
before spoken is here goes all the discourse wholly on
der sol sîn als ein morgensterne in eim gotgegenwürtigen
he shall be as a morning-star in a God-present
menschen und im iemer bî unde gelîch nâhe und erhaben
man and to-him ever by and equally near and raised
über elliu irdeschiu dinc unde bî dem worte sîn ein bîwort,
above all earthly things and by the word be a by-word
daz ist der engel unde der mensche und alle crêatûren.
that is the angel and the man and all creatures
Ez ist ein ander wort bedâht unde für brâht, daz in mich
It is an other word thought and forth brought that into me
bilde. Noch ist ein ander wort, daz dâ ist unfürbrâht und
images Still is an other word which there is unbrought-forth and
unbedâht, daz niemer ûz kumet, sunder ez ist êweclich in
unthought which never out comes but it is eternally in

dem, der ez sprichet; ez ist iemer mê in eim ûzgange in
him who it speaks it is ever more in an out-going in
dem vater, der ez sprichet, und inblîbende. Vernünftekeit ist
the father who it speaks and in-remaining Reason is
allez înwert würkende, eigenlîcher und eigenlîcher, ie mêr
always inward working more-properly and more-properly ever more
unde ie kreftiger ez înwert würkende ist. In dirre würkunge
and ever stronger it inward working is In this working
ist got sêlic. Hie sol diu sêle sîn ein bîwort unde sol ir
is God blessed Here shall the soul be a by-word and shall her
sêlekeit nemen, dâ gotes sêlekeit an lît. Alsô enist ez niht
blessedness take where God's blessedness on lies So is it not
an lîplîchen dingen: ie kreftiger diu sint, ie mêr sie ûzwert
in bodily things ever stronger they are ever more they outward
würkent; unde diu vernunft, ie kreftiger unde kleinlîcher si
work and the reason ever stronger and subtler she
ist, ie mêr daz vereinet wirt, daz si bekennet, unde mê
is ever more that united becomes which she knows and more
ein mit ir wirt. Gotes sêlekeit lît an der înwertwürkunge
one with her becomes God's blessedness lies in the inward-working
der vernünftekeit, dâ daz wort inneblîbende ist, dâ sol
of-the reason where the word in-remaining is there shall
diu sêle sîn ein bîwort und mit gote würken ein werc,
the soul be a by-word and with God work one work
in der inswebenden bekantnüsse ze nemenne ir sêlekeit in
in the in-hovering knowledge to take her blessedness in
dem selben, dâ got sêlic ist. Daz wir alle zît bî disem
the same where God blessed is That we all time by this
worte müezen sîn ein bîwort, des helfe uns der vater unt
word may be a by-word that help us the father and
diz selbe wort unt der heilig geist. Âmen.
this same word and the holy spirit Amen

LXXXVII. Beati pauperes spiritu

Blessed are the poor in spirit. A poor man wills nothing, knows nothing, and has nothing. He wills nothing, not even to fulfill God's dearest will, but is as free as when he was not, in his first cause, where he had no God and willed himself. He knows nothing, not even what God works in him, and has no place in himself for God to work in, so that God is Himself the place of His work. In the breakthrough, nobler than the outflowing, he is what he was, an unmoved cause that moves all things.

Beati pauperes spiritu, quia ipsorum est regnum cœlorum
Blessed the-poor in-spirit for theirs is kingdom of-heavens
(Matth. V, 3.). Diu sêlikeit tet ûf irn munt der wîsheit
Matt. V 3 The blessedness did up its mouth of-the wisdom
unde sprach 'sêlic sint die armen des geistes, daz himelrîche
and spoke blessed are the poor of-the spirit the heaven
ist ir.' Alle engel und alle heiligen und allez, daz ie
is theirs All angels and all saints and all that ever
geborn wart, daz muoz swîgen, wenne disiu êwige wîsheit
born was that must be-silent when this eternal wisdom
des vaters sprichet; wan alliu diu wîsheit der engele und
of-the father speaks for all the wisdom of-the angels and
aller crêatûren daz ist ein lûter niht vor der wîsheit gotes,
of-all creatures that is a pure nothing before the wisdom of-God
diu gruntlôs ist. Disiu wîsheit hât gesprochen, daz die
which groundless is This wisdom has spoken that the
armen sêlic sîn. Nû ist zweierhande armuot. Diu ein ist
poor blessed be Now is twofold poverty The one is
ein ûzwendigiu armuot unde diu ist guot und ist sêre ze
an outward poverty and that is good and is greatly to
lobenne an dem menschen, der ez mit willen tuot durch die
praise in the man who it with will does for the
minne unsers herren Jêsû Kristî, wan er si selber geüebet
love of-our lord Jesus Christ for he it self practiced

hât ûf ertrîche. Von dirre armuot wil ich niht mê sprechen.
has on earth Of this poverty will I not more speak
Mêr: ez ist noch ein ander armuot, ein innewendigiu
But there is yet an other poverty an inward
armuot, von der diz wort unsers herren verstanden wirt, sô
poverty by which this word of-our lord understood becomes when
er sprichet 'sêlic sint die armen des geistes oder von geiste.'
he says blessed are the poor of-the spirit or in spirit
Nû bit ich iuch, daz ir alsô sîent, daz ir alsô verstandent
Now pray I you that you so be that you so understand
dise rede, wan ich sage iu in der êwigen wârheit, ir
this discourse for I say to-you in the eternal truth unless-you
ensîent denne gelîch dirre wârheit, von der wir nû sprechen,
be then like to-this truth of which we now speak
sô mügent ir mich niht verstên. Etlîche liute hânt mich
so may you me not understand Some people have me
gefrâget, waz armuot sî? Har zuo wellen wir antwürten.
asked what poverty be Here to will we answer
Bischof Albreht sprichet, daz diz sî ein arm mensche,
Bishop Albert says that this be a poor man
der niht habe genüegede von allen dingen, diu got ie
who not have satisfaction from all things which God ever
geschuof, und diz ist wol gesprochen. Aber wir sprechen
created and this is well spoken But we say
noch baz unde nemen armuot in einer hœhern wîse. Daz
yet better and take poverty in a higher manner That
ist ein armer mensche, der niht enwil und niht enweiz
is a poor man who nothing wills and nothing knows
unde niht enhât. Von disen drin puncten wil ich sprechen.
and nothing has Of these three points will I speak

Zem êrsten sô heizet daz ein arm mensche, der niht
At-the first so is-called that a poor man who nothing
enwil. Disen sin verstênt etlîche liute niht wol; daz sint die
wills This sense understand some people not well those are the
liute, die sich behaltent mit eigenschaft in penitencie und
people who themselves keep with possessiveness in penance and
ûzwendiger üebunge (daz die liute für grôz geahtet sint, des
outward exercise that the people for great esteemed are of-that
erbarme got!) unde sie bekennent doch sô wênic der götlîchen
have-mercy God and they know yet so little of-the divine
wârheit. Dise menschen heizent heilig von den ûzwendigen
truth These men are-called holy from the outward
bilden, aber von innen sint sie esel, wan sie verstênt niht
images but from within are they asses for they understand not
den underscheit götlîcher wârheit. Dise menschen sprechent,
the distinction of-divine truth These men say
daz sî ein arm mensche, der niht enwil. Daz bewîsent sie
that be a poor man who nothing wills That show they
alsô, daz der mensche alsô sî, daz er niemer mê erfülle sînen
thus that the man so be that he never more fulfill his
willen an dekeinen dingen, mêr: daz er dar nâch stellen sol,
will in any things but that he there after strive shall
daz er volge dem aller liebsten willen gotes. Dise menschen
that he follow the all dearest will of-God These men
sint niht übel dar an, wan ir meinunge ist guot; har umbe
are not evil there in for their intention is good here for
süllen wir sie loben: got behalte sie unde sîn barmeherzikeit.
shall we them praise God keep them and his mercy
Aber ich spriche bî guoter wârheit, daz dise menschen niht
But I say by good truth that these men not
sint arme menschen noch armen menschen gelîch. Sie sint
are poor men nor to-poor men like They are

grôz geahtet in der liute ougen, die sich niht bezzers
great esteemed in the people's eyes who themselves not better
verstênt. Doch spriche ich, daz sie esel sint, die niht
understand Yet say I that they asses are who not
verstênt götlîcher wârheit. Mit guoten meinungen mügent
understand of-divine truth With good intentions may
sie vil lîhte haben daz himelrîche, aber von dirre armuot,
they very likely have the heaven but of this poverty
von der ich iezuo sagen wil, dâ wizzent sie nihtes von.
of which I now speak will there know they nothing of
Der mich nû frâgete, waz denne sî ein arm mensche, daz niht
Who me now asked what then be a poor man that nothing
enwil, dar zuo antwürte ich unde spriche alsô. Alsô lange daz
wills there to answer I and say thus As long as
der mensche hât daz, daz in sînem willen ist unde daz sîn
the man has that that in his will is and that his
wille ist, daz er wil erfüllen den allerliebesten willen gotes, der
will is that he will fulfill the all-dearest will of-God the
mensche hât niht armuot, von der wir sprechen wellen, wan
man has not poverty of which we speak will for
dirre mensche hât einen willen, mit dem er genuoc wil sîn dem
this man has a will with which he enough will be to-the
willen gotes, unde daz enist niht reht. Wan sol der mensche
will of-God and that is not right For (if)-shall the man
wârlîche arm sîn, sô sol er sînes geschaffenen willen alsô ledic
truly poor be so shall he of-his created will as free
sîn, als er was dô er niht enwas. Und ich sage iu bî der
be as he was when he not was And I say to-you by the
êwigen wârheit, als lange ir willen hânt ze erfüllende den
eternal truth as long you will have to fulfill the
willen gotes und iht begerunge hânt der êwikeit unde gotes,
will of-God and any desire have for-the eternity and God

alsô lange sint ir niht rehte arm; wan daz ist ein arm mensche,
so long are you not rightly poor for that is a poor man
der niht enwil noch niht bekennet noch niht begert.
who nothing wills nor anything knows nor anything desires
Dô ich stuont in mîner êrsten ursache, dô enhâte ich keinen
When I stood in my first cause then had I no
got und was ich mîn selbes; ich enwolte niht, ich engerte
God and was I of-my self I willed nothing I desired
niht, wan ich was ein ledic sîn und ein bekenner mîn selbes
nothing for I was a free being and a knower of-my self
nâch götlîcher wârheit; dô wolte ich mich selber unde wolte
after divine truth then willed I me self and willed
kein ander dinc; daz ich wolte daz was ich, unt daz ich
no other thing what I willed that was I and what I
was daz wolte ich unde hie stuont ich ledic gotes und aller
was that willed I and here stood I free of-God and of-all
dinge. Aber dô ich entgienc mînem frîen willen und enpfienc
things But when I went-out from-my free will and received
mîn geschaffen wesen, dô hâte ich einen got; wan ê die
my created being then had I a God for before the
crêatûren wâren, dô was got niht got: er was daz er was. Dô
creatures were then was God not God he was what he was When
die crêatûren wurden unde aneviengen ir geschaffen wesen,
the creatures became and began their created being
dô was got niht in im selber got, sunder in den crêatûren
then was God not in him self God but in the creatures
was er got. Nû sprechen wir, daz got nâch disem, daz er
was he God Now say we that God after this that he
got ist, sô enist er niht ein volmahte ende der crêatûre und
God is so is he not a perfect end of-the creature and
alsô grôze rîcheit, sô dâ hât diu minste crêatûre in gote.
so great richness as there has the least creature in God

Und wêre daz, daz ein fliege vernunft hête unde möhte
And were that that a fly reason had and might
vernünfteclîche suochen daz êwige abegründe götlîches wesens,
rationally seek the eternal abyss of-divine being
ûz dem si komen ist, sô sprêchen wir, daz got mit allem
out-of which it come is so say we that God with all
dem, daz got ist, möhte niht erfüllen noch genuoc tuon der
that which God is might not fulfill nor enough do to-the
fliegen. Hier umbe sô biten wir, daz wir gotes ledic werden,
fly Here for so pray we that we of-God free become
unde nemen die wârheit unde gebrûchen der êwikeit, dâ die
and take the truth and enjoy the eternity where the
obersten engel unde die sêlen gelîch sint an dem, dâ ich
highest angels and the souls alike are in that where I
stuont unde wolte daz ich was unde was daz ich wolte. Alsô
stood and willed what I was and was what I willed So
sol der mensche arm sîn von willen und alsô lützel wellen
shall the man poor be of will and as little will
unde begern, als er wolte unde begerte, dô er niht enwas.
and desire as he willed and desired when he not was
Und in dirre wîse ist der mensche arm, der niht enwil.
And in this manner is the man poor who nothing wills
Zem andern ist daz ein arm mensche, der niht enweiz. Wir
At-the second is that a poor man who nothing knows We
haben etwenne gesprochen, daz der mensche alsô solte leben
have sometimes spoken that the man so should live
als er niht enlebte, weder im selber noch der wârheit
as he not lived neither to-him self nor to-the truth
noch gote. Aber iezuo sprechen wir anders unde wellen mê
nor to-God But now say we otherwise and will more
sprechen, daz der mensche, der diz armüete haben sol, der
say that the man who this poverty have shall he

sol haben allez, daz er was dô er niht enlebte, in keiner
shall have all that he was when he not lived in any
wîse weder ime noch der wârheit noch gote, mêr: er sol
manner neither to-him nor to-the truth nor to-God but he shall
alsô quit unde ledic sîn alles wizzennes, alse niht bekennennes
so quit and free be of-all knowing that no knowing
gotes in im lebende ist; wan dô der mensche stuont in der
of-God in him living is for when the man stood in the
êwigen art gotes, dô lebte in ime niht ein anderz: waz dâ
eternal kind of-God then lived in him not an other what there
lebte, daz was er selbe. Alsô sprechen wir, daz der mensche
lived that was he self So say we that the man
alsô ledic sol sîn sînes eigenen wizzennes, als er tete dô er
so free shall be of-his own knowing as he did when he
niht enwas, unde lâze got würken, waz er welle, unde stande
not was and let God work what he will and stand
der mensche ledic, als dô er von gote kam. Nû ist ein
the man free as when he from God came Now is a
frâge, wâ ane sêlikeit aller meist lige? Etlîche meister hânt
question where in blessedness all most lie Some masters have
gesprochen, daz si lige an der minne. Ander sprechent, si
spoken that it lie in the love Others say it
lige an bekantnüsse und an minne, unde sprechent für baz.
lie in knowledge and in love and say on further
Aber wir sprechen, daz si niht lige an bekantnüsse noch
But we say that it not lie in knowledge nor
an minne, sunder ein dinc ist in der sêle, von dem fliuzet
in love but a thing is in the soul from which flows
bekantnüsse unde minne, daz bekennet selbe niht noch
knowledge and love that knows self not nor
minnet niht alsô als die krefte der sêle. Der diz bekennet,
loves not so as the powers of-the soul Who this knows

der bekennet, wâ ane sêlikeit lige. Diz hât weder vor noch
he knows where in blessedness lie This has neither before nor
nâch und ez ist niht wartende keines zuokomenden dinges,
after and it is not awaiting any coming thing
wan diz mac weder gewinnen noch verlieren. Hier umbe
for this may neither gain nor lose Here for
sô ist ez beroubet, daz ez niht enweiz in im ze würkenne;
so is it bereft that it not knows in itself to work
mêr: ez ist selbe daz selbe, daz sîn selbes gebrûchet nâch
but it is self the same that its self enjoys after
der wîse gotes. Alsô spriche ich, daz der mensche sol quit
the manner of-God So say I that the man shall quit
unde ledic stân, daz er niht wizze noch bekenne, waz got
and free stand that he not know nor perceive what God
in ime würke, und alsô mac der mensche armuot besitzen.
in him work and so may the man poverty possess
Die meister sprechent, got der sî wesen und ein vernünftic
The masters say God he be being and a rational
wesen unde bekenne elliu dinc. Aber ich spriche: got ist
being and know all things But I say God is
weder wesen noch vernunft noch bekennet niht diz noch
neither being nor reason nor knows not this nor
daz. Hier umbe ist got ledic aller dinge und hier umbe ist
that Here for is God free of-all things and here for is
er alliu dinc. Der nû arm sol sîn des geistes, der muoz
he all things Who now poor shall be of-the spirit he must
arm sîn alles sînes eigenen wizzens, als der dâ niht
poor be of-all his own knowing as he-who there nothing
enweiz noch kein dinc weder got noch crêatûre noch sich
knows nor any thing neither God nor creature nor him
selber. Hier umbe sô ist ez niht, daz der mensche begerende
self Here for so is it not that the man desiring

sî, daz er müge wizzen noch bekennen den wec gotes. In
be that he may know nor perceive the way of-God In
dirre wîse mac der mensche arm sîn sînes eigenen wizzens.
this manner may the man poor be of-his own knowing
Zem dritten mâle sô ist daz ein arm mensche, der niht enhât.
At-the third time so is that a poor man who nothing has
Vil menschen hânt gesprochen, daz sî volmehtekeit, daz man
Many men have spoken that be perfection that one
der lîplîchen dinge von ertrîche niht enhât, unde diz ist wol
of-the bodily things of earth nothing has and this is well
wâr in eime sinne, der ez mit willen tuot. Aber diz ist niht
true in one sense who it with will does But this is not
der sin, den ich meine. Ich hân hie vor gesprochen, daz sî ein
the sense which I mean I have here before spoken that be a
arm mensche, der niht wil erfüllen den willen gotes, sunder
poor man who not will fulfill the will of-God but
daz der mensche alsô lebe, daz er alsô ledic sî sîns eigenen
that the man so live that he so free be of-his own
willen unde des willen gotes, als er was, dô er niht enwas.
will and of-the will of-God as he was when be not was
Von dirre armuot sprechen wir, daz si ist diu hœhste armuot.
Of this poverty say we that it is the highest poverty
Zem andern mâle sprechen wir, daz daz sî ein arm mensche,
At-the second time say we that that be a poor man
der niht enweiz in ime diu werc gotes. Der sô ledic stêt ze
who not knows in him the works of-God Who so free stands to
wizzen unde ze bekennen, als got ledic stât aller dinge, daz ist
know and to perceive as God free stands of-all things that is
diu klârest armuot. Aber diu dritte armuot diu ist diu nêhste,
the clearest poverty But the third poverty that is the nearest
von der ich wil sagen, daz ist, daz der mensche niht enhât.
of which I will say that is that the man nothing has

Nû merkent hie mit ernste, ich hân ez ofte gesprochen unde
Now mark here with earnest I have it often spoken and
sprechent ez ouch grôze meister, daz der mensche alsô ledic
say it also great masters that the man so free
sol sîn aller dinge unde aller werke, beide innerlich und
shall be of-all things and of-all works both inward and
ûzerlich, alsô daz er möhte sîn ein eigen stat gotes, dâ got
outward so that he might be an own place of-God where God
inne möhte würken. Nû sagen wir anders. Ist daz sache,
in might work Now say we otherwise (If)-is that the-case
daz der mensche aller dinge ledic stât, aller crêatûren unde
that the man of-all things free stands of-all creatures and
sîn selbes unde gotes, und ist noch daz in ime alsô, daz
of-his self and of-God and is yet that in him so that
got stat vinde in ime ze würkenne, sô sprechen wir: alsô
God place find in him to work so say we as
lange daz ist in dem menschen, sô ist der mensche niht arm
long that is in the man so is the man not poor
in der nêhsten armuot, wan got der ist daz niht meinende
in the nearest poverty for God he is that not intending
in sînen werken, daz der mensche habe eine stat in ime,
in his works that the man have a place in him
dâ got inne müge würken, wan daz ist ein armuot des
where God in may work for that is a poverty of-the
geistes, daz der mensche alsô ledic stande gotes und aller
spirit that the man so free stand of-God and of-all
sîner werke, welle got würken in der sêle, daz er selbe ie
his works (if)-will God work in the soul that he self ever
diu stat sî, dar inne er würken wil, unde diz tête er gerne.
the place be there in he work will and this did he gladly
Wan funde got den menschen alsô arm, sô ist got sîn
For should-find God the man so poor so is God his

selbes werc lîdende und ist ein eigen stat sîner werke mit
self's work suffering and is an own place of-his works with
dem, daz got ist ein würken in ime selber. Alhie ervolget
that that God is a working in him self Here attains
der mensche in dirre armuot daz êwic wesen, daz er hât
the man in this poverty the eternal being that he has
geweset unde daz er nû ist unde daz er êweclîche leben sol.
been and that he now is and that he eternally live shall
Ez ist ein frâge ûz den worten sant Pauls 'allez, daz ich
It is a question from the words of-saint Paul all that I
bin, daz bin ich von der gnâde gotes.' Nû sweimet disiu
am that am I by the grace of-God Now hovers this
rede ob gnâde und ob verstantnüsse und ob willen und
discourse above grace and above understanding and above will and
aller begirde. Hier zuo antwürtet man alsô, daz sant Pauls
all desire Here to answers one thus that saint Paul's
wort wâr sîn, daz diu gnâde in im was, daz was niht; wan
words true be that the grace in him was that was not but
diu gnâde gotes worhte in im, daz diu einvaltekeit vollebrâhte
the grace of-God worked in him that the simplicity accomplished
daz wesen, unde dâ hât diu gnâde ir werc vollebrâht. Dô
the being and there has the grace her work accomplished When
diu gnâde ir werc vollebrâhte, dô bleip Paulus als er was.
the grace her work accomplished then remained Paul as he was
Alsô sagen wir, daz der mensche arm sülle stên, daz er
So say we that the man poor shall stand that he
niht ensî noch habe keine stat, dar inne got müge würken.
not be nor have any place there in God may work
Dâ der mensche stat behaltet, dâ behaltet er underscheit.
Where the man place keeps there keeps he distinction
Hier umbe sô bite ich got, daz er mich quit mache gotes,
Here for so pray I God that he me quit make of-God

wan unwesenlich wesen ist ober got und ober underscheit;
for unbeing being is above God and above distinction
dâ was ich selber, dâ wolte ich mich selber unde bekante
there was I self there willed I me self and knew
mich selber ze machenne disen menschen, und hier umbe sô
me self to make this man and here for so
bin ich mîn selbes sache nâch mînem wesen, daz êwic ist,
am I my self's cause after my being which eternal is
unde nâch mînem wesen, daz zîtlich ist. Und hier umbe sô
and after my being which temporal is And here for so
bin ich geborn unde nâch mîner gebürte wîse, diu êwic ist,
am I born and after my birth's manner which eternal is
sô enmac ich niemer ersterben. Nâch mîner êwigen gebürte
so may I never die After my eternal birth's
wîse sô bin ich êweclich gewesen unde bin nû unde sol
manner so am I eternally been and am now and shall
êweclîche belîben. Daz ich bin nâch der zît, daz sol sterben
eternally remain What I am after the time that shall die
unde sol ze nihte werden, wan ez ist tegelich; hier umbe sô
and shall to nothing become for it is daily here for so
muoz ez mit der zît verderben. In mîner geburt wurden elliu
must it with the time perish In my birth became all
dinc geborn und ich was sache mîn selbes und aller dinge,
things born and I was cause of-my self and of-all things
unde wolte ich, ich wêre noch niht alliu dinc, wêre ich
and would I I were yet not all things were I
niht, sô enwêre niht got. Diz ze wizzen des enist niht nôt.
not so were not God This to know that is not need
Ein grôzer meister sprichet, daz sîn durchbrechen edeler sî
A great master says that his breaking-through nobler be
dan sîn ûzfliezen. Dô ich ûz gote flôz, dô sprâchen alliu
than his out-flowing When I out-of God flowed then spoke all

dinc: got der ist. Nû mac mich diz niht sêlic machen, wan
things God he is Now may me this not blessed make for
alhie bekenne ich crêatûre; mêr: in dem durchbrechen, dâ
here know I creature but in the breaking-through where
ich ledic stên wil in dem willen gotes unde ledic stên des
I free stand will in the will of-God and free stand of-the
willen gotes und aller sîner werke unde gotes selbe, sô bin
will of-God and of-all his works and of-God self so am
ich ob allen crêatûren unde bin weder got noch crêatûre,
I above all creatures and am neither God nor creature
sunder ich bin daz ich was unt daz ich blîben sol nû und
but I am what I was and what I remain shall now and
iemer mê. Dâ empfâhe ich einen druc, der mich bringen
ever more There receive I an impulse that me bring
sol über alle engel. In disem drucke enpfâhe ich sô grôze
shall above all angels In this impulse receive I so great
rîcheit, daz mir niht genuoc mac sîn got nâch allem dem,
richness that to-me not enough may be God after all that
daz er got ist, nâch allen sînen götlîchen werken, wan ich
which he God is after all his divine works for I
enpfâhe in disem durchbrechen, daz ich unde got einz sîn.
receive in this breaking-through that I and God one are
Dâ bin ich daz ich was, unde dâ nime ich weder abe noch
There am I what I was and there take I neither off nor
zuo, wan ich bin dâ ein unbewegelîchiu sache, diu alliu dinc
to for I am there an unmoved cause that all things
beweget. Alhie vindet got keine stat in dem menschen, wan
moves Here finds God no place in the man for
der mensche krieget mit sîner armuot, daz er êweclich ist
the man attains with his poverty that he eternally is

gewesen und iemer blîben sol. Alhie ist got in dem geiste
been and ever remain shall Here is God in the spirit
ein unt daz ist diu nêhste armuot, die man vinden mac.
one and that is the nearest poverty which one find may
Wer dise rede niht verstêt, der bekümber sîn herze niht
Who this discourse not understands he trouble his heart not
dâ mite. Wan als lange der mensche niht gelîch ist dirre
there with For as long the man not like is to-this
wârheit, alsô lange wirt er dise rede niht verstên, wan
truth so long will he this discourse not understand for
ez ist ein unbedâhtiu wârheit, diu dâ komen ist ûz dem
it is an unthought truth which there come is out-of the
herzen gotes âne mitel. Daz wir alsô leben müezen, daz
heart of-God without means That we so live may that
wir ez bevinden êweclîche, des helf uns got. Âmen.
we it perceive eternally that help us God Amen

LXXXVIII. Ave, gratia plena

Hail, full of grace, the Lord is with thee. Had Mary not first borne God spiritually, He would never have been born of her bodily. We are one only Son whom the Father bore eternally: when He bore all creatures He bore me, and I flowed out and stayed within. As a lord put out his own eye so that his wife, who had lost one, would believe he still loved her, God took on human nature. The spark in the soul is so near God that it is one with Him, and God must pour Himself into the man who humbles himself. The Son goes out to bring His bride back into the hidden godhead, the last end of all being, which stays forever unknown.

Ave, gratia plena, dominus tecum! (Luc. I, 28.). Diz wort daz
Hail grace full the-lord with-thee Luke I 28 This word that
stât geschriben in dem êwangeliô unde sprichet zuo tiusche
stands written in the gospel and says in German

als vil ‘gegrüezet sîst dû, vol gnâden, unser herre ist mit
as much greeted be thou full of-grace our lord is with
dir! Der heilige geist sol von oben von dem obersten trône
thee The holy spirit shall from above from the highest throne
har nider komen in dich von dem liehte des êwigen vaters.’
hither down come into thee from the light of-the eternal father
Hie sint driu dinc ze verstânne. Daz êrste kleinheit der
Here are three things to understand The first smallness of-the
engelscher nâtûre; daz ander, daz er sich unwirdic bekante,
angelic nature the second that he himself unworthy knew
daz er gotes muoter nemen solte; daz dritte, daz er irz
that he God's mother name should the third that he it-to-her
niht alleine zuo sprach, mêr: daz er ez einer alsô grôzer
not alone to spoke but that he it to-a so great
schar, einer ieclîchen guoter sêle, diu gotes begert, zuo sprach.
host to-an every good soul that God desires to spoke
Ich spriche: hête Mâriâ niht von êrste got geistlîche geborn, er
I say had Mary not from first God spiritually borne he
enwêre nie lîplîche von ir geborn worden. Ein frouwe sprach
were never bodily from her born become A woman spoke
zuo Kristô ‘sêlic ist der lîp, der dich truoc.’ Dô sprach Kristus
to Christ blessed is the body that thee bore Then spoke Christ
‘niht ist alleine der lîp sêlic, der mich truoc: sêlic sint die
not is alone the body blessed that me bore blessed are those-who
daz wort gotes hœrent unde daz behaltent.’ Ez ist gote werder,
the word of-God hear and that keep It is to-God worthier
daz er geistlîche geborn werde von einer ieclîcher juncfrouwen
that he spiritually born become from an every virgin
oder guoten sêle, denne daz er von Marîen lîplîche geborn wart.
or good soul than that he from Mary bodily born was

Har inne ist ze verstânne, daz wir sîn ein einig sun, den der
Here in is to understand that we be a single son whom the
vater êwiclîche geborn hât. Dô der vater gebar alle crêatûren,
father eternally borne has When the father bore all creatures
dô gebar er mich, und ich flôz ûz mit allen crêatûren unde
then bore he me and I flowed out with all creatures and
bleip doch inne in dem vater. Zuo glîcher wîse, alse daz
remained yet within in the father In like manner as the
wort, daz ich nû spriche, daz entspringet in mir, zuo dem
word which I now speak that springs-up in me at the
andern mâle sô ruowe ich ûf dem bilde, zuo deme dritten
second time so rest I upon the image at the third
mâle sô spriche ich ez ûz und ir enpfâhent ez alle: nochdanne
time so speak I it out and you receive it all nonetheless
blîbet ez eigenlîche in mir. Alsô bin ich in dem vater blîben.
remains it properly in me So am I in the father remained
In dem vater sint bilde aller crêatûren. Dise hôheit hât ein
In the father are images of-all creatures This height has a
vernünftic bilde in gote. Ez ist niht alleine vernünftic, mêr:
rational image in God It is not alone rational but
ez ist ein lûter vernunft. Daz aller meiste guot, daz got dem
it is a pure reason The all greatest good that God to-the
menschen ie getete, daz was, daz er mensche wart. Hie sol
man ever did that was that he man became Here shall
ich ein mêre sagen, daz wol hie zuo hœret. Ez was ein
I a tale tell that well here to belongs There was a
rîcher man und ein rîchiu frouwe; dô geschach der frouwen
rich man and a rich lady then happened to-the lady
ein ungemach, daz si ein ouge verlôr, des wart si sêre
a mishap that she an eye lost of-that became she sorely
betrüebet. Dô kom der herre zuo ir unde sprach ‘frouwe, wie
troubled Then came the lord to her and spoke lady how

sint ir sus betrüebet? ir sunt dar umbe niht betrüebet sîn,
are you thus troubled you shall there for not troubled be
daz ir iuwer ouge verlorn hânt.' Dô sprach si 'herre, ich bin
that you your eye lost have Then spoke she lord I am
niht dar umbe betrüebet, daz ich mîn ouge verlorn hân: ich
not there for troubled that I my eye lost have I
bin dar umbe betrüebet, daz mich daz dunket, daz ir mich
am there for troubled that me that seems that you me
deste minre lieb sülent hân.' Dô sprach er 'frouwe, ich hân
the less dear shall have Then spoke he lady I have
iuch liep.' Dar nâch niht über lang dô stach er ime selben
you dear There after not over long then stabbed he to-him self
ein ouge ûz und kom zuo der frouwen unde sprach 'frouwe,
an eye out and came to the lady and spoke lady
daz ir nû geloubet, daz ich iuch liep hân, sô hân ich mich
that you now believe that I you dear have so have I me
iu glîch gemachet: ich hân nû ouch niht dan éin ouge.'
to-you like made I have now also not but one eye
Die meistere sprechent: alle crêatûre würkent dar nâch, daz
The masters say all creatures work there after that
sie wellent geberen unde sich dem vater glîchen. Ein
they will bear and themselves to-the father liken An
ander meister sprichet: ein ieclich würkendiu sache diu
other master says an every working cause it
würket alleine durch irs endes willen, daz sie rast unde
works alone for its end's sake that it rest and
ruowe in irme ende vinde. Diz ist der mensche, der künde
repose in its end find This is the man he could
gar kûme gelouben, daz in got sô liep hât, biz als lange
very hardly believe that him God so dear has until so long

daz got ime selber ein ouge ûz stach und an sich nam
that God to-him self an eye out stabbed and on himself took
menschlîche nâtûre. Diz ist fleisch worden.
human nature This is flesh become
Unser frouwe sprach 'wie sol diz geschehen'? Dô sprach
Our lady spoke how shall this happen Then spoke
der engel 'der heilig geist sol von oben her nider komen
the angel the holy spirit shall from above hither down come
in dich von dem obersten trône von dem vater des êwigen
into thee from the highest throne from the father of-the eternal
liehtes.' In principio. Ein kint ist uns geborn, ein sun ist uns
light In the-beginning A child is to-us born a son is to-us
geben. Ein kint nâch kleinheit menschlîcher nâtûre, ein sun
given A child after smallness of-human nature a son
nâch der êwigen gotheit. Ein meister sprichet: alle crêatûre
after the eternal godhead A master says all creatures
würkent nâch ir êrsten lûterkeit und nâch ir aller grœsten
work after their first purity and after their all greatest
vollekomenheit. Fiur alse fiur brennet niht: ez ist als lûter und
perfection Fire as fire burns not it is so pure and
als kleinlich, daz ez niht brennet; mêr: diu nâtûre des fiures
so subtle that it not burns but the nature of-the fire
diu brennet und giuzet in daz dürre holz sîne nâtûre und sîne
it burns and pours into the dry wood its nature and its
clârheit nâch sîner aller hœhsten vollekomenheit. Alsus hât
clarity after its all highest perfection Thus has
got getân. Er hât die sêle geschaffen nâch der aller hœhsten
God done He has the soul created after the all highest
vollekomenheit unde hât in sî gegozzen alle sîne clârheit
perfection and has into her poured all his clarity
in der êrsten lûterkeit und ist er doch unvermischet blîben.
in the first purity and is he yet unmixed remained

Nû merke! ich sprach niulîche an einer stat: dô got
Now mark I spoke lately in a place when God
geschuof alle crêatûren und hête dô got niht vor geborn
created all creatures and had then God not before borne
etwaz, daz ungeschaffen wêre, daz in sich getragen hête
something that uncreated were that in itself borne had
bilde aller crêatûren: daz ist der funke, der ist gote als
images of-all creatures that is the spark it is to-God so
nâhe, daz er ist ein einig ein ungescheiden unde daz bilde
near that it is a single one undivided and the image
in sich treit aller crêatûren sunder bilde und über bilde.
in itself bears of-all creatures without image and above image
Ein frâge was gestern in der schuole under grôzen pfaffen.
A question was yesterday in the school among great clerics
Mich wundert, sprach ich, daz nieman daz aller minste wort
Me wonders spoke I that no-one the all least word
ergründen kan, unde frâgent ir mich, wan ich ein einig sun
fathom can and ask you me since I a single son
bin, den der himelscher vater êwiclîche geborn hât, ob ich
am whom the heavenly father eternally borne has whether I
dan êwiclich sun sî gewesen? dô sprach ich: jâ und nein. Jâ
then eternally son be been then spoke I yea and no Yea
ein sun: nâch dem, daz der vater mich êwiclîche geborn hât;
a son after that that the father me eternally borne has
unde niht sun: nâ der ungebornheit. In principio. Hie ist uns
and not son after the unbornness In the-beginning Here is to-us
zuo verstênne geben, daz wir ein einig sun sîn, den der vater
to understand given that we a single son be whom the father
êwiclîche geborn hât ûz dem verborgen verstentnisse der
eternally borne has out-of the hidden understanding of-the
êwigen verborgenheit, inne blîbende in dem êrsten beginne
eternal hiddenness within remaining in the first beginning

der êrsten lûterkeit, diu dâ ist ein fülle aller lûterkeit. Hie
of-the first purity which there is a fullness of-all purity Here
hân ich êwiclîche geruowet unde geslâfen in der verborgenen
have I eternally rested and slept in the hidden
bekentnis des êwigen vaters, inne blîbende, ungesprochen. Ûz
knowledge of-the eternal father within remaining unspoken Out-of
der lûterkeit hât er mich êwiclîche geborn sînen einbornen
the purity has he me eternally borne his only-begotten
sun in daz selbe bilde sîner êwigen vaterschaft, daz ich vater
son into the same image of-his eternal fatherhood that I father
sî und gebêre den, von dem ich geborn bin. Zuo glîcher
be and bear him from whom I born am In like
wîs, als obe einer stüende vor eime hôhen berge und
manner as if one stood before a high mountain and
ruofte 'bistû dâ'? der gal und der hal ruofte wider 'bistû
called art-thou there the echo and the resound called back art-thou
dâ'? Sprêche er 'kum har ûz'! der gal sprêche ouch 'kum
there Should-speak he come hither out the echo would-speak also come
har ûz!' Jâ der in dem liehte ein holz sêhe, dâ würde ein
hither out Yea who in the light a wood saw there would-become an
engel und würde vernünftic, unde niht alleine vernünftic, ez
angel and would-become rational and not alone rational it
würde ein lûter vernunft, in der êrsten lûterkeit, diu dâ
would-become a pure reason in the first purity which there
ist ein füllede aller lûterkeit. Alsus tuot got: er gebirt sînen
is a fullness of-all purity Thus does God he bears his
einbornen sun in daz hœhste teil der sêle. In dem selben,
only-begotten son into the highest part of-the soul In the same
daz er sînen sun gebirt in mich, sô gebir ich in wider in
that he his son bears into me so bear I him back into

den vater. Daz enwas anders niht, denne daz got den engel
the father That was otherwise not than that God the angel
gebar wider dem, daz er von der juncfrouwen geborn wart.
bore against that that he from the virgin born was
Ich dâhte (ez ist etwie manic jâr), ob ich gefrâget würde,
I thought it is some many years whether I asked were
wie ein iegelich grasspinne der andern sô unglîch wêre, und ez
how an every grasshopper to-the other so unlike were and it
geschach, daz ich sîn gefrâget wart, wie sie sô unglîch wêren.
happened that I of-it asked was how they so unlike were
Dô sprach ich: wie alle grasspinnen sô gelîch sîn, daz ist
Then spoke I how all grasshoppers so alike be that is
noch wunderlîcher. Ein meister sprach: daz alle grasspinnen sô
still more-wondrous A master spoke that all grasshoppers so
ungelîch sint, daz kumt von der überflüzzikeit gotes güete, die
unlike are that comes from the superabundance of-God's goodness which
er giuzet überflüzzeclîche in alle crêatûren, daz sîn hêrschaft
he pours superabundantly into all creatures that his lordship
deste mê geoffenbâret werde. Dô sprach ich: ez ist wunderlîcher,
the more revealed become Then spoke I it is more-wondrous
wie alle grasspinnen sô gelîch sint, unde sprach: wie alle engel
how all grasshoppers so alike are and spoke as all angels
in der êrsten lûterkeit sint alein, alsô sint alle grasspinnen
in the first purity are one so are all grasshoppers
in der êrsten lûterkeit alein, und alliu dinc sint alein.
in the first purity one and all things are one
Ich gedâhte under wîlen, dô ich ûzwert gienc, daz der
I thought under whiles when I outward went that the
mensche in der zît dar zuo komen mac, daz er mac got
man in the time there to come may that he may God
twingen. Wêr ich hie oben und sprêche zuo im 'kum her ûf',
compel Were I here above and spoke to him come here up

daz wêre swêre. Mêr: sprêche ich 'sitz hie niden', daz wêre
that were hard But spoke I sit here down that were
lîht. Alsô tuot got. Swenne sich der mensche dêmüetiget, sô
easy So does God When himself the man humbles so
enmac sich got niht enthalten von sîner güete, ern müeze
may himself God not withhold from his goodness but-he must
sich senken unde giezen in den dêmüetigen menschen,
himself sink and pour into the humble man
unde dem aller minsten gît er sich in dem aller meisten
and to-the all least gives he himself in the all most
unde gît sich alzemâle. Daz got gît daz ist sîn wesen,
and gives himself wholly What God gives that is his being
unde sîn wesen ist sîn güete unde sîn güeti daz ist sîn
and his being is his goodness and his goodness that is his
minne. Allez leit unde liep kumt von minne.
love All sorrow and joy comes from love
Ich gedâhte under wegen, dô ich her solte gân, ich wolte
I thought on-the way when I here should go I would
niht her, ich würde doch naz von minne. Swenne ir
not here I would-become yet wet from love When you
naz sît worden, daz lâzen wir sîn. Liep und leit kumt von
wet are become that let we be Joy and sorrow come from
minne. Der mensche sol got niht vorhten. Etlîchiu vorhte ist
love The man shall God not fear Some fear is
schedelich. Daz ist ein rehtiu vorhte, der got vorhtet verlieren.
harmful That is a right fear who God fears to-lose
Der mensche sol got minnen, wan got minnet den menschen
The man shall God love for God loves the man
mit aller sîner hœhsten vollekomenheit. Diu meistere sprechent,
with all his highest perfection The masters say
daz alliu dinc wirkent dar nâch, daz sie wellent sich dem
that all things work there after that they will themselves to-the

vater glîch geberen, unde sprechent: diu erde fliuhet den
father like bear and say the earth flees the
himel, fliuhet si nider wert, sô kumt si nider wert zuo dem
heaven (if)-flees she down ward so comes she down ward to the
himel; fliuhet si ûfwert, sô kumt si zuo dem nidersten des
heaven (if)-flees she upward so comes she to the lowest of-the
himels. Diu erde mac dem himele niht enpfliehen: si fliehe
heaven The earth may the heaven not escape she flee
ûf oder nider, der himel fliuzet in sî unde trücket sîne maht
up or down the heaven flows into her and presses its might
in sî unde machet sî fruhtbêr, ez sî ir lieb oder leit. Alsô
into her and makes her fruitful it be to-her dear or loath So
tuot got dem menschen: der ime wênet enpfliehen, er loufet
does God to-the man who him supposes to-escape he runs
ime in die schôz, wan im sint alle winkele offen. Got
him into the lap for to-him are all corners open God
gebirt sînen sun in dir, ez sî dir lieb oder leit, dû slâfest
bears his son in thee it be to-thee dear or loath thou sleepest
oder wachest, got tuot daz sîne. Daz der mensche des niht
or wakest God does the his That the man of-it not
bevindet, daz ist des schult, daz sîn zunge mit dem unflâte
perceives that is of-it the-blame that his tongue with the filth
der crêatûren ist belîmet und des salzes gotlîcher minnen
of-the creatures is begrimed and of-the salt of-divine love
niht enhât. Hêten wir die gotlîche minne, sô smahte uns got
not has Had we the divine love so tasted to-us God
und alliu diu werk, diu got ie geworhte, und enpfiengen
and all the works which God ever worked and received
alliu dinc von gote unde worhten alliu diu selben werk,
all things from God and worked all the same works
diu er würket. In dirre glîcheit sîn wir alle ein einig sun.
which he works In this likeness are we all a single son

Got geschuof die sêle nâch sîner hœhsten vollekomenheit, daz
God created the soul after his highest perfection that
si solte sîn ein geburt sîns einbornen suns. Wan er diz wol
she should be a birth of-his only-begotten son For he this well
bekante, sô wolte er ûz gân ûzer sîner heimlîcher triskamer
knew so would he out go out-of his secret treasure-chamber
der êwigen veterlicheit, in der er êwiclîche geslâfen hât
of-the eternal fatherhood in which he eternally slept has
und ûz gesprochen inne blîbende in dem êrsten beginne
and out spoken within remaining in the first beginning
der êrsten lûterkeit. Dâ hât der sun ûf geslagen daz gezelt
of-the first purity There has the son up pitched the tent
sîner êwigen glôrien und ist har ûz komen ûzer dem aller
of-his eternal glory and is hither out come out-of the all
hœhsten, daz er wolte holen sîne friundin, die im der
highest that he would fetch his beloved whom to-him the
vater gemahelt hâte êwiclîche, daz er sî wider brêhte in daz
father betrothed had eternally that he her back brought into the
aller hœhste, ûz dem si komen ist. Her umbe gieng er
all highest out-of which she come is Here for went he
ûz unde kom springende alse ein jungelinc und leit pîne
out and came leaping as a youth and suffered pain
von minne. Unde niht engienc er alsô ûz, er wolte wider
from love And not went he so out but-he would back
în gân in sîne kamer, daz ist, in die stille tünsternisse
in go into his chamber that is into the still darkness
der verborgenen vaterschaft. Daz er ûz gienc von dem aller
of-the hidden fatherhood That he out went from the all
hœhsten, dô wolte er în gân mit sîner briute und wolte ir
highest then would he in go with his bride and would to-her

offenbâren die verborgene heimlîche sîner verborgenen gotheit,
reveal the hidden secrecy of-his hidden godhead
dâ er ruowet mit ime selber und mit allen crêatûren.
where he rests with him self and with all creatures
In principio sprichet als vil als ein angenge alles wesens. Ez
In the-beginning says as much as a beginning of-all being It
ist ouch ein ende alles wesens, wan der êrste begin ist dur
is also an end of-all being for the first beginning is for
des lesten endes willen. Jâ got selbe ruowet niht dâ, dâ
the last end's sake Yea God self rests not there where
er ist der êrste begin, mêr: er ruowet dâ, dâ er ist ein
he is the first beginning but he rests there where he is an
ende und ein rasten alles wesens, niht daz diz wesen dâ ze
end and a resting of-all being not that this being there to
nihte werde, mêr: ez wirt dâ vollebrâht nâch sîner hœhsten
nothing become but it becomes there accomplished after its highest
vollekomenheit. Waz ist daz leste ende? Ez ist diu verborgenheit
perfection What is the last end It is the hiddenness
der tünsternisse der êwigen gotheit und ist unbekant unde
of-the darkness of-the eternal godhead and is unknown and
wart nie bekant unde wirt niemer bekant. Got blîbet dâ
was never known and becomes never known God remains there
inne ime selber unbekant, unde daz lieht des êwigen vaters
within to-him self unknown and the light of-the eternal father
hât dâ êwiclîche în geschinen unde daz dünsternisse begrîfet
has there eternally in shone and the darkness grasps
des liehtes niht. Daz wir zuo dirre wârheit komen, des
of-the light nothing That we to this truth come that
helf uns die wârheit, von der wir gesprochen hân. Âmen.
help us the truth of which we spoken have Amen

XCVI. Qui audit me

Eternal Wisdom says: whoever hears me is not ashamed, whoever works in me does not sin. Bodiliness, multiplicity, and temporality keep us from hearing the eternal Word; God works all His works that we may be the only-begotten Son. To love one's friends more than others is imperfect, though natural. Paul's wish to be parted from God was the highest leaving, leaving God for God. God delights in likeness as a horse delights to leap freely on a green heath. The man in God's will, if sick, would not wish to be healthy. Whoever leaves all for God is given it back, but whoever takes himself back for an instant was never detached.

Qui audit me, non confundetur (Eccles. XXIV, 30.). Diu
Who hears me not shall-be-confounded Ecclus. XXIV 30 The
êwige wîsheit des vaters sprichet 'swer mich hœret, der
eternal wisdom of-the father says whoever me hears he
schamet sich niht (schamet er sich ihtes, sô schamet er
is-ashamed himself not (if)-is-ashamed he himself of-anything so is-ashamed he
sich des, daz er sich schamet). Swer in mir wirket, der
himself of-that that he himself is-ashamed Whoever in me works he
ensündet niht. Swer mich offenbâret unde mich vorhtet, der
sins not Whoever me reveals and me fears he
sol hân daz êwige leben.' Zuo dem êrsten wil ich sprechen,
shall have the eternal life At the first will I speak
daz diu êwige wîsheit sprichet 'swer mich hœret, der
that the eternal wisdom says whoever me hears he
schamt sich niht. Swer die wîsheit des vaters hœren sol,
is-ashamed himself not Whoever the wisdom of-the father hear shall
der sol inne sîn unde sol dâ heime sîn unde sol eine sîn.
he shall within be and shall there at-home be and shall alone be
Driu dinc hindernt uns, daz wir niht hœren mügen daz êwige
Three things hinder us that we not hear may the eternal
wort. Daz êrste ist lîplicheit, daz ander manicvaltikeit, daz
word The first is bodiliness the second multiplicity the

dritte ist zîtlicheit. Hête der mensche disen drin abe gangen,
third is temporality Had the man these three off gone
sô wonete er in êwikeit und inme geiste unde wonete in
so dwelt he in eternity and in-the spirit and dwelt in
einekeit und in der wüestunge unde dâ hôrte er daz êwige
oneness and in the wilderness and there heard he the eternal
wort. Nû sprichet unser herre 'nieman hœret mîn wort noch
word Now says our lord no-one hears my word nor
mîne lêre, er habe dan sich selben gelâzen.' Wan der gotes
my teaching unless-he have then him self left For who God's
wort hœren sol, der muoz gar gelâzen sîn. Daz selbe, daz dâ
word hear shall he must wholly detached be The same that there
hœret, daz ist daz selbe, daz dâ gehœret wirt in dem êwigen
hears that is the same that there heard becomes in the eternal
worte. Allez daz, daz der êwige vater lêret, daz ist sîn wesen,
word All that which the eternal father teaches that is his being
sîn nâtûre und alliu sîn gotheit, daz offenbâret er uns alzemâle
his nature and all his godhead that reveals he to-us wholly
in sîme sune unde lêret uns, daz wir der selbe sun sîn.
in his son and teaches us that we the same son be
Der mensche, der dâ wêre ûz gangen alsô, daz er wêre der
The man who there were out gone so that he were the
einborne sun, dem wêre eigin daz eigen ist dem einbornen
only-begotten son to-him were own what own is to-the only-begotten
sune. Swaz got wirket unde lêret daz wirket er allez in
son Whatever God works and teaches that works he all in
sînem sune. Got wirket alliu sîniu werc dar umbe, daz wir der
his son God works all his works there for that we the
einborne sun sîn. Swenne got siht, daz wir sîn der einborne
only-begotten son be When God sees that we are the only-begotten
sun, sô ist gote sô gâch nâch uns und îlet sô sêre unde
son so is to-God so hasty after us and hurries so sorely and

tuot reht, als im sîn gotlich wesen welle zerbrechen unde
does just as-if to-him his divine being would break and
ze nihte werden an ime selben, daz er uns offenbâre allen
to nothing become in him self that he to-us reveal all
den abgrunt sîner gotheit unde die füllede sînes wesens unde
the abyss of-his godhead and the fullness of-his being and
sîner nâtûre: dâ îlet got zuo, daz ez unser eigin sî alsô, als
of-his nature there hurries God to that it our own be as as
ez sîn eigin ist. Hie hât got lust unde wunne in der füllede.
it his own is Here has God delight and bliss in the fullness
Dirre mensche stêt in gotes bekennen unde minne unde wirt
This man stands in God's knowing and love and becomes
enkein anderz dan daz got selber ist. Hâstû dich selben
no other than what God self is (If)-hast-thou thee self
liep, sô hâstû alle menschen liep als dich selben. Die wîle
dear so hast-thou all men dear as thee self The while
dû einen menschen minre liep hâst danne dich selben, dû
thou one man less dear hast than thee self thou
gewunne dich selben nie liep in der wârheit, dû habest
gottest thee self never dear in the truth unless-thou have
denne alle menschen liep als dich selben, in einem menschen
then all men dear as thee self in one man
alle menschen, unde der mensche ist got unde mensche; sô
all men and the man is God and man so
ist dem menschen rehte, der hêt sich selben liep und alle
is to-the man right who has him self dear and all
menschen liep alse sich selben, unde dem ist gar reht.
men dear as him self and to-him is wholly right
Nû sprechent etlîche liute: ich hân mîne friunde lieber, von den
Now say some people I have my friends dearer from whom
mir guot geschiht, dan einen andern menschen. Ich spriche:
to-me good happens than an other man I say

ime ist unreht, ez ist unvolkomen. Doch muoz manz lîden,
to-him is wrong it is imperfect Yet must one-it suffer
alse etlîche liute, die varent über sê in halbem winde unde
as some people who fare over sea in half wind and
koment über. Alsô ist den liuten, die einen menschen lieber
come over So is to-the people who one man dearer
hânt dan den andern, daz ist nâtûrlich. Hête ich in alse rehte
have than the other that is natural Had I him as rightly
liep als mich selben, swaz ime dan geschêhe ze liebe oder ze
dear as me self whatever to-him then happened to joy or to
leide, ez wêre tôt oder leben, daz wêre mir alse liep, daz ez in
sorrow it were death or life that were to-me as dear as-if it in
mir geschêhe, als in ime, unde daz wêre rehtiu vernünftikeit.
me happened as in him and that were right reason
Dar zuo sprichet sant Paulus 'ich wolt êwiclîche gescheiden
There to says saint Paul I would eternally separated
sîn von gote dur mînes friundes willen unde dur got.' Nû
be from God for my friend's sake and for God Now
merkent: einen ougenblik von gote gescheiden, daz ist êwiclich
mark one eye-blink from God separated that is eternally
von gote gescheiden, unde von gote gescheiden sîn ist helschiu
from God separated and from God separated be is hellish
pîne. Waz meinet sant Paulus mit dem worte, daz er sprichet,
pain What means saint Paul with the word that he says
er wolte von gote gescheiden sîn? Nû vrâgent die meister:
he would from God separated be Now ask the masters
ob sant Paulus wêre ûf dem wege der vollekomenheit oder
whether saint Paul were on the way of-the perfection or
in ganzer vollekomenheit? Ich spriche: er stuont in ganzer
in whole perfection I say he stood in whole
vollekomenheit, er möhte sîn anders niht gesprochen hân.
perfection he might of-it otherwise not spoken have

Diz wort wil ich tiutschen, daz sant Paulus sprach, daz er
This word will I put-into-German that saint Paul spoke that he
von gote gescheiden wolte sîn. Daz hœhste unde daz nêhste,
from God separated would be The highest and the nearest
daz der mensche gelâzen mac, daz ist, daz er got dur got
that the man leave may that is that he God for God
lâze. Nû liez sant Paulus got dur got: er liez allez daz, daz
leave Now left saint Paul God for God he left all that that
er von gote nemen unde geben mohte, und allez, daz er von
he from God take and give might and all that he from
gote enpfâhen mohte. Dô er daz liez, dô liez er got dur got,
God receive might When he that left then left he God for God
dô bleib ime got, dâ got istic ist sîn selbes, niht nâ
then remained to-him God where God is-like is of-his self not after
einre enpfâhunge sîn selbes noch nâ einre gewinnunge, mêr:
a receiving of-his self nor after a gaining but
in einre îstikeide, daz got in ime selber ist. Er gap gote nie
in an is-ness that God in him self is He gave to-God never
niht noch er enpfienc nie niht von gote: ez ist ein ein
anything nor he received never anything from God it is a one
und ein lûter einunge. Hie ist der mensche ein wâr mensche
and a pure union Here is the man a true man
und in disen menschen vellet kein lîden, alse wênic als in
and into this man falls no suffering as little as into
gotlich wesen gevallen mac, als ich mê gesprochen hân, daz
divine being fall may as I more spoken have that
etwaz in der sêlen ist, daz gote alsô sippe ist, daz ez ein ist
something in the soul is that to-God so kin is that it one is
unde niht vereinet. Ez ist ein, ez hât mit nihte niht gemeine
and not united It is one it has with nothing nothing in-common
noch ist dem nihte niht. Allez daz geschaffen ist, daz ist
nor is to-the nothing nothing All that created is that is

niht. Nû ist diz aller geschaffenheit verre unde frömde. Wêr
nothing Now is this from-all createdness far and alien Were
der mensche allez alsô, er wêre alzemâle ungeschaffen und
the man all so he were wholly uncreated and
unschepfelich; wêre allez daz alsô, daz lîphaftic ist, verstanden
uncreatable were all that so that bodily is understood
in der einekeit, ez enwêre niht anders dan daz diu einekeit
in the oneness it were not otherwise than what the oneness
selber ist. Fünde ich mich einen ougenblik in disem wesenne,
self is Should-find I me one eye-blink in this being
ich ahte als wênic ûf mich selben als ûf ein mistwürmelîn.
I would-heed as little on me self as on a little-dungworm
Got gît allen dingen glîch, und alse sie von gote fliezent,
God gives to-all things equally and as they from God flow
alsô sint sie glîch; jâ engel, mensche und alle crêatûre die
so are they equal yea angels men and all creatures they
fliezent von gote glîch in irm êrsten ûzfluzze. Der nû diu
flow from God equally in their first outflow Who now the
dinc nême in irm êrsten ûzfluzze, der nême alliu dinc gelîch.
things took in their first outflow he took all things equal
Sint sie nû in der zît alsô gelîch, sô sint sie in gote in
(If)-are they now in the time so equal so are they in God in
der êwikeit vil gelîcher. Der eine fliegen nimet, als si in
the eternity much more-equal Who a fly takes as she in
gote ist, diu ist edeler dan der hœhste engel an ime selber
God is she is nobler than the highest angel in him self
sî. Nû sint alliu dinc gelîch in gote unde sint got selber.
be Now are all things equal in God and are God self
Hie ist got alse lüstlich in dirre glîcheit, daz er sîne nâtûre
Here is God so delighted in this likeness that he his nature
unde sîn wesen alzemâle in ir durgiuzet in îme selber. Daz
and his being wholly into her pours in him self That

ist alsô lüstlich unde genuoclich, daz ez unsprechlich ist. Ze
is so delightful and satisfying that it unspeakable is In
glîcher wîse, als der ein ros lât loufen ûf einer grüener
like manner as he-who a horse lets run on a green
heiden, dâ ez zemâle eben unde glîch wêre, des rosses nâtûre
heath where it wholly even and level were the horse's nature
wêre, daz ez sich zemâle ûz güzze mit aller sîner kraft mit
were that it itself wholly out poured with all its strength with
springenne ûf der heiden: daz wêre ime lüstlich unde wêre sîn
leaping on the heath that were to-it delightful and were its
nâtûre. Alsô ist gote lüstlich unde genuoclich, dâ er glîcheit
nature So is to-God delightful and satisfying where he likeness
vindet, dur daz, daz er sîne nâtûre unde sîn wesen dâ alzemâle
finds for that that he his nature and his being there wholly
ûz gieze in die glîcheit, wan er diu gelîcheit selber ist.
out pour into the likeness for he the likeness self is
Nû ist ein vrâge von den engelen, die hie mit uns wonent,
Now is a question of the angels who here with us dwell
uns dienent und uns behüetent, obe die iht minre glîcheit
us serve and us guard whether they any less likeness
haben an irn fröiden, dan die in der êwikeit sint, oder
have in their joys than those-who in the eternity are or
ob sie iht gehindert werden, daz sie unser hüetent und
whether they anything hindered become that they us guard and
uns dienent? Nein sie niht. Ir fröide ist niht deste minre
us serve No they not Their joy is not the less
und ir glîcheit; wan daz werc des engels ist der wille
and their likeness for the work of-the angel is the will
gotes unde der wille gotes ist daz werc des engels: an sîner
of-God and the will of-God is the work of-the angel in his
fröide, an sîner glîcheit noch an sînen werken wirt der
joy in his likeness nor in his works becomes the

engel niht gehindert. Hieze got den engel varn an einen
angel not hindered Should-bid God the angel go to a
boum unde dar abe rûpen lesen, der engel wêre dar zuo
tree and there off caterpillars pick the angel were there to
bereit und ez wêre sîn sêlikeit unde wêre der wille gotes.
ready and it were his blessedness and were the will of-God
Der mensche, der nû alsô stêt in dem willen gotes, der wil
The man who now so stands in the will of-God he wills
niht anders dan daz got ist unde daz gotes wille ist. Wêre er
not otherwise than what God is and what God's will is Were he
siech, er wolte niht gesunt sîn. Al pîne ist in ime ein fröide,
sick he would not healthy be All pain is in him a joy
alliu manicvaltikeit ist ime ein blôzheit und ein einekeit,
all multiplicity is to-him a bareness and a oneness
stêt er rehte in dem willen gotes. Jâ hienge helleschiu
(if)-stands he rightly in the will of-God Yea should-hang hellish
pîne dar an, ez wêre ime ein fröide unde sêlikeit. Er ist lidic
pain there on it were to-him a joy and blessedness He is free
und ûz gangen sîn selbes, und alles des, daz er enpfâhen
and out gone of-his self and of-all that which he receive
sol, des muoz er lidic sîn. Sol mîn ouge sehen die varwe,
shall of-that must he free be (If)-shall my eye see the color
sô muoz ez lidic sîn aller varwen. Sihe ich blâ oder wîze
so must it free be of-all colors (If)-see I blue or white
varwe, diu gesiht mîns ougen, daz dâ siht die varwe, daz
color the sight of-my eye that there sees the color the
selbe, daz dâ siht, ist daz selbe; daz dâ gesehen wirt mit
same that there sees is the same that there seen becomes with
dem ougen, dâ inne ich got sihe, daz ist daz selbe ouge,
the eye there in I God see that is the same eye

dâ inne mich got siht: mîn ouge unde gotes ouge daz ist
there in me God sees my eye and God's eye that is
ein ouge und ein gesiht und ein bekennen und ein minnen.
one eye and one sight and one knowing and one loving
Der mensche, der alsô stêt in gotes minne, der sol sîn
The man who so stands in God's love he shall of-his
selbes tôt sîn und allen geschaffenen dingen, unde sîn selbes
self dead be and to-all created things and his self
als wênic ahten als eins über tûsent mîlen. Der mensche
as little heed as one over thousand miles The man
blîbet in der glîcheit und in der einekeit, in in vellet kein
remains in the likeness and in the oneness into him falls no
unglîcheit. Dirre mensche muoz sich selben und alle dise
unlikeness This man must him self and all this
welt gelâzen hân. Wêre ein mensche, des alliu disiu welt
world left have Were a man whose all this world
wêre, und er sî lieze alse blôz dur got als er sî enpfienc,
were and he it left as bare for God as he it received
dem wolte got wider gen alle dise welt und ouch daz êwige
to-him would God back give all this world and also the eternal
leben. Unde wêre ouch ein ander mensche, der niht hête dan
life And were also an other man who nothing had but
eins guoten willen, und er gedêhte: herre, wêre disiu welt
a good will and he thought lord were this world
mîn und dannoch zwô (unde swie vil er möhte begeren),
mine and yet two and however many he might desire
ich wil dise lâzen unde mich selben alsô blôz, als ich ez
I will these leave and me self as bare as I it
von dir enpfienc: dem mensche gêbe got als vil, als er ez
from thee received to-that man gave God as much as he it
allez mit sîner hant hête enwec geben. Ein ander mensche,
all with his hand had away given An other man

der niht enhête lîplîches noch geistlîches ze lâzenne noch ze
who nothing had of-bodily nor of-spiritual to leave nor to
gebenne, der mensche lieze allermeist. Der sich zemâle lieze
give the man left all-most Who himself wholly left
einen ougenblic, deme würde zemâle gegeben. Unde wêre ein
one eye-blink to-him would-be wholly given And were a
mensche zweinzic jâr gelâzen, nême er sich selben wider
man twenty years detached took he him self back
einen ougenblik, er enwart noch nie gelâzen. Der mensche,
one eye-blink he was yet never detached The man
der gelâzen hât unde gelâzen ist unde nie mêr gesiht einen
who left has and detached is and never more glances a
blik ûf daz, daz er gelâzen hât, unde stête und unbeweget
glance on that which he left has and steadfast and unmoved
blîbet und unwandellîche in ime selber, der mensche ist alleine
remains and unchangeably in him self the man is alone
gelâzen. Daz wir alsô stête und unwandelbêre blîben, als der
detached That we so steadfast and unchangeable remain as the
êwige vater, des helf uns got unde diu êwige wîsheit. Âmen.
eternal father that help us God and the eternal wisdom Amen